المنهج المعدل 2027

EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

# CONNECT Plus

By a group of supervisors

للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات

الصف الثالث الابتدائى — الفصل الدراسى الأول

تطبيق المعاصر التفاعُلى

https://t.me/GB

FIRST TERM

3rd Primary 2027

EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

# CONNECT Plus

By a group of supervisors

الصف الثالث الابتدائى الفصل الدراسى الأول



https://t.me/GPS_Y5

GPS

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
www.gpseducation.com
15014

3rd Primary
FIRST TERM

All rights reserved

https://t.me/G5_Y5

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

﴿ إِنَّ ٱلَّذِينَ ءَامَنُواْ وَعَمِلُواْ ٱلصَّٰلِحَٰتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا ﴾ صدق الله العظيم

Egyptian National Library - Cataloging During Publishing
prepared by Technical Affairs Department
El Moasser Guide based on Connect Plus for Primary Schools
By a Group of Supervisors
Cairo : G.P.S for Printing, Publishing and Distribution, 2026 - 2027
2Vols. ; 30 cm.
For 3rd prim. - First Term.
I.S.B.N : 978 - 977 - 970 - 357 - 2
1. English language - study and teaching (primary).
2. Education , primary 372.6521

رقم الإيداع : ١٣٤١٠ / ٢٠٢٦

Name : .....

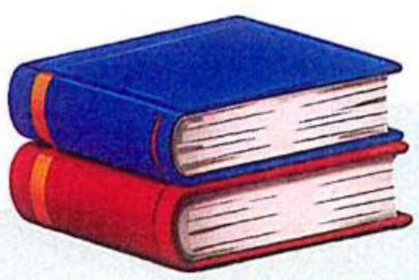
School : .....

Grade : .....

Class : .....

Teacher's name : .....







# CONTENTS


▸ **PART ONE: Pre-Assessment**

**Round 1** Assess Yourself ..... 10

**Round 2** Learn and Return ..... 11

**Round 3** Unlock Your Grade 3 Journey ..... 14

▸ **PART TWO:**

▸ **THEME ONE :**

**UNIT 1:**

At the track ..... 22

**UNIT 2:**

Body matters ..... 63

**UNIT 3:**

What's on your plate ? ..... 101

▸ **THEME TWO :**

**UNIT 4:**

In the wild ..... 137

**UNIT 5:**

All about water ..... 177

**UNIT 6:**

What is a flood ? ..... 210

▸ **Non-Fiction Reader** Hospitals ..... 247

▸ **Fiction Reader** Fares and the Fish ... 253

▸ **PART THREE:**

El-Moasser Follow-up ..... 278




# Your Guidebook

**Find your way around!**



## 1 Pre-Assessment

**ابدأ واستعد لرحلة التعلم**

**الهدف منه** تجهيز الطالب لرحلة التعلم
عن طريق ثلاث جولات:

**الجولة الأولى:** تحديد مستوى الطالب وما يتقنه ويحتاجه

**الجولة الثانية:** حسب نتيجتك فى كل مستوى،
تعلم ثم أعد المحاولة لاجتياز كل مستوى

**الجولة الثالثة:** المهارات الأساسية التى يستعد بها الطالب لدراسة منهجه



## 2 Lessons



**عرض شامل** مبسط لدروس الوحدة
مدعم بالصور التوضيحية

## 3 General Exercises on Lessons



**تدريبات على الدروس**

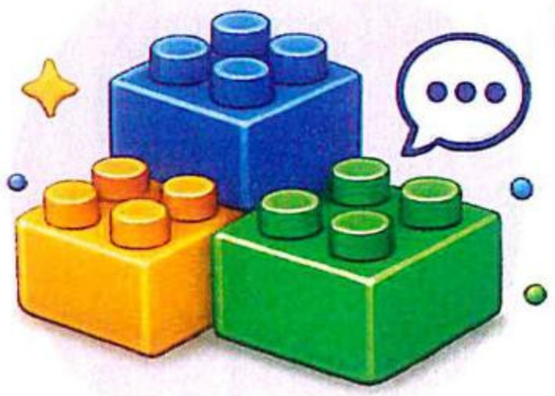
https://t.me/G5_Y5

# Keep going on your way



## 4 Accumulative Dictation

- إملاء تراكمى على الدروس لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية



## 5 Skills

- كيفية التعامل مع مهارة القراءة
- مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الخطأ
- تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة
- اكتب موضوعك خطوة بخطوة
- فقرات انشائية هامة



## 6 Review through the Exam

**مراجعة الوحدة** من خلال كتاب الطالب والتدريبات واختبارات المحافظات




## 7 Sample Tests on Units

**اختبارات على كل وحدة:**

١- اختبار المعاصر

٢- اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب، كتاب التدريبات والاختبارات السابقة

# Keep going on your way

## 8 Story



عرض جديد للقصة المقررة

## 9 El-Moasser Follow-up

فى نهاية الكتاب




- كراسة المعاصر للتقييمات والواجب المنزلى

## 10 El-Moasser Interactive Notebook

يصرف مجانًا مع الكتاب



كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية والمراجعة النهائية:

- مراجعة المنهج بالكامل والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد

https://t.me/G5_Y5



EL-MOASSER

# enjoy learning English

## El-Moasser

### Scan & Listen



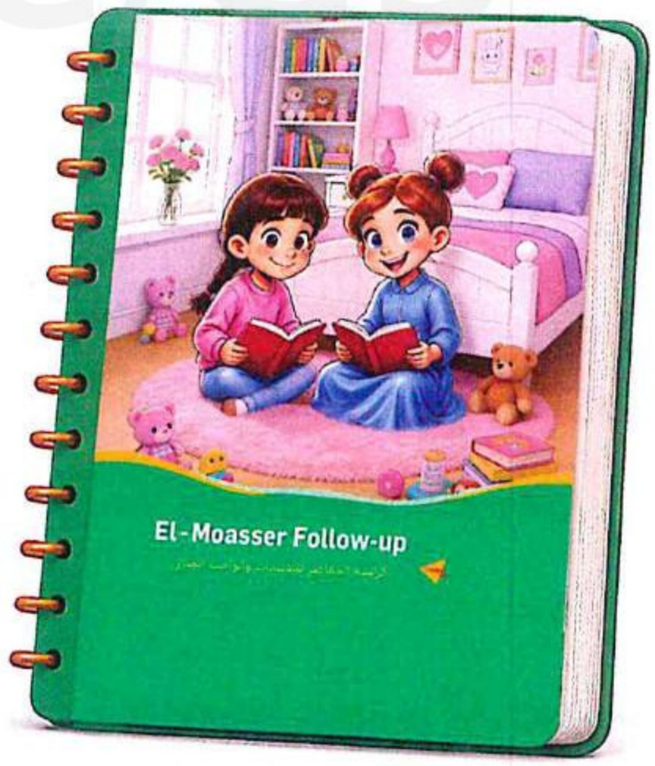

Scan Qr code

## قاموس
## المعاصر الناطق

لـو عايـز تتعلم نطق الكلمات صح

## El-Moasser Follow-up

### Homework & Assessments




## كراسة
## المعاصر للتقييمات
## والواجب المنزلى

تستخدم بالتوازى مع كتاب الشرح
يوميًا، أسبوعيًا وشهريًا.

https://t.me/GBY5



التطبيق التفاعلى من سلسلة كتب ...

# الامتحان المعاصر

QR Code

1. نزل التطبيق.
2. أنشئ حسابك.
3. أدخل الكود الموجود على ظهر الغلاف.

## استمتع بجميع مزايا التطبيق

لجميع المواد الدراسية

شرح
فيديوهات
ألعاب تعليمية
امتحانات تفاعلية
تدريبات
تواصل مع معلمك
تقارير متابعة
إشعارات
أخبار

## تم تصنيف أسئلة الكتاب فى كل درس طبقًا لمستويات هرم بلوم والإشارة لها كالتالى :

● فهم ● تطبيق ● تحليل ● تقويم ● ابتكار

المستويات العليا من التفكير

إنتاج أفكار جديدة
صمم - اقترح - نمذج

الحكم على المعلومات لاتخاذ القرارات
قيّم - فنّد - قرّر - أعط رأيك

تجزئة الفكرة إلى عناصرها وتحديد العلاقات بينها
فرّق - دلل - حلل

استخدام المعلومات فى مواقف مشابهة جديدة
اربط - طبّق - استخدم

إدراك معنى المعلومات وشرحها
قارن - استنتج - وضح بمثال

استرجاع المعلومات السابق دراستها
اذكر - عرّف - حدّد - عدّد

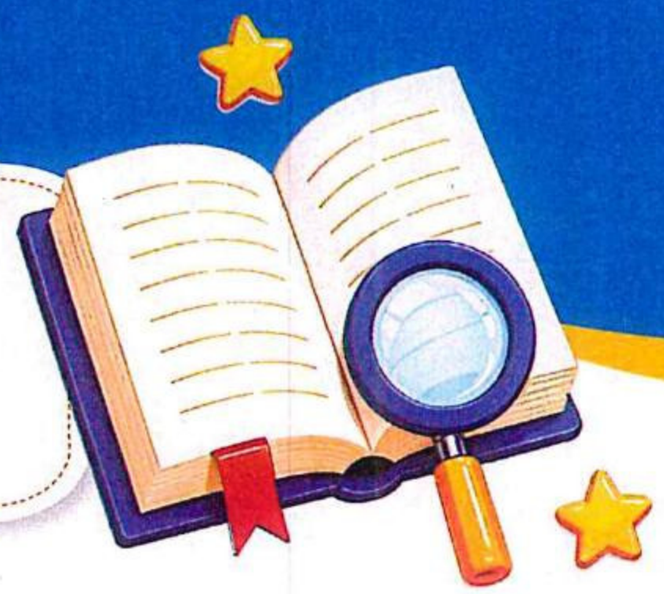
المستويات الدنيا من التفكير



PART 1

# Pre-Assessment

ابدأ واستعد لرحلة التعلم



## Round 1 — Assess Yourself

اختبار لقياس ما يتقنه و يحتاجه الطالب قبل بداية المنهج.



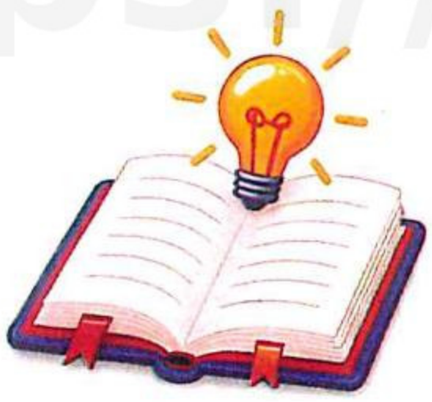
**الهدف منه تجهيز الطالب لرحلة التعلم عن طريق ثلاث جولات:**

**الجولة الاولى:** تحديد مستوى الطالب وما يتقنه و يحتاجه.

**الجولة الثانية:** حسب نتيجتك فى كل مستوى، تعلم ثم اعد المحاولة لاجتياز كل مستوى.

**الجولة الثالثة:** المهارات الأساسية التى يستعد بها الطالب لدراسة منهجه.

## Round 2 — Learn and Return



الطالب الحاصل على:

1. الدرجات [6 - 5] ينتقل إلى المستوى التالى أو إلى الجولة الثالثة [ابدأ رحلتك الى الصف الدراسى]
2. الدرجات [4 - 1] ينتقل إلى جزء تعلم وأعد المحاولة لإتقان المطلوب منه ثم يقوم بإعادة المحاولة مرة اخرى.

ينتقل الطالب إلى الجولة الثالثة فى حالة اجتياز المستويين الأول والثانى بحصوله على الدرجات [6 - 5] فى كل مستوى.

## Round 3 — Unlock Your Grade 3 Journey



المهارات الأساسية التى تساعد الطالب على التعامل مع الصف الدراسى



امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق! لنبدأ الرحلة معًا!

Round 1

# Assess Yourself

## قيّم نفســك



اختبر نفسك واكتشف ما تتقنه وما تحتاجه للتدريب قبل أن تبدأ رحلتك الجديدة.

### Level 1

• **Choose the correct answer between brackets.** [6 Marks]

1. I [sing - read – play] my favorite book before sleeping.
2. [Carrots - Grapes - Cakes] are my favorite fruit.
3. When our teacher comes into the class, we [sit - stand - shout] up.
4. The [fish - fox - shark] lives in the desert.
5. [Triangle – Red – Hall] is my favorite color.
6. We have lunch in the [bedroom - dining room - balcony].

**5 – 6 marks** **Great!** Move To **level 2**
**رائع!** انتقل إلى المستوى الثانى.

**1 – 4 marks** Move to learn & Return Round 1
انتقل إلى جزء تعلم وأعد المحاولة 1

### Level 2

**1 Read, order and write.** [3 Marks]

1. is - cat - <u>It</u> - a. .....
2. is - <u>The camel</u> - big. .....
3. isn't - <u>He</u> - tall. .....

**2 Write a paragraph of about 20 words about :** [3 Marks]

"Animals"

.....

.....

.....

.....

**5 – 6 marks** **Great!** Move To **Grade 3**
**رائع!** انتقل إلى الصف الثالث.

**1 – 4 marks** Move To Learn & Return Round 2
انتقل إلى جزء تعلم واعد المحاولة 2

https://t.me/ebook15

Round 2

# 1. Learn and Return 1

تعلم ثم اعد المحاولة لاجتياز المستوى الأول



## Vocabulary

| Action verbs | الأفعال الحركية |
|---|---|
| read | يقرأ |
| write | يكتب |
| draw | يرسم |
| play | يلعب |
| eat | يأكل |
| drink | يشرب |
| sit | يجلس |
| stand up | يقف |
| sleep | ينام |
| clean | ينظف |
| color | يلون |
| sing | يغنى |
| listen | يستمع |

| Food and drinks | الطعام والمشروبات |
|---|---|
| cake | كيك |
| grapes | عنب |
| fig | تين |
| cheese | جبن |
| juice | عصير |
| chicken | دجاج |
| lunch | وجبة الغداء |
| breakfast | وجبة الإفطار |
| dinner | وجبة العشاء |
| water | ماء |
| milk | لبن |

| Colors and Shapes | الألوان والأشكال |
|---|---|
| red | أحمر |
| blue | أزرق |
| green | أخضر |
| yellow | أصفر |
| circle | دائرة |
| square | مربع |
| triangle | مثلث |

| Rooms in the House | غرف المنزل |
|---|---|
| kitchen | مطبخ |
| bedroom | غرفة النوم |
| bathroom | مرحاض |
| living room | غرفة المعيشة |
| dining room | غرفة الطعام |
| garden | حديقة |
| hall | صالة |
| balcony | شرفة |

| Animals | الحيوانات |
|---|---|
| cat | قطة |
| dog | كلب |
| fish | سمكة |
| fox | ثعلب |
| sheep | خروف |
| bird | طائر |
| camel | جمل |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# 2. Learn and Return 2

تعلم ثم اعد المحاولة لاجتياز المستوى الثانى

## How to make a sentence

• جزء ينمى لدى الطالب مهارة استخدام الكلمات وترتيبها لتكوين جملة صحيحة.

## 1 Parts of speech or types of words

ا. أجزاء الكلام أو أنواع الكلمات

تنقسم الكلمات إلى عدة أنواع يتعرف التلميذ فى هذا الجزء على بعض منها.

### 1 noun الاسم


goat عنزة


bag حقيبة


boy ولد


Salma سلمى

### 2 Verb الفعل


eat يأكل


read يقرأ


play يلعب


run يجرى

### 3 adjective الصفة


big camel
جمل كبير


small ant
نملة صغيرة

### 4 preposition حرف جر

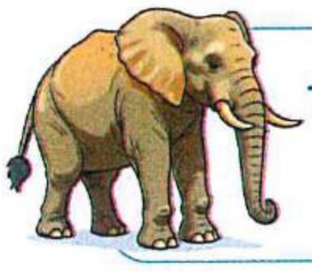

on the table
على المنضدة


in the morning
فى الصباح

### 5 pronoun ضمير



Adam is tall. He isn't short.
آدم طويل. هو ليس قصير.



The elephant is big. It isn't small.
الفيل كبير. هو ليس صغير.

- معرفة التلميذ لنوع الكلمة تساعده على استخدامها بطريقة صحيحة لتكوين جملة.

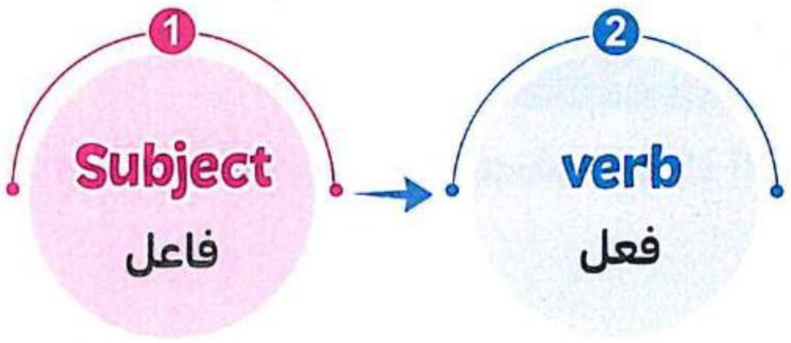
https://t.me/GSY5

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# 2 Sentence

٢. الجملة

## Subject الفاعل




Omar الفاعل

Omar plays tennis.

He plays tennis.

الفاعل He وهو ضمير فاعل
يحل محل الفاعل Omar

الفاعل قد يكون [اسم] أو يكون ضمير من [ضمائر الفاعل] التالية :

## Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

| I<br>أنا | He<br>هو | She<br>هى | It<br>هو/ هى | You<br>أنت / أنتم | They<br>هم | We<br>نحن |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| عندما يتحدث الشخص عن نفسه | عندما نتحدث عن شخص مفرد مذكر | عندما نتحدث عن شخص مفرد مؤنث | عندما نتحدث عن شيء مفرد غير عاقل | عندما نخاطب شخص أو أكثر | عندما نتحدث عن اثنين أو أكثر | عندما يذكر الشخص نفسه مع الاخرين |

## الضمائر المفردة



He She It



I



You

## الضمائر الجمع



They

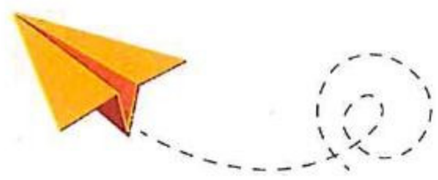


We



You

Round 3



# Unlock Your Grade 3 Journey

ابدأ رحلتك نحو الصف الثالث الابتدائى
للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات



## Specifications for Third Year Primary 2026 - 2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الثالث الابتدائى للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧

### 1 Listen and write the missing sounds : *[6 Marks]*

Learners are given **FOUR [4]** words with **FOUR [4]** missing sounds. They are asked to write the sounds they listened to in each space. The sounds should be related to the phonics they studied. *[One and a half marks each]*

**Practice** 

تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار

**السؤال الاول فى الورقة الامتحانية :** استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.



سؤال الاستماع هو عبارة عن [4] كلمات بها [4] حروف [أصوات] ناقصة. يقوم الطالب بتكملة الحرف الناقص طبقًا للصوت الذى يسمعه.

نص الاستماع : 1. ball | 2. yellow | 3. wheel | 4. glass

| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. |
|---|---|---|---|
| b _ _ _ | ye _ _ ow | _ _ eel | gla _ _ |

Specifications for Third Year Primary 2026 - 2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الثالث الابتدائى للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: *[2 Marks]*

A text of about **[25 - 35]** words with **FOUR [4]** deletions is provided. **FIVE [5]** words related to the vocabulary learners studied are given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FIVE [5]** words given.

*[Half a mark each]*

https://t.me/G5 Y5

## Practice

**تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار**



**السؤال الثانى في الورقة الامتحانية :** اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

يعطى الطالب نص مكون من [25] إلى [35] كلمة به [4] فراغات.

على الطالب أن يكمل النص باستخدام [4] كلمات من الكلمات [5]

المعطاة على المفردات اللغوية.

tennis - rackets – club – ball – friends

My friends and I go to the [1] ..... to play sports. It's so much fun! We play football. We kick the [2] ..... into the goal. We play basketball. We hit the ball into the net. My [3] ..... play volleyball. They hit the ball over the net. We also play tennis with [4] ..... . And we love to run around the courts.



◄ الإجابة على السؤال :

• النقطة الأولى عن مكان يلعب فيه الناس الرياضة لذا نختار كلمة [club] بمعنى [النادى الرياضى]

## Specifications for Third Year Primary 2026 - 2027

**مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الثالث الابتدائى للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧**

**3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.** *[9 Marks]*

An unseen literary or informational text from **THIRTY (30)** to **FORTY (40)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for **PRIMARY THREE**. Learners are asked to answer :

A. **TWO (2) MCQ** with **THREE (3)** options each *[Half a mark each]*

B. **FOUR (4) open-ended** questions *[Two marks each]*

## Practice

**تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار**

**السؤال الثالث فى الورقة الامتحانية :** اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة.

يعطى الطالب نص مكون من [30] إلى [40] كلمة متبوعًا بسؤالين اختيار من متعدد لكل منهم ثلاث اختيارات و[4] اسئلة بأداة استفهام يجيب عنهم الطالب.

It's my grandma's birthday today. My family is having a **special** meal. My cousins are at our house. I'm helping my mom with food and drink. My sister wants cake. My cousin would like an ice cream. I would like some cookies.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :**

**1.** The main idea of the text is about " ..... ".

a. grandma's birthday  b. cakes  c. the museum

**2.** The underlined word "**special**" means " ..... " .

a. usual  b. important  c. bad

**B. Answer the following questions.**

**3.** Who wants cake ?

The writer's sister.

**4.** What is the writer doing ?

The writer is helping mom with food and drink.

**5.** What is the family celebrating ?

They are celebrating grandma's birthday.

**6.** Who would like ice cream ?

The writer's cousin.

## Specifications for Third Year Primary 2026 - 2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الثالث الابتدائى للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧

### The Reader [2 Marks]

**4 A. Read and match :** [1 Mark]

**TWO (2)** sentences are provided into two columns learners are asked to match each part in column A with the correct part in column B. The sentences should test Learners' knowledge of events, characters and setting of the Reader.

[Half a mark each]

**B. Read and write YES or NO :** [1 Mark]

Learners are given **TWO (2)** sentences based on the reader. They are asked to answer Yes OR NO. The sentences should test learners' knowledge of events, characters and setting of the Reader. [Half a mark each]

**OR**

**B. Read and write T (True) or F (False) :** [1 Mark]

**TWO (2)** sentences related to the Reader are provided. Learners are asked to read the sentences and write **(T) True or (F) False** in front of each sentence. The sentences should test learners' knowledge of events, characters and setting of the Reader. [Half a mark each]

**Practice**

**تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار**

**السؤال الرابع فى الورقة الامتحانية :** القصة.

يجيب الطالب على مجموعتين من الاسئلة على القصة:

**[ أ ]** اقرأ وصل : جملتين على الطالب أن يصل كل جزء من العمود [A] بما يناسبه فى العمود [B]

**[ب]** اقرأ واكتب نعم أو لا :

يعطى الطالب جملتين على القصة المقررة وعليه أن يجيب بكتابة [نعم] أو [لا].

تدور الاسئلة حول احداث وشخصيات ومكان وزمان احداث القصة.

**أو**

**[ب]** اقرأ واكتب صح أو خطأ

يعطى الطالب جملتين وعلى الطالب أن يقرأ الجمل ويكتب صح [T] أو خطأ [F].

تدور الاسئلة حول احداث وشخصيات ومكان وزمان احداث القصة.

القصة المقررة : **Fares and the fish**

## Specifications for Third Year Primary 2026 - 2027

**مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الثالث الابتدائى للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧**

**5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:** *[2 Marks]*

**FOUR [4] MCQs**, based on structure are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer out of the **THREE [3]** options given. *[Half a mark each]*

**Practice**

**تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار**

**السؤال الخامس فى الورقة الامتحانية :** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

سؤال الأختيار من متعدد هو أربعة [4] جمل معطاة للطالب على القواعد اللغوية. يقوم الطالب باختيار الإجابة الصحيحة من بين [3] خيارات معطاة.

**1.** Maged and Ali ..... reading books.

a. is  b. am  c. are

**2.** I ..... up at 7 o'clock.

a. get  b. gets  c. getting

**3.** Where ..... he work ?

a. is  b. does  c. do

**4.** Earth is ..... than Jupiter.

a. small  b. smaller  c. smallest

◄ الإجابة على السؤال :

رقم [١] نختار [c. are] لان الفاعل جمع [شخصين هم ماجد وعلى]

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Specifications for Third Year Primary 2026 - 2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الثالث الابتدائى للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧

**6 Read, order, and write :** *[2 Marks]*

Learners are given **TWO (2)** sentences of not less than **SIX (6)** words each. The words of each sentence are scrambled. Learners are asked to put the words in order to make a correct sentence. *[One mark each]*

### Practice

**تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار**

**السؤال السادس فى الورقة الامتحانية :** اقرأ ، رتب واكتب.

سؤال الترتيب هو عبارة عن جملتين بهما حوالى [٦] كلمات غير مرتبة يقوم الطالب بترتيبها لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. disturb - **Don't** - animals - wild.

.....

2. orbits - **The Earth** - sun - the.

.....



◄ الإجابة على السؤال :

- النقطة الأولى هى جملة امر منفية تبدأ بـ [Don't] ثم الفعل فى المصدر [disturb] ونضع الصفة [wild] قبل الاسم [animals].

## Specifications for Third Year Primary 2026 - 2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الثالث الابتدائى للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧

**7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements :** *[7 Marks]*

Learners are asked to write a paragraph of not less than **TWENTY (20)** words (3-4 sentences) using **THREE (3)** guiding words given.

**(Two marks for relevance of ideas - Two marks for vocabulary – One mark for grammar – One mark for spelling – One mark for punctuation)**

## Practice

**تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار**

**السؤال السابع فى الورقة الامتحانية :** اكتب فقرة انشائية مكونة من [20] كلمة [3-4]
جمل مستخدمًا الكلمات المعطاة.
يقوم الطالب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية من حوالى [٢٠] كلمة بما يعادل ثلاثة إلى أربعة جمل بإستخدام ثلاثة كلمات معطاة.

**كيفية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية**

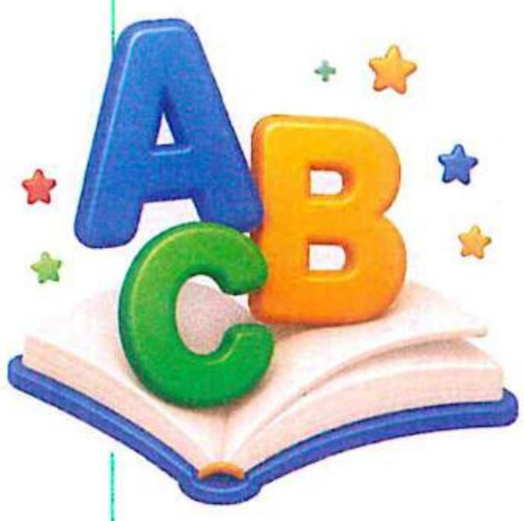
### How to write a paragraph:

**القواعد العامة لكتابة فقرة إنشائية :**

١. اترك مسافة تعادل خمسة أحرف [تقريبًا ١ سم] فى السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.
٢. أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
٣. أن تضع [.] واضحة فى نهاية كل جملة.
٤. اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
٥. ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونّوع بدايات الجمل.
٦. استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذى تكتبه.
٧. عليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة وأن يكون لكل جملة معنى واضح.
٨. اجتهد فى تحسين خطك وذلك بترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
٩. استخدم القواعد بالشكل الصحيح.




## 1 Capital Letters : الحروف الكبيرة




تستخدم مع

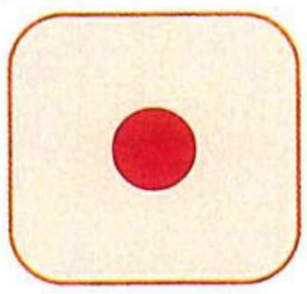
1. بداية الجملة...
   - الخبرية: He is tall.
   - الاستفهامية: What is your name?
   - الأمرية: Open your bag.
2. أسماء المدن والبلاد والأماكن المشهورة → Egypt, Cairo, the Egyptian Museum
3. أسماء البحار والانهار → the Red Sea, the River Nile
4. أيام الأسبوع وشهور السنة → Friday, May
5. أسماء الأشخاص → Ahmed, Mona
6. اللغات والجنسيات → English, Arabic, Egyptian
7. الضمير "I" فى أى مكان فى الجملة → I can swim. / Can I swim?

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## 2 Full stop :

توضع **النقطة** [.] فى نهاية
الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

- I am Kareem.
- Open the door, please.



## 3 Question mark :

توضع **علامة الاستفهام** [?]
فى نهاية السؤال.

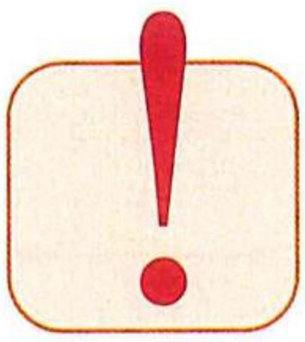
- How are you?



## 4 Exclamation mark :

تستخدم **علامة التعجب** [!]
فى حالة الترحيب أو التعجب.

- Wow !
- Hello !
- How wonderful !
- Help !
- What a nice car !



## 5 Apostrophe :

1 تستخدم **الفاصلة العليا** [’]
فى الاختصارات مثل
[am=’m / is = ’s / are = ’re / have = ’ve]

2 تستخدم مع [’s] الملكية.

1 It’s a puppet.

2 That is Heba’s car.



## 6 Comma :

1 تستخدم **الفاصلة السفلية** [ , ] بعد Yes أو No.

2 تستخدم للفصل بين مجموعة من الأشياء من نوع واحد.

3 توضع **الفاصلة** [ , ] بعد المخاطب فى أول الجملة وقبل المخاطب فى آخر الجملة.

4 توضع قبل كلمة [please] فى آخر الكلام وبعد [please] أول الكلام.

- Yes, I am.
- No, I am not.
- I met Samya, Heba and Nabila.
- Come here, Noha.
- Noha, come here.
- Please, keep quiet.
- Pass the cake, please.



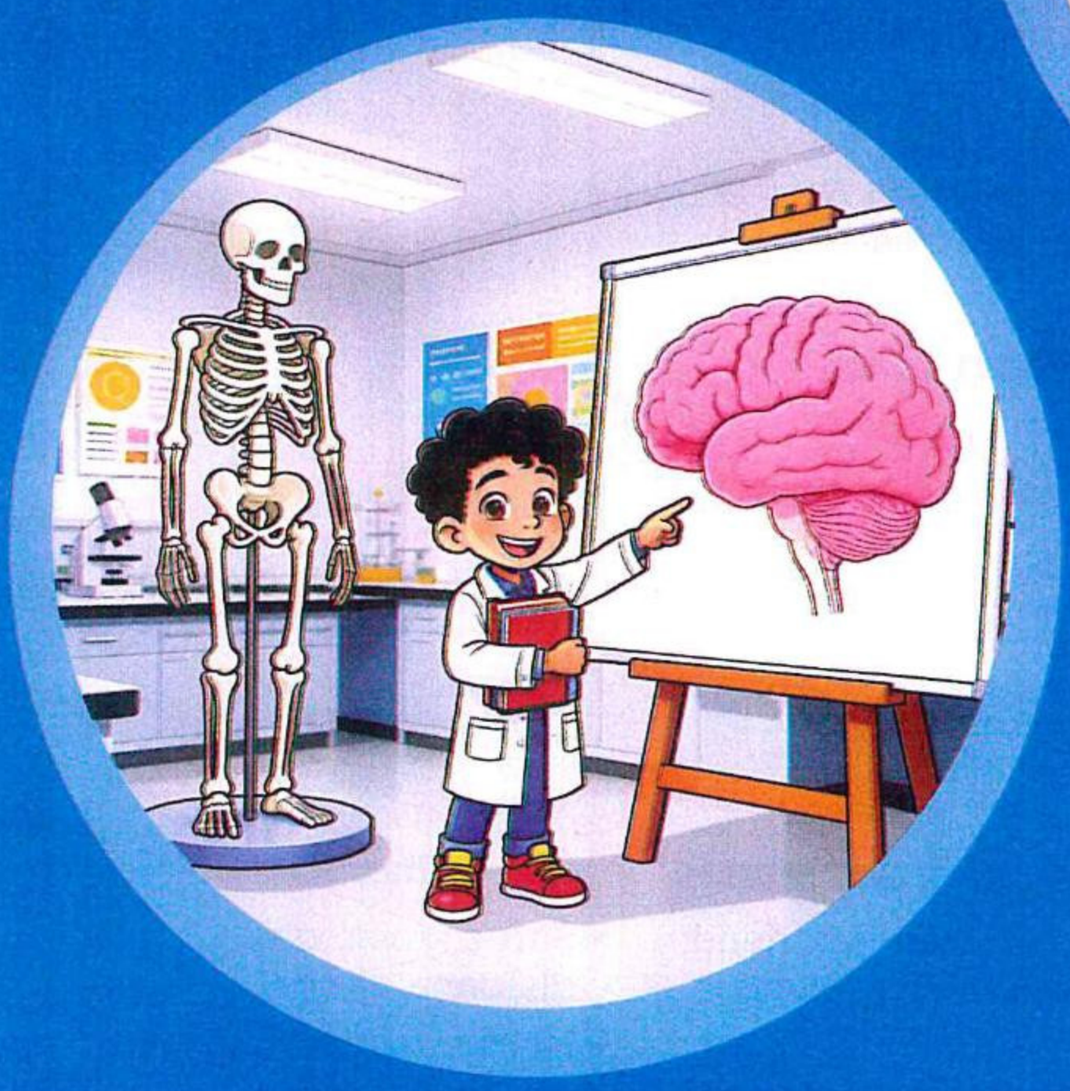
https://t.me/G5Y5

THEME 1

# Who am I ?

## (A Healthy Life)







https://t.me/GSKY5



**تنويه**

- علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
- علامة AB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التدريبات

UNIT 1

# At the track

## فى ميدان السباق

### Unit One Objectives

**Vocabulary**

- athlete, compete, distance, event, jump, measure, race, apologize, spread rumors
- لاعب رياضى ، ينافس ، مسافة ، حدث، يقيس، سباق، يعتذر، ينشر شائعات

**Language**

- She will be happy.
- It won't be easy.
- سوف تكون سعيدة.
- لن يكون الأمر سهلًا.

**Reading and stories**

- A text about a friend; a text about world records
- Story : The Hare and the Tortoise
- نص عن صديق؛ نص عن الأرقام القياسية العالمية
- قصة : الأرنب البرى والسلحفاة

**Phonics**

- Soft c : race, city, distance, citadel
- Hard c : camel, cookie, plastic
- سباق، مدينة، مسافة، قلعة
- جمل، كعكة [كوكيز]، بلاستيك

LESSONS 1&2

- Vocabulary
- Language use

# I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

## Key vocabulary



throwing الرمى



jumping القفز



swimming السباحة



running الجرى



race سباق/يتسابق



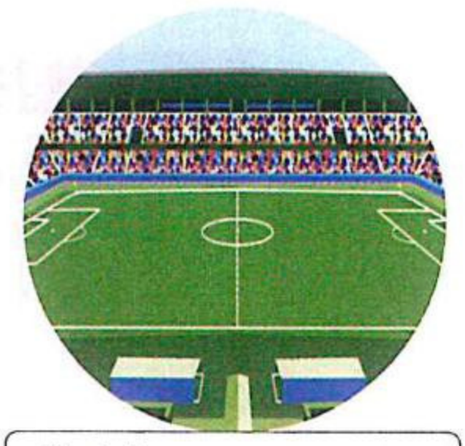
athlete لاعب رياضى



medal ميدالية



distance مسافة



field ساحة



winner فائز



long jump
الوثب (القفز) الطويل

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sports event | حدث رياضى | exciting | مثير |
| different | مختلف | quickly | بسرعة |
| competition | مسابقة | amazing | مدهش |
| easy | سهل | track | مسار سباق |
| tired | متعب | really | للغاية / حقًا |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| hope | يتمنى | hoped |
| compete | ينافس | competed |
| measure | يقيس | measured |
| jump | يقفز | jumped |
| enter | يدخل | entered |

**Irregular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| run | يجرى | ran |
| win | يفوز | won |
| throw | يلقى | threw |
| get | يحصل على | got |
| wear | يرتدى | wore |
| think | يعتقد | thought |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| At the track | sports event | There's a big sports event. |
| | athletes - competing | Lots of athletes from different schools are competing. |
| | competitions - throwing | There are competitions in running, jumping, and throwing. |
| A sports event | track - field | The track is 800 meters around the field. |
| | running - quickly | The athletes are running very quickly. |
| | throwing | There is a throwing competition. |
| | distance | Three meters is a good distance for throwing the ball. |
| | measure | Someone measures how far the athletes throw the ball. |

تدريب تلقائى

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

05 min

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I like sports. Today, I'm at a sports ..... . [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٦]
   a. winner  b. event  c. medal

2. He ..... how far the athletes throw the ball. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٥]
   a. eats  b. cooks  c. measures

3. There's a swimming ..... . My friend will win. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / القاهرة - غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٥]
   a. sea  b. competition  c. river

4. Three meters is a good ..... for throwing the ball. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / سوهاج ٢٠٢٥]
   a. distance  b. race  c. medal

5. Adel has got a gold medal. He's the ..... .
   a. race  b. winner  c. distance

6. Many ..... compete in the sports event.
   a. teachers  b. athletes  c. vets

# II Listening and Reading

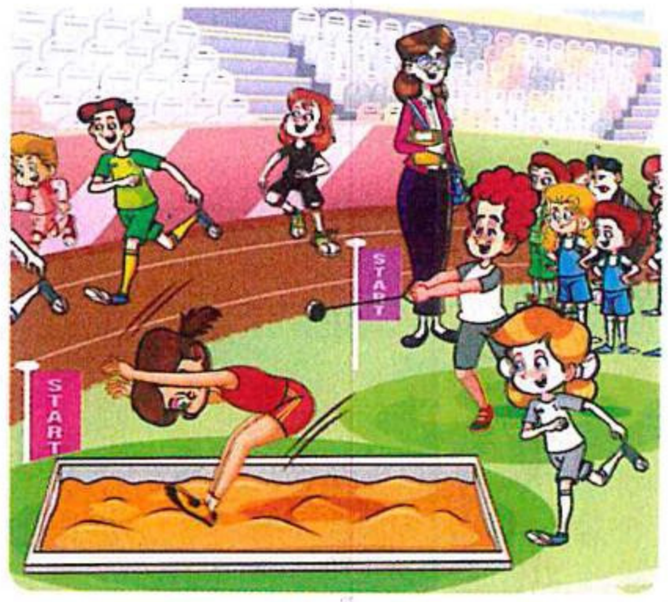
Pop Quiz
تدرب
على قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع
05 min

## Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Today, we're at the track. There's a big sports event. Lots of athletes from different schools are competing. Look ! They are wearing red, blue, green, and black.

There are competitions in running, jumping, and throwing. I'm watching the long jump.
I think the athlete wearing red will win.

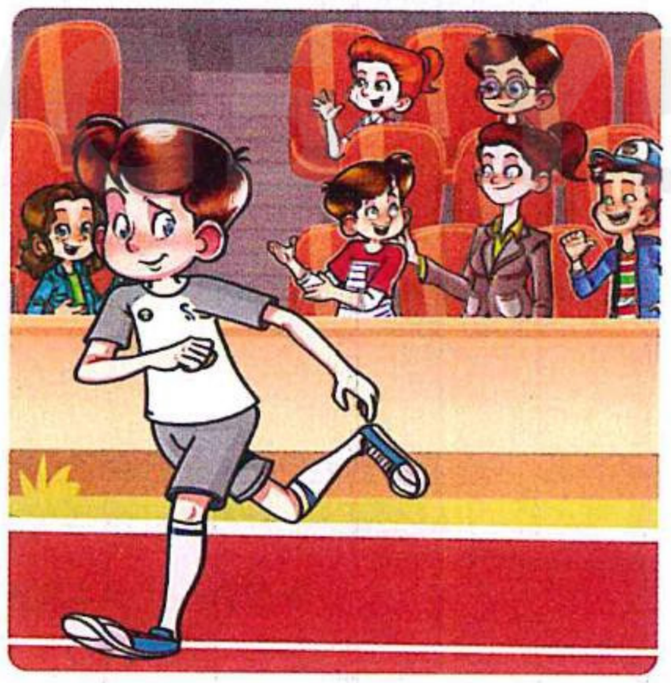



اليوم، نحن فى ميدان الســباق. يوجد حدث رياضى كبير. يتنافس الكثير مــن اللاعبين الرياضيين من مدارس مختلفة. انظر! إنهم يرتدون اللون الأحمر، الأزرق، الأخضر والأسود.

يوجــد مســابقات فى رياضة الجرى، القفز والرمى. أنا أشــاهد رياضة الوثب الطويل. أعتقد أن اللاعــب الرياضى الذى يرتدى اللون الأحمر هو من سيفوز.

I'm at a sports event today with Mom and my brother. Some athletes are running. The track is 800 meters around the field. The race is exciting – the athletes are running very quickly. I hope Waleed wins today !

There is a throwing competition, too. You have to throw the ball as far as you can. Three meters is a good distance for throwing the ball. Someone measures how far the athletes throw the ball. That athlete competed in a sports event and won. He can jump really high ! Now, he is getting a medal !



أنا فى حدث رياضى اليوم مع والدتى وأخى. بعض اللاعبين الرياضيين يمارســون رياضة الجرى. مســار الســباق طوله ٨٠٠ متر حول الساحة. السباق مثير - يجرى اللاعبون الرياضيون بسرعة جدًا. أتمنى أن يفوز وليد اليوم !

يوجد مســابقة رمى أيضًا. عليك رمى الكرة بعيدًا بقدر ما تســتطيع. ثلاثة أمتار مسافة جيدة لرمى الكرة. يقيس شخص ما إلى أى مدى يرمى الرياضيون الكرة. تنافس ذلك اللاعب الرياضى فى الحدث الرياضى وفاز. هو يستطيع القفز عاليًا جدًا! الآن، يحصل على ميدالية!

**Choose** the correct answer.

Learn

1. The track is 800 meters around the ..... .
   a. school  b. field  c. farm

Practice

2. They are at a ..... event today.
   a. art  b. sports  c. music

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# III Language

## Using future simple with "will" to make predictions.

استخدام المستقبل البسيط مع "will" لعمل التنبؤات.

## A Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

**Subject** الفاعل **+ will ['ll] + inf.** مصدر الفعل + ..... باقى الجملة .



- I think our school will get a medal today.
  - أعتقد أن مدرستنا سوف تحصل على ميدالية اليوم.
- She'll be happy. - سوف تكون سعيدة.



## B Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

**Subject** الفاعل **+ will not (won't) + inf.** مصدر الفعل + ..... باقى الجملة .



- I think he won't get a medal.
  - أعتقد أنه لن يحصل على ميدالية.
- It won't be easy. - لن يكن ذلك سهلًا.



Note : • will not = won't
• We can use [think] to make a prediction.

## C Yes / No question السؤال بـ "هل" ... ؟

**Will + subject** الفاعل **+ inf.** مصدر الفعل ..... **?**

Yes, + subj. + will.
No, + subj. + won't.



Will they be tired?
هل سيكونوا متعبين؟



Yes, they will.
نعم، سوف يكونوا.



https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Pop Quiz on Language

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. ..... you go to school tomorrow ?
   a. Is  b. Will  c. Does
2. I won't ..... to the club. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / البحيرة ٢٠٢٥]
   a. goes  b. going  c. go
3. Will it be a good competition ? - Yes, it ..... .
   a. won't  b. will  c. is
4. ..... Dina enter the competition ? - Yes, she will.
   a. Was  b. Will  c. Is
5. We will ..... the next race. [Giza - South Giza 2025]
   a. wins  b. win  c. won
6. SB It won't ..... easy to win today. [Beheira - Dalangat 2025 - Alexandria - west 2026]
   a. is  b. are  c. be
7. SB The winner will ..... a medal. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / القاهرة / غرب مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٦]
   a. get  b. gets  c. got
8. He will ..... the ball.
   a. throwing  b. throw  c. throws
9. The sports event will ..... amazing.
   a. be  b. is  c. are
10. Will he ..... the competition ?
    a. enters  b. entered  c. enter
11. Will you ..... your new T-shirt tomorrow ?
    a. wears  b. wear  c. wearing
12. The athlete wearing blue will ..... the fastest.
    a. to be  b. being  c. be
13. I think Nada ..... be tired today. [Aswan - Aswan 2025]
    a. will  b. is  c. was
14. They will ..... football after school.
    a. playing  b. plays  c. play
15. Will Mona ..... her room ?
    a. clean  b. cleans  c. cleaning
16. They won't ..... by train.
    a. traveling  b. travels  c. travel

# General Exercises On Lessons 1 & 2

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى **نهاية الكتاب**

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

athletes - throwing - event - black - winner

Today, we're at the track. There's a big sports [1] ..... . Lots of [2] ..... are competing. They're wearing red, blue, green, and [3] ..... . They are competing in running, jumping, and [4] ..... .

[Giza - Oseem 2026]

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Radwa is at a sports event today. Some athletes are jumping. She hopes her friend Dalia will win today ! Dalia can jump really high ! Radwa likes watching the long jump. It's exciting. Dalia exercises very hard to win.

[Assuit - Sidfa 2025]

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. The long jump is ..... .
   a. bad  b. exciting  c. boring
2. Dalia can ..... really high.
   a. jump  b. swim  c. see

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where is Radwa today ?

   .....

4. What are some athletes doing ?

   .....

5. Who does Radwa hope will win ?

   .....

6. What does Radwa like watching ?

   .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

[Minya - Mallawi 2026]

A. 1. I think it ..... be easy to run today.
   a. won't  b. is  c. are
2. ..... they be tired ? - Yes, they will be tired.
   a. Will  b. Are  c. Do

https://t.me/G5Y5

3. Will he win ? - No, he ..... . [Luxor – Esna 2025]

a. isn't b. won't c. doesn't

4. Will she ..... a medal today ?

a. gets b. got c. get

B. 1. He runs very quickly. I think he ..... win a medal. [Beheira - Damanhur 2025]

a. is b. will c. are

2. ..... watch the match on TV?

a. He will b. Will he c. He won't

3. Ten athletes will ..... in the 200-meter race this afternoon.

a. competes b. competing c. compete

4. I think the athlete wearing green will ..... .

a. wins b. win c. winning

## 4 Read, order and write.

اقرأ ، رتب واكتب.

A. 1. will – happy – The winner – be. [Monoufia - Tala 2026]

.....

2. will – athlete – What – get – the ?

.....

B. 1. a sports – today – There – event – is. [Fayoum – Etsa 2025]

.....

2. do – like – you – events – sports – What ? [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٥]

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من [٢٠ كلمة] [٣ - ٤] جمل مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**A sports event**

Guiding elements :

• athletes • running • competitions

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

LESSON 3

# Language use

## Language

### 1 Asking about distance, height and speed.

ا. السؤال عن المسافة ، الارتفاع والسرعة.

### A How far ..... ?

كم المسافة .....؟



How far can he jump ?
كم المسافة التى يستطيع قفزها ؟



He can jump four meters !
هو يستطيع أن يقفز إلى مسافة ٤ أمتار !



### B How high ..... ?

كم الارتفاع .....؟



How high can she jump ?
كم الارتفاع الذى تستطيع قفزه ؟



She can jump one meter !
هى تستطيع أن تقفز إلى ارتفاع متر واحد !



### C How fast ..... ?

كم السرعة .....؟



How fast can he run ?
كم السرعة التى يستطيع أن يجرى بها ؟



He can run 100 meters in 15 seconds !
يستطيع أن يجرى ١٠٠ متر فى ١٥ ثانية!



**Note :**

- عند التعبير عن القدرة نستخدم :

**can + inf.** مصدر الفعل

- يأتى مصدر الفعل بعد الفعل [can].
- She can win.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Pop Quiz on Language

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. ..... high is the mountain ?
   a. Who  b. What  c. How

2. How ..... can he jump ? – One meter. [New Valley 2026]
   a. fast  b. high  c. many

3. He can ..... 100 meters in 15 seconds.
   a. run  b. runs  c. running

4. How ..... can you throw the ball ? [Ismailia – Abu Suwir 2025]
   a. far  b. much  c. many

5. How ..... is the train ?
   a. often  b. many  c. fast

## 2 Comparative ٢. صيغة المقارنة

### مقارنة الظروف Adverbs

- الظرف يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل الذى يقوم به شخص ما.
- عند المقارنة بين اثنين فى **(فعل)** ما نستخدم :

**Subj.** فاعل **+ verb +** فعل **adverb** الظرف **+ er + than**

- Nader jumped farther than Hassan.

### مقارنة الصفات Adjectives

- الصفة تصف الاسم [شىء - شخص] عند استخدام صيغة المقارنة فى **(صفة قصيرة)** معينة نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

..... **short adj.** صفة قصيرة **+ er + than** .....

**Ex. :** • Lara is faster than Mariam.

## 3 Superlative ٣. صيغة التفضيل

### صيغة التفضيل مع الظروف Adverbs

**Subj.** فاعل **+ verb +** فعل **the +** **adverb** الظرف **+ est**

- Amira jumped the highest.

### صيغة التفضيل مع الصفات Adjectives

..... **the + short adj.** صفة قصيرة **+ est** .....

**Ex. :** • Talia is the fastest runner.

تستخدم صيغة المقارنة والتفضيل السابقة مع الظروف التى لا تنتهى بـ (-ly).

## Pop Quiz on Language

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Dina jumped ..... than Lara. [Suez 2026]
   a. high  b. higher  c. highest
2. She is ..... fastest player on the team. [Gharbia – West Tanta 2025]
   a. then  b. the  c. than
3. She is ..... than her sister.
   a. slow  b. slower  c. slowest
4. She swims faster ..... her brother.
   a. than  b. then  c. that
5. Who is the ..... athlete ? – Noha.
   a. fast  b. faster  c. fastest
6. Noha jumped the ..... in the race.
   a. far  b. farther  c. farthest
7. He is ..... than his brother.
   a. tall  b. taller  c. tallest
8. Today is hotter ..... yesterday.
   a. than  b. the  c. then
9. Nader arrived the ..... in the class.
   a. earlier  b. earliest  c. early
10. The eagle flew the ..... .
    a. higher  b. high  c. highest
11. Adam studies ..... than Marwan.
    a. hard  b. harder  c. hardest
12. The Nile is ..... longest river.
    a. then  b. than  c. the

https://t.me/G5Y5

# General Exercises On Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

jump – competing – sports – fastest – meters

I'm Jana. I'm at a [1] ..... event today. Lots of my friends are [2] ..... . My friend Lara is good at high jump. She can [3] ..... four meters high. My friend Talia ran the [4] ..... . [Minia – Maghagha 2025]

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Hala. I'm at a sports event with my mom and dad. Some athletes are running. The track is 800 meters long. The race is fun, and the runners are very fast. There is a throwing competition, too. You have to throw a ball as far as you can. Three meters is a good distance.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Hala is at a ..... event.
   a. sports  b. cooking  c. reading
2. The runners are very ..... .
   a. slow  b. weak  c. fast

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who is Hala with ?

   .....

4. How is the race ?

   .....

5. How long is the track ?

   .....

6. How far is a good distance for throwing the ball ?

   .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

A. 1. Youssef is the ..... in throwing the ball. [Dakahlia – English Supervision 2025]
   a. faster  b. fast  c. fastest

2. She is ..... tallest athlete.

a. the b. than c. that

3. I won the medal. I jumped the ..... .

a. high b. higher c. highest

4. Rana ran ..... than Mary.

a. fast b. faster c. fastest

**B.** 1. How ..... can Ibrahim run ? - He can run 100 meters in 10 seconds.

a. high b. fast c. much

2. ..... jumped the highest ? - Dalia. [Beheira - Damanhour 2026]

a. Who b. Where c. When

3. How ..... can she jump ? - She can jump one meter.

a. high b. highest c. higher

4. Ahmed jumped ..... than Akram. [Cairo - Al-Khalifa 2025]

a. higher b. high c. highest

## 4 Read, order and write.

اقرأ ، رتب واكتب.

**A.** 1. fastest - Who - was - the ? [Giza - North Giza 2026]

.....

2. can – four – I – jump – meters.

.....

**B.** 1. can - he - How far - jump ? [Alexandria - Montaza 2025]

.....

2. Mariam - Nada - farther - jumped - than.

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من [٢٠ كلمة] [٣ - ٤] جمل مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**At the track**

Guiding elements :

• run • fast • meters

.....

.....

.....

.....

LESSONS 4&5

- Reading and writing
- Reading and listening



## I Vocabulary




| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| warm up | يقوم بعملية الإحماء [قبل التمرين] | support | يساند |
| come second | يأتى فى المركز الثانى | try harder | يبذل جهد أكبر |
| together | معًا | runner | عداء / متسابق |
| competition | مسابقة - منافسة | snack | وجبة خفيفة |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| train | يتدرب | trained |
| record | يسجل | recorded |
| finish | ينتهى | finished |

**Irregular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| bring | يحضر | brought |
| come | يأتى | came |

## Important Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| • get fit | يصبح لائق بدنيًا | • How often ... ? | كم مرة .....؟ |
| • have fun | يستمتع | • worry about | يقلق بشأن |
| • get ready | يجهز / يستعد | • do better | يؤدى بشكل أفضل |
| • do a lot of exercise | يتدرب كثيرًا | • work hard | يعمل بجد |

## Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

| Word الكلمة | Definition التعريف |
|---|---|
| warm up | get your body ready to do exercise اجعل جسمك مستعدًا للتمرين |
| support a friend | help a friend يساعد صديق |
| come second | be the next person to finish after the winner هو الشخص الذى ينهى السباق بعد الفائز |
| try harder | work hard to do better العمل بجد للقيام بعمل أفضل |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Why is Nesma training ? | track | Nesma is at the track with her friend, Sara. |
| | athlete | Sara is an athlete. |
| | exercise | Sara does a lot of exercise. |
| | big - competition | Sara has a big competition next month. |
| | training - support | Nesma is training with Sara to support her. |
| | race - win | Sara was in a race last month, but she didn't win. |
| | good friend | Sara is a good friend. |




## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary




- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We ..... up before the race. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / اسيوط - ديروط ٢٠٢٦]
   a. sleep  b. look  c. warm
2. ..... harder to win the race. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / الجيزة - الدقى ٢٠٢٦]
   a. Try  b. Win  c. Fly
3. She ..... her friend in the training. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / القاهرة - مصر الجديدة ٢٠٢٦]
   a. plays  b. supports  c. comes
4. It's good to do a lot of ..... .
   a. food  b. exercise  c. weekends
5. I'm a good ..... . I run very quickly. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٦]
   a. doctor  b. farmer  c. runner
6. The ..... came second in the competition.
   a. doctor  b. athlete  c. farmer
7. We warm up to get ..... for the match.
   a. ready  b. funny  c. happy

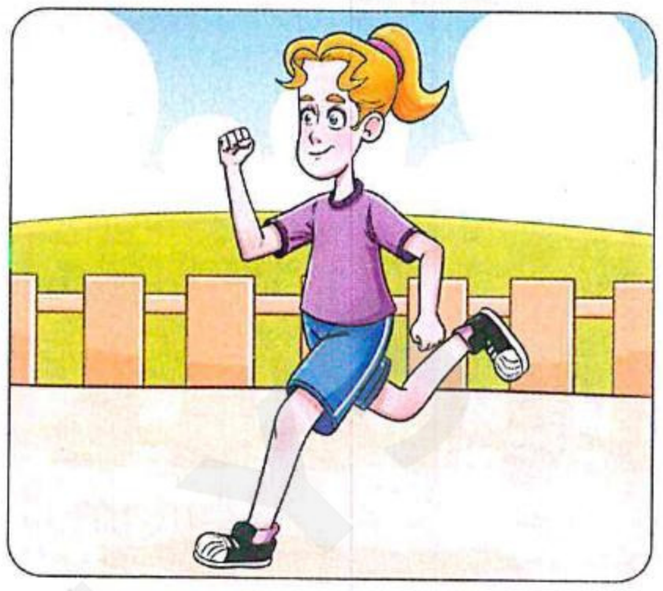
https://t.me/G5_Y5

# II Reading and Writing

Pop Quiz
تدرب
على قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع
05 min

## Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

### Why is Nesma training ?



Hello! My name's Nesma and I'm at the track with my friend, Sara. Sara is an athlete, so she does a lot of exercise. We come here three times a week. She comes with her parents once on the **weekend**[1], too.
Sara is a **runner**[2], and she has a big competition next month. I think she'll win!

I'm **training**[3] with her to **support**[4] her, and it helps me **get fit**[5]. We warm up **together**[6] and we have fun! I **record**[7] her race times, too. Her best event is the 200-meter race. She's very fast! Sara was in a race last month, but she didn't win. She came second, so she wants to try harder. She finished in 35 seconds. She wants to be faster next time. Sara always eats healthy food. We **bring**[8] some fruit to the track to have a **snack**[9], and we drink lots of water.
I like helping Sara because she's a really good friend to me. She always listens when I have a problem, or if I'm worried about something. So that's why I want to help her as much as I can!

[1] عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
[2] عداء / متسابق
[3] يتدرب
[4] يدعم
[5] يصبح لائقًا بدنيًا
[6] معًا
[7] يسجل
[8] يحضر
[9] وجبة خفيفة

**لماذا تتدرب نسمة ؟**

مرحبًا ! اسمى نسمة، أنا فى ميدان السباق مع صديقتى سارة. سارة لاعبة رياضية، لذلك هى تتدرب كثيرًا. نحن نأتى هنا ثلاث مرات أسبوعيًا. هى تأتى مع والديها مرة فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، أيضًا. سارة عداءة ولديها مسابقة كبيرة الشهر القادم. أعتقد أنها سوف تفوز! أنا أتدرب معها لتشجيعها وهذا يساعدنى أن أصبح لائقة بدنيًا. نقوم بعملية الإحماء معًا ونستمتع! أسجل لها أوقات السباق، أيضًا. الحدث الأفضل لها هو سباق الـ ٢٠٠ متر. هى سريعة جدًا ! سارة كانت فى السباق الشهر الماضى، ولكنها لم تفز. لقد حصلت على المركز الثانى، لذلك هى تريد أن تبذل جهد أكبر. هى انتهت من الجرى فى ٣٥ ثانية. هى تريد أن تكون أسرع المرة القادمة. سارة دائمًا تأكل طعامًا صحيًا. نحضر بعض الفاكهة إلى ميدان السباق لنتناول وجبة خفيفة ونشرب الكثير من الماء. أحب مساعدة سارة لأنها صديقة جيدة بالنسبة لى. هى دائمًا تستمع إلىّ عندما يكون لدى مشكلة، أو أشعر بقلق من شىء ما. ولهذا السبب أريد مساعدتها قدر استطاعتى !

**Choose** the correct answer.

Learn
1. Sara is a ..... .
   a. swimmer  b. jumper  c. runner

Practice
2. Nesma is at the ..... with Sara.
   a. track  b. home  c. office
3. Nesma is training with Sara to ..... her.
   a. support  b. read  c. ask

## III Language

**A conjunction :** is a word that joins words and sentences together.

**أداة الربط** هى كلمة تربط الكلمات والجمل معًا.

**and** و | **so** لذلك | **because** لأن | **but** لكن | **or** أو

### 1. To join ideas

**and** و

١. نستخدم [and] إذا كانت الجملتان متوافقتان [لربط الأفكار].

Mariam likes running **and** doing the high jump.



### 2. To express result

**so** لذلك

٢. نستخدم [so] عند ذكر نتيجة فعل شئ.

Mona came second this year **so** she 'll try harder next year.




### 3. To express the reason

**because** لأن

٣. نستخدم [because] لذكر سبب حدوث أو عدم حدوث فعل معين.

I like helping Khalil **because** he's my friend.



### 4. To show contrast

**but** لكن

٤. نستخدم [but] عند توضيح التناقض.

Ali ran very fast in the race, **but** he didn't win a medal.



### 5. To give options

**or** أو

٥. نستخدم [or] للتخيير.

Do you like throwing the ball **or** jumping ?

I don't like throwing the ball **or** jumping. I like running.



https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Pop Quiz on Language

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We wear T-shirts ..... it's hot today.
   a. or  b. so  c. because

2. Adam is fast, ..... Nader is slow. [Fayoum - Itsa 2026]
   a. but  b. because  c. so

3. I'm tired, ..... I will sleep.
   a. so  b. but  c. because

4. I like apples ..... bananas. [South Sinai 2026]
   a. and  b. because  c. so

5. I love eating fruits ..... vegetables.
   a. but  b. and  c. so

6. Would you like tea ..... coffee ?
   a. but  b. or  c. because

7. She trained hard, ..... she won the race.
   a. so  b. but  c. or

8. He was in a race, ..... he didn't win.
   a. because  b. or  c. but

9. We help ..... support our friends.
   a. or  b. and  c. because

10. I can't wear this hat ..... it's small.
    a. but  b. because  c. so

11. You can go by bus ..... taxi.
    a. but  b. or  c. because

12. Which sport do you like more, football ..... swimming ?
    a. because  b. or  c. and

https://t.me/G5 Y5

# General Exercises On Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع **فى نهاية الكتاب**

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

competition – support – track – win – athlete

My name's Nesma and I'm at the track with my friend, Sara. Sara is a/an [1] ..... , so she does a lot of exercise. We come here three times a week. She comes with her parents once on the weekend, too. Sara is a runner, and she has a big [2] ..... next month. I think she'll [3] ..... ! I'm training with her to [4] ..... her, and it helps me get fit. We warm up together and we have fun!

[Beheira - El Rahmaniya 2026]

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Malak is a good girl. She likes jumping. She goes to the track four times a week. She eats healthy food. She has a big competition in jumping next month, so she is training very hard. I think she will win a medal !

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

[Suez – South Suez 2025]

1. Malak is training very ..... .
   a. noisy  b. weak  c. hard
2. Malak is a ..... girl.
   a. good  b. bad  c. sad

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. How often does Malak go to the track ?

   .....

4. What kind of food does Malak eat ?

   .....

5. When is Malak's big competition ?

   .....

6. What does Malak like to do ?

   .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

A. 1. Amir is a good runner ..... I think he will win the race.
   a. so  b. but  c. or

2. I don't like throwing, ..... I like jumping high. [Sharkia – Belbeis 2025]
   a. or  b. but  c. and

3. I enjoy throwing ..... running.
   a. but  b. because  c. and

4. Ahmed went to the zoo, ..... it was closed.
   a. or  b. and  c. but

B. 1. Rahma was happy ..... it was her birthday. [Cairo – Helwan 2025]
   a. because  b. so  c. or

2. Maged doesn't like jumping ..... throwing.
   a. but  b. because  c. or

3. It is raining, ..... we can't go running today.
   a. so  b. or  c. because

4. We have a race next month ..... we train every day.
   a. so  b. or  c. but

## 4 Read, order and write.

اقرأ ، رتب واكتب.

A. 1. is - sport - Which - difficult ? [Alexandria – West Alexandria 2025]

.....

2. day – does - exercise - He - a lot of – every.

.....

B. 1. to - wants - win - He - a medal.

.....

2. you – Do – running – enjoy ?

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من [٢٠ كلمة] [٣ - ٤] جمل مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**A competition**

Guiding elements :

• training  • exercise  • healthy food

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

LESSON 6

- Values
- Reading and writing

# I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

## Key vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| apologize | يعتذر | make fun of / laugh at | يسخر من |
| tell secrets | يفشى أسرار | pressure | يضغط على |
| together | معًا | spread rumors | ينشر شائعات |

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| rules | قواعد | ideas | أفكار |
| silly | سخيف | scared of / afraid of | خائف من |

**Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

## How to be a good friend. كيف تصبح صديق جيد.

**It's good to**

- support your friend.
- have fun together !
- listen to your friend's ideas.
- apologize when you make your friend sad.
- say sorry.

**It's bad to**

- make fun of your friend.
- spread rumors about your friends.
- pressure your friend to do something he or she doesn't want to do.
- tell your friend's secrets to other people.

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Tamer's story | sad - school | Tamer was sad when he came home from school. |
| | scared - water | Tamer is scared of water. |
| | secret | Sherif told Adam and Wael about Tamer's secret. |
| | apologized | Sherif apologized for telling Tamer's secret. |
| | sorry for | Adam and Wael said sorry for making fun of Tamer . |

## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائى
يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. It's not a good idea to make ..... of others and laugh at them.
   a. plans  b. calls  c. fun
2. When you ..... rumors, you tell stories about someone.
   a. spread  b. pressure  c. apologize
3. He ..... when he came to school late. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / سوهاج - طهطا ٢٠٢٦]
   a. supported  b. apologized  c. recorded

## II Reading

**Look and read.** انظروااقرأ.

### Tamer's story



One day, Tamer was sad when he came home from school.

"What's the matter ?" asked his mom.

"Sherif asked me why I didn't want to do the swimming competition. I told him that I'm scared of water, but it was a secret. He told Adam and Wael, and now everyone knows. They are making fun of me". "That wasn't very kind of Sherif," said Tamer's mom. The next day, Tamer was a lot happier. "How was school today, Tamer ?" his mom asked. "It was better!" said Tamer, smiling. "Sherif apologized for telling my secret. Adam and Wael said sorry for making fun of me. We're all friends again !"

ذات يوم، كان تامر حزينًا عندما عاد للمنزل من المدرسة. سألته والدته : "ما الأمر ؟" "سألنى شريف لماذا لا أريد أن أشارك فى مسابقة السباحة. أخبرته أننى أخاف من المياه ولكنه كان سر. قام شريف بإخبار آدم و وائل، والآن أصبح الجميع يعرف السر. لقد قاموا بالسخرية منى". قالت والدة تامر : "هذا لم يكن تصرف لطيف جدًا من شريف". فى اليوم التالى كان تامر أكثر سعادة. سألته والدته : "كيف كان يومك فى المدرسة يا تامر ؟" قال تامر مبتسمًا : "كان أفضل ! قام شريف بالاعتذار عن إفشاء سرى. اعتذر آدم و وائل لأنهم سخروا منى. أصبحنا أصدقاء مجددًا !"

# General Exercises

On Lesson 6

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى **نهاية الكتاب**

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

pressure - make - support - rumors - apologize

To be a good friend, it's important to [1] ..... your friends. You shouldn't [2] ..... fun of your friends. You shouldn't spread [3] ..... about them. It's good to [4] ..... when you make your friend sad.

[Assiut – Manfalut 2026]

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

To be a good friend, you should listen to your friend's ideas. Never make fun of your friends. It isn't kind to laugh at people. You should also support your friend and say sorry if you do something wrong. You shouldn't pressure your friend to do something he or she doesn't want to do. You shouldn't tell your friend's secrets to other people.

[Ismailia – El Tal El Kebir 2025]

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. You shouldn't ..... your friend to do something he doesn't want to do.
   a. support  b. spread  c. pressure
2. You shouldn't make ..... of your friends.
   a. fun  b. sad  c. happy

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. What should you say if you do something wrong ?

   .....

4. What should you do to be a good friend ? [Mention one]

   .....

5. What should you do with your friend's secrets ?

   .....

6. Why is it important not to laugh at your friends ?

   .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. She doesn't like swimming ..... she is afraid of water.
   a. because  b. so  c. but

2. Amr likes running, ..... he isn't very fast.
   a. or  b. but  c. because

3. Will he ..... a medal today ?
   a. get  b. gets  c. got

4. He is clever ..... he comes first in the exam.
   a. but  b. or  c. so

## 4 Read, order and write.

اقرأ ، رتب واكتب.

A. 1. ideas - Listen - your - to - friend's. [Kafr El-Sheikh – Bella 2025]

.....

2. making - are - They - of - fun - me.

.....

B. 1. school - How - was - today ?

.....

2. is – What – matter – the ? [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / البحيرة - إيتاى البارود ٢٠٢٥]

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من [٢٠ كلمة] [٣ - ٤] جمل مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**How to be a good friend**

Guiding elements :

- listen
- apologize
- make fun of

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

[Alexandria – Borg El Arab 2025]

https://t.me/G5_Y5

LESSON 7

# Learn Phonics with Busy Bee!

## Phonics




☆ Listen and repeat. استمع ورردد.

**1 Soft C sounds like /s/ :** If the letter [c] is followed by [i , e , y], it makes the /s/ sound.



race سباق



distance مسافة



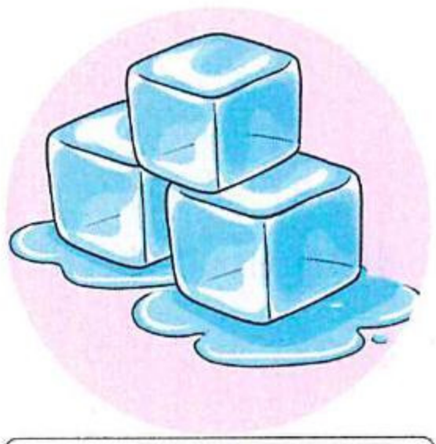
city مدينة



citadel قلعة



space فضاء



ice ثلج



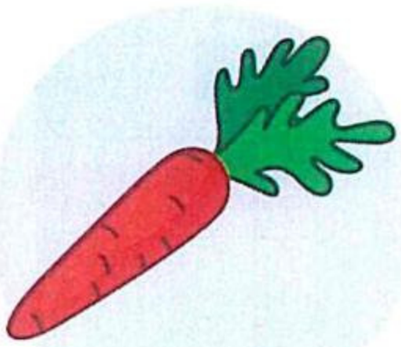
mice فئران



bicycle دراجة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| face | وجه | rice | أرز |
| pencil | قلم رصاص | policeman | ضابط شرطة |

**2 Hard C sounds like /k/ :** If the letter [c] is followed by any other letters or at the end of the word, it makes the /k/ sound.



carrot جزرة




camera كاميرا



camel جمل



cookie كعكة محلاة



coffee قهوة



cake كيك



cold بارد



plastic بلاستيك

| | |
|---|---|
| fact حقيقة | music موسيقى |




## Pop Quiz on Phonics

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

**1 Listen and write the missing sounds.** استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. _ lub
2. _ ity
3. _ ake
4. _ offee

**2 Read, sort and write.** اقرأ، صنف واكتب.

~~cake~~ - camel - ~~citadel~~ - city - coffee - cold - face - fact - ice - music - pencil - rice

| c sounds like /k/ | c sounds like /s/ |
|---|---|
| 1. cake | 1. citadel |
| 2. ..... | 2. ..... |
| 3. ..... | 3. ..... |
| 4. ..... | 4. ..... |
| 5. ..... | 5. ..... |
| 6. ..... | 6. ..... |

LESSONS 8&9

- Story : The Hare and the Tortoise
- Social Studies : World records



## I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

### Key vocabulary



سلحفاة برية tortoise



لاعب كرة قدم footballer



أرنب برى hare



مرمى / هدف goal



يسجل [هدف] score



فريق team



سباح swimmer




خط النهاية finish line

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| surprised | مندهش / متفاجئ | few minutes | دقائق قليلة |
| steady | ثابت / منتظم | amazing | رائع / مدهش |
| underwater | تحت الماء | accident | حادثة |
| breath | نفس | possible | ممكن |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| laugh | يضحك | laughed |
| start | يبدأ | started |
| continue | يكمل | continued |
| arrive | يصل | arrived |
| smile | يبتسم | smiled |

**Irregular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| lose | يخسر | lost |
| break | يكسر / يحطم | broke |
| say | يقول | said |
| wake up | يستيقظ | woke up |
| swim | يسبح | swam |
| understand | يفهم | understood |

## Important Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- Egypt's national football team
  منتخب مصر لكرة القدم
- UEFA Champions League دورى أبطال أوروبا
- Africa Cup of Nations كأس الأمم الأفريقية

- rest for يرتاح لمدة
- look back ينظر للخلف
- break a world record يحطم رقم قياسى عالمى

## Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

| Word الكلمة | Definition التعريف |
|---|---|
| race | a competition to see who is fastest مسابقة لنرى من الأسرع |
| rest | stop and relax for a short time يتوقف ويرتاح لمدة قصيرة |
| steady | not fast and not slow ليس سريعًا أو بطيئًا |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| The Hare and the Tortoise | hare - tortoise | One day, a hare saw a tortoise. |
| | race | They had a race. |
| | hare - fast | The hare ran very fast. |
| | rest - minutes | The hare rested for a few minutes. |
| | tortoise - look back | The tortoise didn't stop or look back. |
| | tortoise - race | The tortoise won the race. |




## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائى
*يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية



- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة مما بين الأقواس.

1. He plays football and scores many goals. He is a good ..... .
   a. swimmer b. footballer c. nurse
2. I take a deep ..... before swimming.
   a. breath b. chair c. ball
3. The tortoise moves very ..... .
   a. fast b. tall c. slowly
4. He can ..... very well. He is a good swimmer.
   a. smile b. swim c. lose
5. The tortoise reached the finish ..... slowly.
   a. line b. book c. food

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## II Listening and Reading

**Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

### The Hare and the Tortoise



One sunny day, a hare saw a tortoise.
The hare laughed and said, "You are very slow! I can run faster than you."
"Maybe", said the tortoise. "Let's have a race."

فى يوم مشـمس، رأى الأرنب البرى السلحفاة. ضحك الأرنب البرى وقال، "أنت بطيئة جدًا! أستطيع الجرى أسرع منك". قالت السلحفاة ، "ربما، دعنا نتسابق".



The race started. The hare ran very fast.
"This is easy!" thought the hare. "I can rest for a few minutes".

بدأ السباق. جرى الأرنب البرى بسرعة كبيرة. فكر الأرنب وقال "هذا سهل ! أستطيع أن ارتاح لدقائق قليلة".



The tortoise continued slowly. He didn't stop or look back. The hare woke up. He ran to the finish line! But it was too late. When he arrived, the tortoise was there!

أكملت السلحفاة ببطء. لم تتوقف أو تنظر للخلف. استيقظ الأرنب البرى وجرى إلى خط النهاية! لكن قد فات الأوان. عندما وصل الأرنب البرى كانت السلحفاة هناك !



The hare was surprised. "I don't understand!" he said.
The tortoise smiled and said, "Slow and steady wins the race".

كان الأرنب البرى مندهشًا. قال "أنا لا أفهم!"
ابتسمت السلحفاة وقالت "من يسير ببطء وثبات يفز بالسباق".



**Moral of the story**

Always try your best.
ابذل دائمًا قصارى جهدك.

## Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

# World records

### What is a world record ?

It's something which is the fastest, biggest, oldest, or smallest in the world. Here are some famous Egyptian world records.



ما هو الرقم القياسى العالمى ؟

الرقم القياسى هو إما أن يكون اسرع، اكبر حجمًا، اقدم أو أصغر شئ فى العالم.

هذه بعض الأرقام القياسية المصرية العالمية.

### • Did you know .... ?

The Egyptian footballer Mohamed Salah scored the most goals of any African footballer in the UEFA Champions League - 50 goals!

Egypt's national football team has a world record too. It is for winning the Africa Cup of Nations the most times. It won seven times!



هل تعلم ... ؟

- سجل لاعب كرة القدم المصرى محمد صلاح أكبر عدد من الأهداف لأى لاعب إفريقى فى دورى أبطال أوروبا [UEFA] - حيث أحرز ٥٠ هدفًا !
- كما سجل منتخب مصر لكرة القدم رقمًا قياسى عالميًا فهو اكثر منتخب فاز بكأس الأمم الأفريقية. حيث فاز سبع مرات!

And in 2022 in Cairo ,Omar Hegazy broke a new world record. He swam the longest distance underwater with one breath : 56.46 metres! The Egyptian swimmer is amazing because he only has one leg. He lost it in an accident but his world record shows that with hard work, anything is possible.



فى عام ٢٠٢٢ فى القاهرة، حطم عمر حجازى رقمًا قياسيًا عالميًا جديدًا. لقد سبح أطول مسافة تحت الماء بنفس واحد وبلغت ٥٦.٤٦ مترًا ! ويعد هذا السباح المصرى مدهشًا لأنه يمتلك ساقًا واحدة فقط. لقد فقد ساقه فى حادث لكن رقمه القياسى العالمى يظهر أن كل شىء ممكن مع العمل الجاد.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# General Exercises On Lessons 7, 8 & 9

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. poli _ eman | 2. _ offee | 3. _ omputer | 4. mi _ e

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

line – won – race – rest – minutes

One sunny day, a hare saw a tortoise. They decided to have a [1] ..... together. The hare ran fast then he rested for a few [2] ..... . The tortoise didn't stop or look back. The hare woke up and ran to the finish [3] ..... , but it was too late. The tortoise [4] ..... the race.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The world record is the fastest, biggest, oldest, or smallest in the world. Egypt's national football team has a world record. It is for winning the Africa Cup of Nations the most times. It won seven times! And in 2022 in Cairo, Omar Hegazy broke a new world record.

He swam the longest distance underwater with one breath: 56.46 meters! The Egyptian swimmer is amazing because he only has one leg. He lost it in an accident but his world record shows that with hard work, anything is possible.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Omar Hegazy swam the ..... distance underwater.
   a. shortest  b. slowest  c. longest
2. Egypt's national team won the Africa Cup of Nations ..... times.
   a. 5  b. 7  c. 6

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Omar Hegazy do in 2022 ?

   .....

4. How did Omar Hegazy lose his leg ?

   .....

5. What does Egypt's national football team have a world record for ?

   .....

6. What does Omar Hegazy's world record show ?

   .....

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I think my school will ..... today. [Assuit – Dairut 2025]

a. win b. wins c. won

2. She can ..... one meter. [Minia – Beni Mazar 2025]

a. jumping b. jumps c. jump

3. Do you like swimming ..... football ?

a. or b. but c. because

4. I stayed at home ..... it was raining. [Cairo - New Cairo 2026]

a. so b. because c. or

## 5 Read, order and write.

اقرأ ، رتب واكتب.

A. 1. Who - the - won - race ? [Dakahlia - Belqas 2026]

.....

2. a – record - What - world – is ?

.....

B. 1. goals - of - Mohamed Salah - a lot - scored. [Fayoum – East Fayoum 2025]

.....

2. swam – distance – Omar Hegazy - the longest - underwater.

.....

## 6 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من [٢٠ كلمة] [٣ - ٤] جمل مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**World records**

Guiding elements :

- fastest
- national
- team

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/gs_y5

# Skills 1 How to write about certain topics

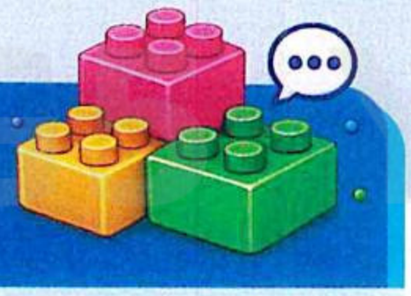



كيفية كتابة الفقرات الإنشائية ← اتباع الخطوات التالية يساعدك على تكوين فقرة إنشائية :

١. تكوين حصيلة من المفردات اللغوية. ٢. إتقان تكوين الجمل. ٣. بعد اتباع الخطوات السابقة يمكنك كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

| | Step 1 Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية | Step 2 Sentences<br>متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية | Step 3 Writing<br>متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية أكتب فقرة إنشائية |
|---|---|---|---|
| A sports event | **Write the meaning :**<br>..... حدث رياضى<br>..... لاعب رياضى<br>..... سباق<br>..... مسابقة<br>..... يقيس | **Reorder the words :**<br>1. at - I'm - today - event - a sports.<br>.....<br>2. athletes - are - Some - running.<br>.....<br>3. race - exciting - The - is.<br>.....<br>4. is - a throwing - There - competition.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"A sports event"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| World records | ..... لاعب كرة قدم<br>..... يسجل (هدف)<br>..... فريق<br>..... سباح<br>..... تحت الماء | 5. an - Mohamed Salah - is - footballer - Egyptian.<br>.....<br>6. goals - He - many - scored.<br>.....<br>7. has - Egypt's - a world - national - record - football team.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"World records"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| How to be a good friend | ..... افكار<br>..... يسخر من<br>..... يدعم / يساند<br>..... ينشر شائعات<br>..... يعتذر | 8. should - ideas - to - You - listen - your - friend's.<br>.....<br>9. make fun - It's - your - of - friend - bad to.<br>.....<br>10. good to - friend - your - support - It's.<br>.....<br>11. about - Don't - rumors - spread - friends - your.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"How to be a good friend"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |

# 2 Sentence Building



الهدف من هذا الجزء تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

## ١ الجملة الخبريـة

1. are - quickly - The athletes - running.
2. does - Sara - exercise - a lot of.
3. supports - Nesma - friends - her.
4. ran - The hare - fast - very.

| | ١ فاعـل | ٢ فعـل | ٣ باقـى الجملـة. |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | | | quickly. |
| 2. | | | |
| 3. | | | her friends. |
| 4. | | | |

**1 Subject Detective**

مين صاحب الفعل؟

ابحث عن الفاعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. Sara
   فاعل الجملة الثانية
2. The hare
   فاعل الجملة الرابعة



الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

**2 Verb Hunter**

بيعمل إيه؟

ابحث عن الفعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. are running
   فعل الجملة الأولى
2. supports
   فعل الجملة الثالثة



الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

## ٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

1. can - How far - jump - she ?
2. be - they - Will - tired ?
3. do - you - How often - sports - do ?
4. win - Did - Sara - last - her - race ?

| | ١ كلمة استفهام | ٢ فعل مساعد | ٣ فاعـل | ٤ فعل | ٥ باقى السؤال ؟ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | | can | | | |
| 2. | | | | | |
| 3. | | | | | |
| 4. | | | | win | |

**3 Helper Team**

مين بيساعدنا؟

الأفعال المساعدة

Will, Can, Did

تستخدم مع كل الضمائر.



الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

**4 The Wh-Team**

نسأل ازاى؟

أدوات الاستفهام

- How far [كم المسافة]: للسؤال عن المسافة.
- How often [كم مرة]: للسؤال عن عدد المرات.



أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائمًا في بداية السؤال.

# 3 Important Topics



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [١٩ جملة].

### 1 A sports event

There's a big sports event today.[1] Lots of athletes are competing.[2] They are wearing red, blue, green and black.[3] There are competitions in running, jumping, and throwing.[4]

### 2 How to be a good friend

To be a good friend, you should listen to your friend's ideas.[5] You should apologize when you make your friend sad.[6] You shouldn't make fun of your friend.[7] You shouldn't spread rumors about your friends.[8]

### 3 Mohamed Salah

Mohamed Salah is an Egyptian footballer.[9] He scored the most goals of any African footballer.[10] He scored 50 goals in the UEFA Champions League.[11]

### 4 Omar Hegazy

Omar Hegazy broke a new world record in 2022.[12] He swam the longest distance underwater with one breath.[13] He is an amazing swimmer.[14] His world record shows that with hard work, anything is possible.[15]

### 5 World records

A world record is something which is the fastest, biggest, oldest, or smallest in the world[16]. Egypt's national football team has a world record[17]. It's for winning the Africa Cup of Nations the most times[18]. It won seven times[19].

**From Sentences to Topics**

- Start with a capital letter.
- Use the correct tense.
- Put the words in the correct order.
- End with a full stop.



https://t.me/G5_Y5



# Review through the Exam on Unit 1

**مراجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتدريبات**

## 25 Vocabulary

أهم 25 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| score | يسجل [هدف] | pressure | يضغط على | throwing | الرمى |
| goal | مرمى / هدف | make fun of | يسخر من | jumping | القفز |
| finish line | خط النهاية | apologize | يعتذر | race | سباق |
| distance | مسافه | tell secrets | يفشى اسرار | athlete | لاعب رياضى |
| swimming | السباحه | support | يدعم / يساند | medal | ميدالية |
| sports event | حدث رياضى | hare | ارنب برى | winner | فائز |
| competition | مسابقة | swimmer | سباح | warm up | يقوم بعمليه الاحماء |
| | | tortoise | سلحفاة برية | runner | عداء |
| | | team | فريق | spread rumors | ينشر شائعات |

## 10 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعًا فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. Lots of athletes[1] from different schools are competing.
2. Three meters is a good distance[2] for throwing the ball.
3. There are competitions[3] in running, jumping, and throwing.
4. She came second in the race[4] , so she wanted to try harder.
5. The players need to warm up[5] before the match.
6. It's bad to spread rumors[6] about your friends.
7. It's good to apologize[7] when you make your friend sad.
8. Omar Hegazy is an amazing Egyptian swimmer[8].
9. He trained hard to win a medal[9].
10. You shouldn't make fun of[10] your friends.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| [1] كتاب الطالب | [2] القاهرة - المرج | [3] البحيرة - الدلنجات | [4] كتاب الطالب | [5] الجيزة - الدقى |
| [6] كتاب الطالب | [7] كتاب الطالب | [8] كتاب الطالب | [9] اسوان - ادفو | [10] كتاب التدريبات |

## Phonics through the Exam

الصوتيات الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من إجتياز أى امتحان].







## Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

### ① Future Simple Tense ١. زمن المستقبل البسيط

Subject الفاعل + will/won't + inf. مصدر الفعل + ..... باقى الجملة .

### ② Comparative ٢. صيغة المقارنة

| مقارنة الظروف Adverbs | مقارنة الصفات Adjectives |
|---|---|
| Subj. فاعل + verb + adverb + er + than<br>فعل الظرف | ..... short adj. صفة قصيرة + er + than ..... |

### ③ Superlative ٣. صيغة التفضيل

| صيغة التفضيل مع الظروف Adverbs | صيغة التفضيل مع الصفات Adjectives |
|---|---|
| Subj. فاعل + verb + the + adverb + est<br>فعل الظرف | ..... the + short adj. صفة قصيرة + est ..... |

## Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعًا
فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان

1. It won't be easy to win today.
2. I think our school will get a medal today.
3. Sherif was the fastest.
4. Will it be a good competition ?
5. She won't come to school today.
6. Dina jumped higher than Lara.
7. They will travel to Alexandria next week.
8. Will they win the competition ?
9. Ramy jumped the farthest.
10. I think my brother will get a gold medal.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| [1] كتاب الطالب | [2] دمياط - الروضه | [3] الغربية - قطور | [4] كتاب التدريبات | [5] بنى سويف - ناصر |
| [6] المنوفية - تلا | [7] القاهرة - عابدين | [8] كفر الشيخ - دسوق | [9] كتاب الطالب | [10] الجيزة - الدقى |

https://t.me/G5Y5

# Sample Test 1

On Unit 1



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات **فى نهاية الكتاب**

## اختبار المعاصر

### 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. _ amel | 2. _ arrot | 3. fa – t | 4. plasti _ |

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

track – win – athlete – event – jumping

Today, we are at the [1] ..... . There's a big sports [2] ..... . Lots of athletes from different schools are competing. They are wearing red, blue, green, and black. There are competitions in running, [3] ....., and throwing. I'm watching the long jump. I think the athlete wearing red will [4] ..... .

(Giza - 6th of October 2025)

### 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Fatma. Mona is my friend. She likes swimming. She goes swimming every day. She will have a competition next week. She trains hard. I support her. She is a good girl.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. Mona is Fatma's ..... .

a. aunt  b. cousin  c. friend

2. Fatma ..... Mona.

a. jumps  b. supports  c. thinks

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. When will Mona have a competition ?

.....

4. What sport does Mona like ?

.....

5. How often does Mona go swimming ?

.....

6. How does Mona train ?

.....

## 4 The Reader

### A. Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares wanted to be • | ☐ a. to the sports center. |
| 2. Fares and his family lived close • | ☐ b. an athlete. |

### B. Read and write [YES] or [NO].

اقرأ واكتب [نعم] أو [لا].

1. Fares lived in Hurghada. [.....]
2. Adam is really bad at skateboarding. [.....]

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Who is the ..... athlete ? [Minia – Deir Mawas 2025]
   a. tall b. taller c. tallest
2. I like fruit ..... vegetables. [Sharqia - West Zagazig 2025]
   a. but b. and c. because
3. Who is the ..... girl in the class ? - Mona.
   a. fast as b. fastest c. faster
4. Adam is ..... than Hazem.
   a. faster b. fastest c. fast

## 6 Read, order and write.

اقرأ، رتب واكتب.

1. run - she - can - How fast ?
   .....
2. he - I - will - think - win.
   .....

## 7 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من [٢٠ كلمة] [٣ - ٤] جمل مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**Mohamed Salah**

Guiding elements :

• Egyptian • record • Footballer

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5Y5

# Sample Test 2

**On Unit 1**



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات **فى نهاية الكتاب**

اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. ra _ e | 2. _ ookie | 3. i _ e | 4. _ itadel

[Ismailia - Kasaseen / Dakahlia – Aga / Sharqia – West Zagazig / Beheira - Kom Hamada 2025]

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

ideas - pressure - laugh - support - secrets

It's important to be a good friend. You should listen to your friend's [1] ..... You should [2] ..... your friends. You shouldn't [3] ..... your friend to do something he or she doesn't want to do. You shouldn't tell your friend's [4] ..... to other people. [Fayoum – Itsa 2026]

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My friend Dina is an athlete. She is 9 years old. She does a lot of exercise. She goes to the club three times a week. She is a runner. She can run 150 meters in 20 seconds. Her parents support her. She always eats healthy food. She has a big competition next week. I think she will win! She is a good friend.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. Dina is a/an ..... .
   a. footballer  b. athlete  c. writer
2. She is ..... years old.
   a. nine  b. ten  c. seven

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. How fast can Dina run ?

   .....

4. When is the big competition ?

   .....

5. Who supports Dina ?

   .....

6. How often does she go to the club ?

   .....

[Damietta 2025]

https://t.me/G5Y5

## 4 The Reader

### A. Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares lived in Hurghada [Qena 2025] | a. his friends in the park. |
| 2. Fares saw [Monufia - Sadat 2025] | b. with his family. |

### B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

اقرأ واكتب [T] صح أو [F] خطأ.

1. Fares walked to the pool with his friends. [Alexandria – Gomrok 2025] ☐
2. Fares trained in the pool for an hour. [Giza 2025] ☐

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I like tennis ..... volleyball. [Cairo - New Cairo 2026]
   a. but  b. and  c. so
2. ..... they be happy ? - Yes, they will. [Monufia - Menouf 2026]
   a. Will  b. Do  c. Are
3. Will you play the match ? No, I ..... . [Assuit – Manflut 2025]
   a. won't  b. will  c. am
4. How ..... can he run ? – He can run 100 meters in 15 seconds ! [Dakahlia – Aga 2025]
   a. fast  b. far  c. high

## 6 Read, order and write.

اقرأ، رتب واكتب.

1. run - How - your - can - fast - friend ? [Beheira – Kom Hamada 2025]

   .....

2. fun - make - friends - your - Never - of. [Gharbia – West Tanta 2025]

   .....

## 7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من [٢٠ كلمة] [٣ - ٤] جمل مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**A running competition**

Guiding elements :

- competition
- exercise
- medal

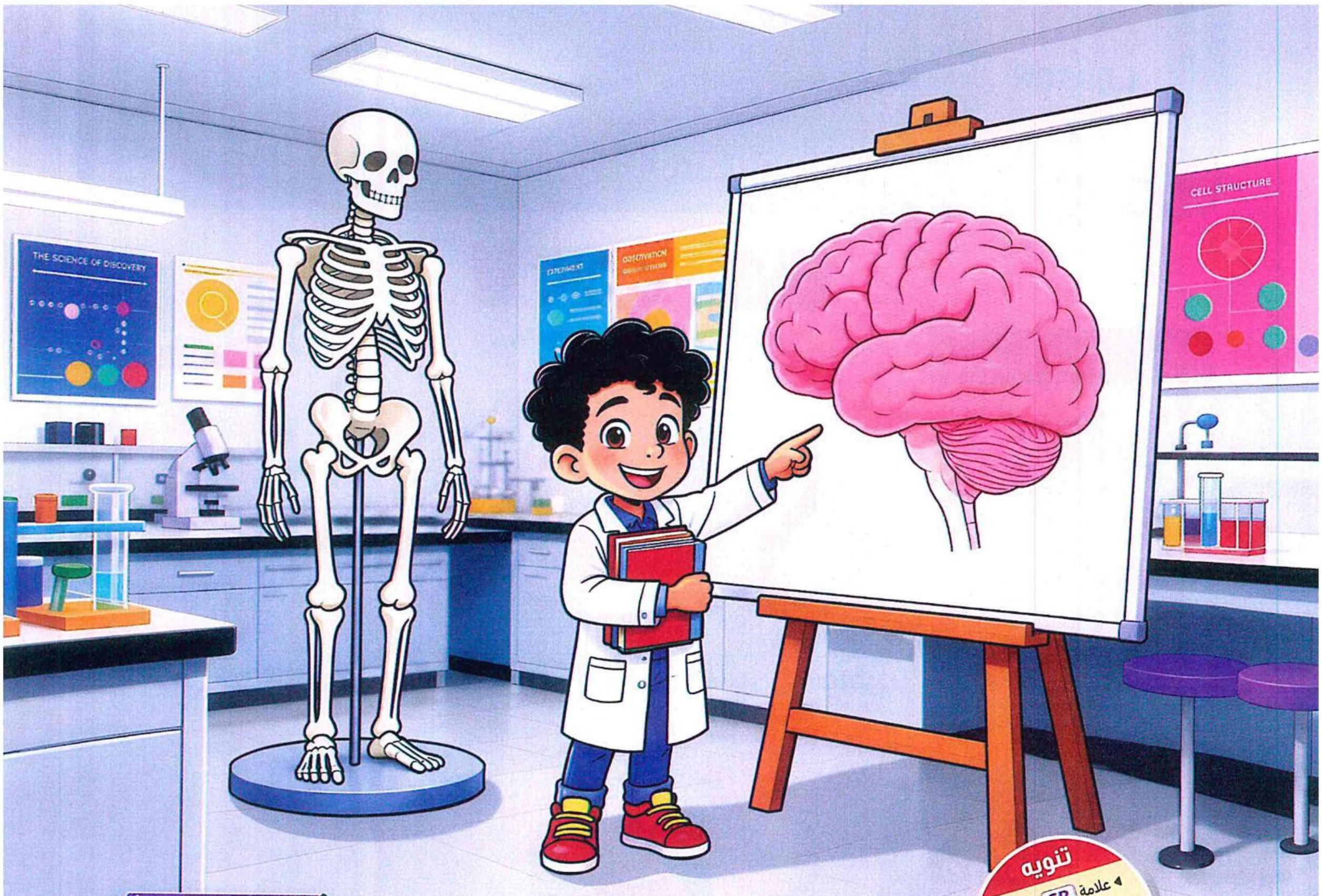
.....

.....

.....

.....

[Monufia – Shibin El Kom 2025]




**تنويه**

- علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
- علامة AB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التدريبات

UNIT 2

# Body matters

## صحة الجسم

### Unit Two Objectives

**Vocabulary**

- absorb, arteries, beat, blood, bone, elbow, knee, organ

- يمتص، شرايين، ينبض، دم، عظمة، كوع، ركبة، عضو

**Language**

- I'm going to wear a helmet.
- Is she going to climb the rock?

- سأرتدى خوذه.
- هل ستتسلق الصخرة ؟

**Reading and stories**

- A text about bones.
- Story: Adam has a stomachache.

- نص عن العظام.
- آدم يعاني من ألم فى المعدة.

**Phonics**

- Long "oo" mood, food
- Short "oo" book, cook

- حالة مزاجية، طعام
- كتاب، يطبخ

https://t.me/gs3

LESSON 1

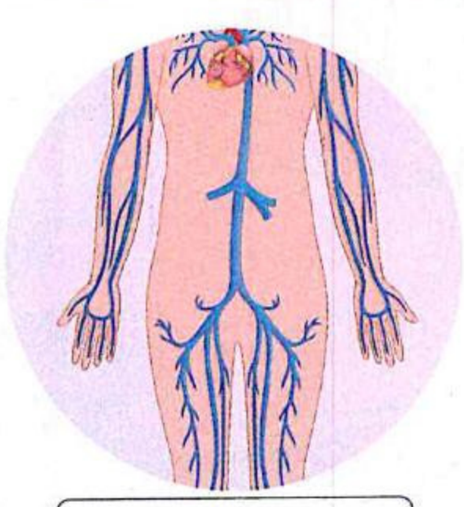
- Vocabulary
- Listening and Reading

https://t.me/G5Y5

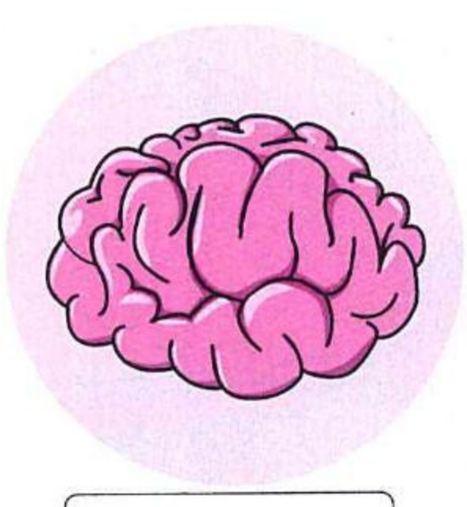
# I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

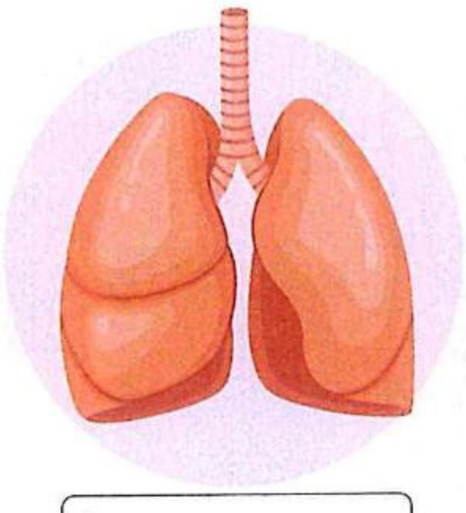
## Key vocabulary



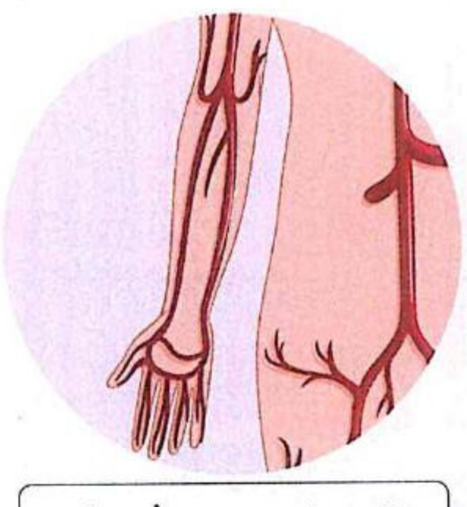
veins الأوردة



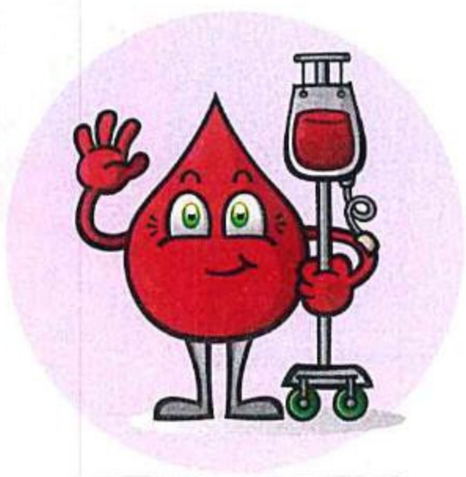
brain مخ



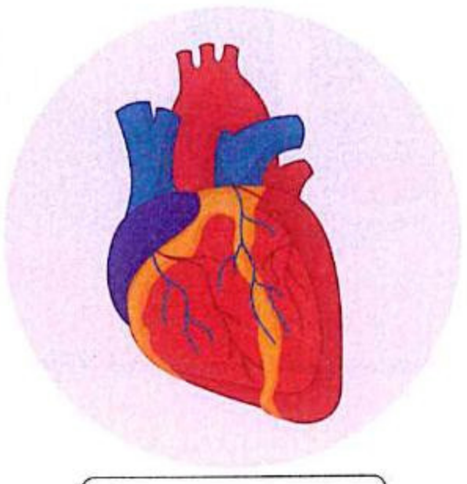
lungs رئتين



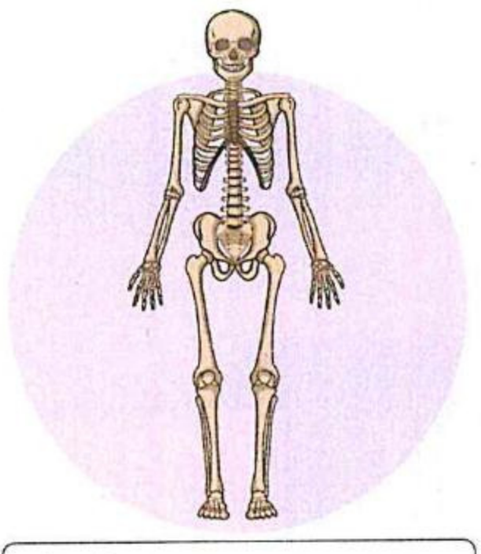
arteries الشرايين



blood دم



heart قلب



skeleton هيكل عظمى

## Extra vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| parts | أجزاء |
| beat | ينبض - نبض |
| | |
| strong | قوى |
| nutrients | عناصر غذائية |
| oxygen | أكسچين |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| control | يتحكم فى | controlled |
| carry | يحمل | carried |
| add | يضيف | added |
| pump | يضخ | pumped |

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| move | ينقل - يحرك | moved |
| connect | يتصل | connected |
| push | يدفع | pushed |
| happen | يحدث | happened |

## Important Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| • travel back to | يعود إلى | • the rest of the body | باقى أجزاء الجسم |
| • around your body | حول جسمك | • pump... out | يضخ ..... للخارج |
| • 70 times a minute | ٧٠ مرة فى الدقيقة | | |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Our body | heart – beat | Our heart beats about 70 times a minute. |
| | blood – body | Our heart moves blood around our body. |
| | brain – control | Our brain controls everything that happens in our body. |
| | skeleton – strong | Our skeleton helps us move and makes us strong. |
| Our heart | important | The heart is very important. |
| | oxygen – nutrients | Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to all parts of the body. |
| | veins – heart | Veins carry blood from the body to the heart. |
| | push – lungs | The heart pushes the blood to the lungs. |

## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائى

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

**Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

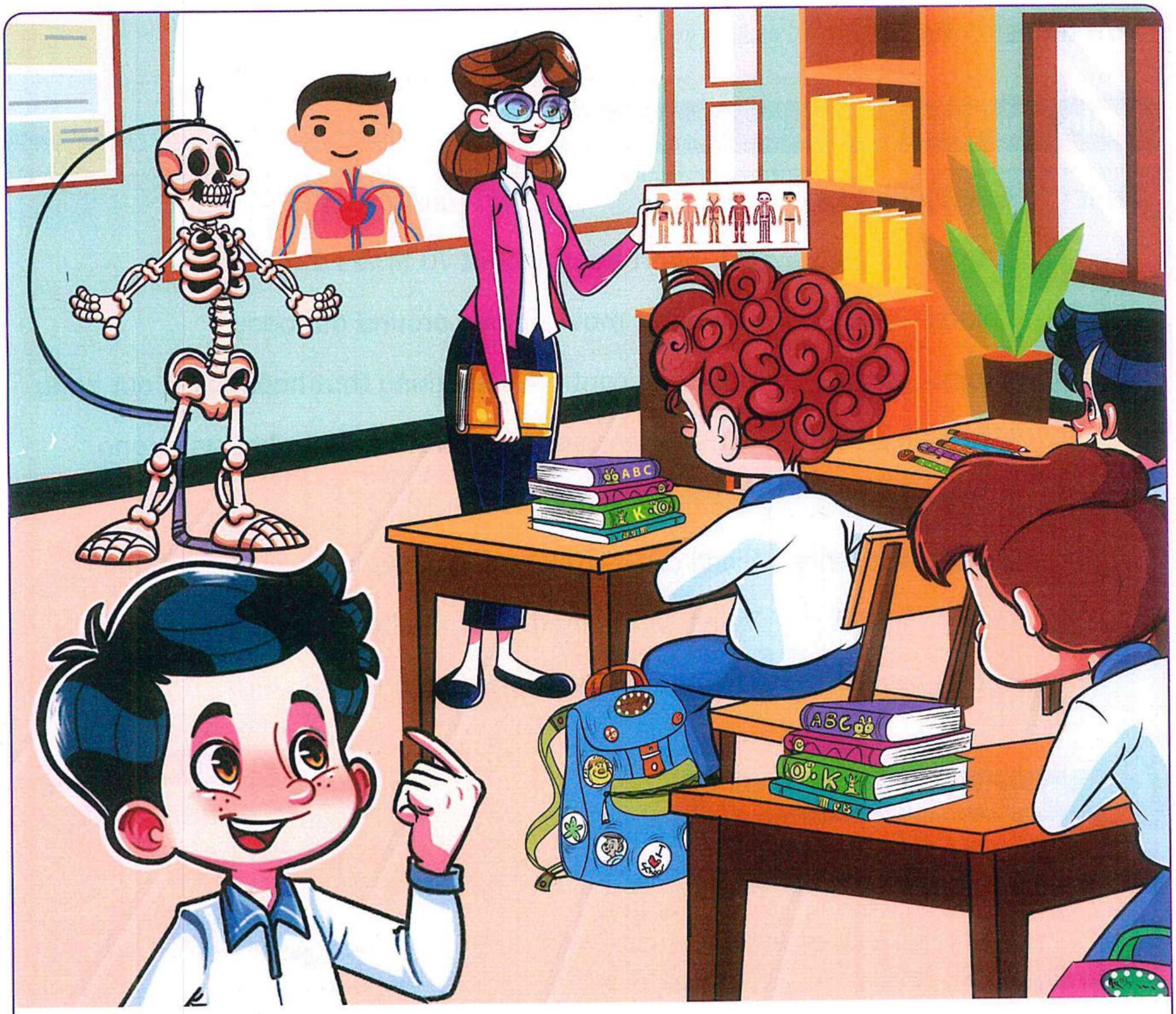
1. Our ..... pumps blood around the body. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / القاهرة - النزهة]
   a. brain  b. heart  c. lung
2. Our skeleton helps us ..... . [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / الاسكندرية - العامرية]
   a. sleep  b. beat  c. move
3. Our ..... makes us strong. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / المنيا - بنى مزار]
   a. mouth  b. skeleton  c. nose
4. Our heart ..... about 70 times a minute.
   a. breathes  b. beats  c. eats
5. ..... carry blood from the body to the heart.
   a. Veins  b. Bones  c. Arteries
6. Our brain ..... everything in our body.
   a. controls  b. carries  c. breaks
7. The heart pushes the blood to the ..... .
   a. fruit  b. lungs  c. book

https://t.me/G5 Y5

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## II Listening and Reading

▶ **Look, read and identify.** انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.




Today we're going to learn about the body. Miss Mona is going to tell us how the **heart**[1] works.
Did you know your heart **beats**[2] about 70 times a minute ?
Your heart moves **blood**[3] around your body.
Our **brain**[4] controls everything that happens in our body.
Our **skeleton**[5] helps us move and makes us strong.

[1] القلب
[2] ينبض
[3] الدم
[4] المخ
[5] هيكل عظمى

اليوم سوف نتعلم عن الجسم. أستاذة منى سوف تخبرنا كيف يعمل القلب. هل كنت تعلم أن قلبك ينبض ٧٠ مرة فى الدقيقة ؟ يحرك القلب الدم حول الجسم. يتحكم المخ لدينا فى كل شىء يحدث فى جسمنا. يساعدنا هيكلنا العظمى فى التحرك ويجعلنا أقوياء.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## ▶ Look, read and identify. انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

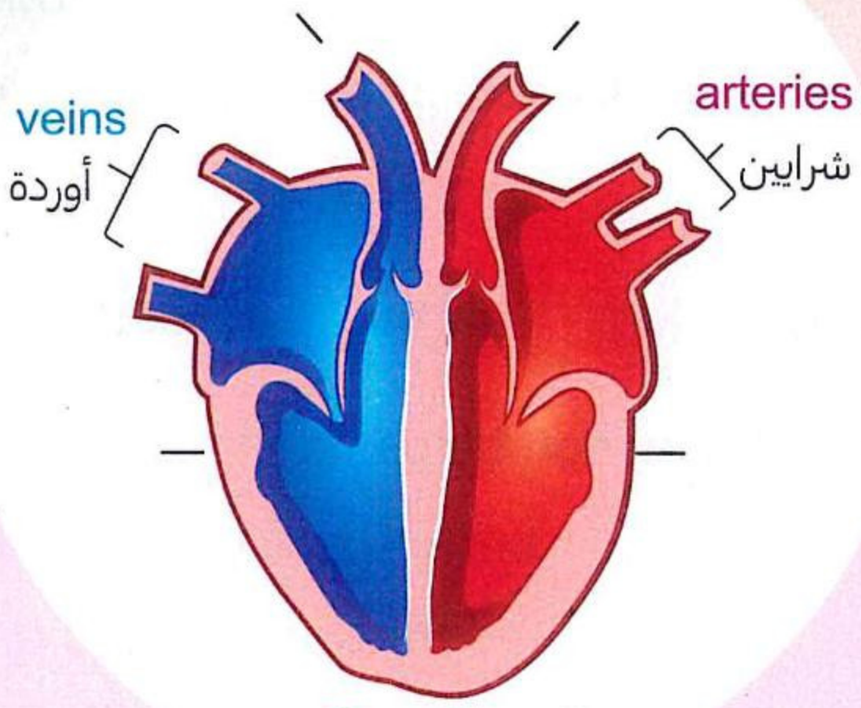



**1**

The heart is very important because it moves blood around your body. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to all parts of the body.

**2**

Veins carry blood from the body to the heart.




Our Heart

**3**

The heart pushes the blood to the lungs. In the lungs, the body adds oxygen to the blood. The blood (now with oxygen in it) travels back to the heart and then the heart pumps it out to the rest of the body in the arteries. Veins and arteries connect to the heart.

١. القلب مهم جدًا لأنه يحرك الدم حول جسمك. يحمل الدم الأكسچين والعناصر الغذائية إلى جميع أجزاء الجسم.
٢. تحمل الأوردة الدموية الدم من الجسم إلى القلب.
٣. يدفع القلب الدم إلى الرئتين. فى الرئتين، يضيف الجسم الأكسچين إلى الدم. يعود الدم [يحتوى الآن على الأكسچين] إلى القلب ثم يضخه القلب إلى باقى الجسم فى الشرايين. الأوردة والشرايين تتصل بالقلب.

**Answer the following questions :**

Learn 1. Why is the heart important ?
- Because it moves blood around our body.

Practice 2. What pushes the blood to the lungs ?
.....

3. What do veins and arteries connect to ?
.....

## ▶ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

**1 nutrients**

We need these to help our bodies grow.

**العناصر الغذائية** : نحتاجها لتساعد أجسامنا على النمو.

**2 arteries**

Carry blood away from the heart to the body.

**الشرايين :** تحمل الدم بعيدًا عن القلب إلى الجسم.

# General Exercises On Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**A**

times - brain - blood - oxygen – grow

It's important to learn about our body. Our heart beats about 70 [1] ..... a minute. The heart moves [2] ..... around the body. Blood carries [3] ..... and nutrients to all parts of the body. Nutrients help us [4] ..... .

[Assuit – Abnub 2025]

**B**

strong - legs - move - blood - brain

Our body is amazing. Our skeleton helps us [1] ..... and makes us [2] ..... . Our [3] ..... controls everything that happens in our body. The heart pushes the [4] ..... to the lungs. Veins and arteries connect to the heart .

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

The heart is very important because it moves blood around our body. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to all parts of the body. Our brain controls everything that happens in our body. Our skeleton helps us move and makes us strong.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. ..... carries oxygen to the body.
   a. Brain  b. Blood  c. Skeleton
2. The skeleton makes us .....
   a. strong  b. weak  c. funny

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What does our brain do ?

   .....

4. Why is the heart important ?

   .....

5. What does blood carry to all parts of the body ?

   .....

6. What helps us move ?

   .....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## 3 Read, order and write.

A. 1. help – grow – Nutrients – our bodies. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / القاهرة - حلوان]

.....

2. carry – heart – blood – Veins – to the.

.....

B. 1. very - The heart - is - important.

.....

2. us – Our skeleton – strong – makes. [Beni Suef – Biba 2025]

.....

## 4 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**The heart**

**Guiding elements :**

- beat
- blood
- carry

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

[التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / الدقهلية]

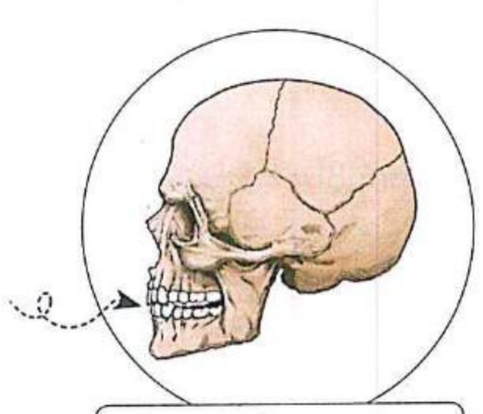
LESSONS 2&3

- Bones and muscles
- Language use

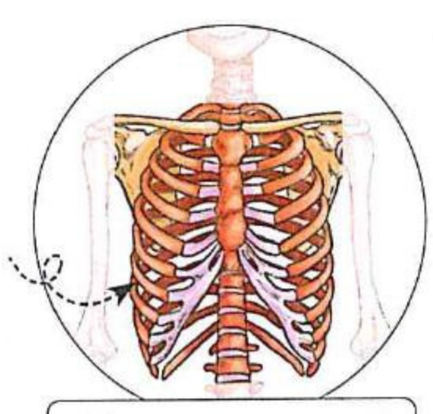
# I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

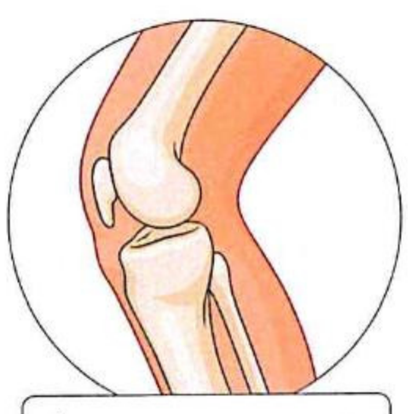
## Key vocabulary



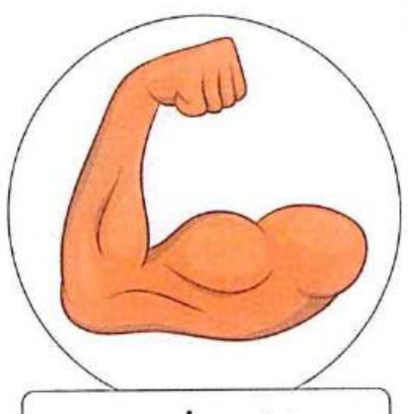
jaw فَك



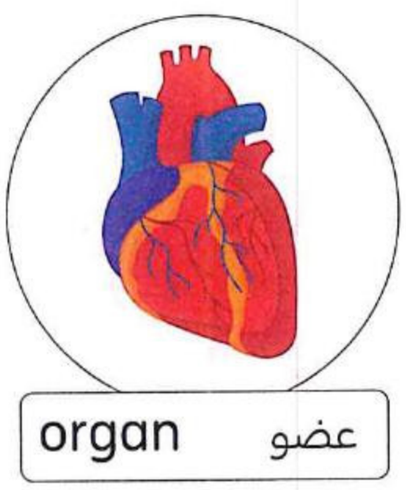
rib ضِلع



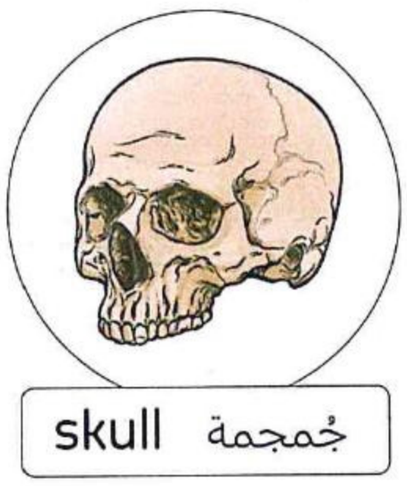
knee رُكبة



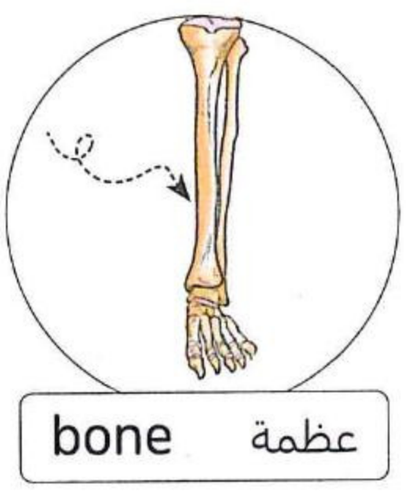
muscle عضلة



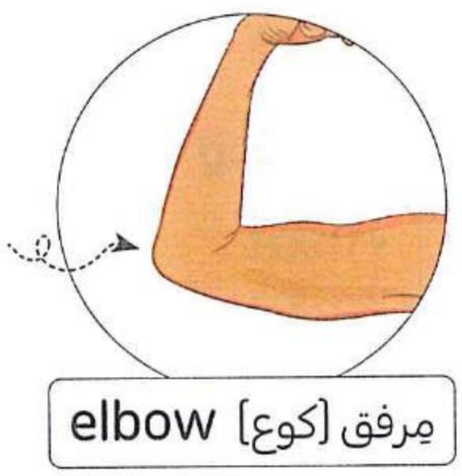
organ عضو



skull جُمجمة



bone عظمة



elbow [كوع] مِرفق

## Extra vocabulary



wear sunglasses
ترتدى نظارة شمس



go to the park
تذهب للحديقة




go to the library
يذهب للمكتبة



go swimming
يذهب للسباحة



climb the mountain
يتسلق الجبل



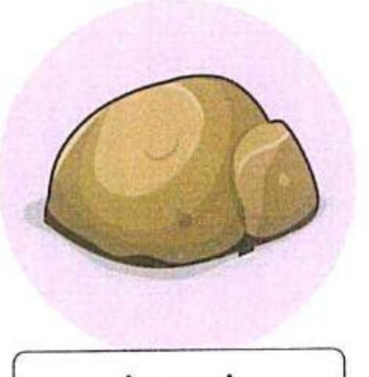
wear pads
يلبس واقيات للركبة



wear a helmet
يرتدى خوذة



soft
ناعم / لين



hard
صلب

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| lift | يرفع | lifted |
| turn | يحول / يستدير | turned |
| chew | يمضغ | chewed |
| kick | يركل | kicked |

**Irregular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| keep | يحافظ | kept |
| ride | يركب | rode |
| wear | يرتدى | wore |

## Important Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| • keep us strong | تجعلنا أقوياء | • move up and down | يتحرك أعلى وأسفل |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Bones and muscles | skeleton – bones | Our skeleton is all the bones that keep us strong. |
| | muscles – move | We need muscles to move our bones. |
| | muscles - lift | Muscles lift and turn bones so we can walk. |
| | chew – food | We use muscles when we chew food. |
| | hard - soft | Bones are hard, and they protect our soft organs. |

https://t.me/65Y5

## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

05 min

تدريب تلقائى

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. Bones ..... our soft organs.
   a. take  b. make  c. protect
   (التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / الوادى الجديد - الخارجة)

2. Bones are ..... .
   a. soft  b. hard  c. easy
   (التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / القاهرة - حلوان)

3. She is wearing ..... to protect her knees.
   a. pads  b. hats  c. sunglasses

4. The brain and lungs are important ..... in our bodies.
   a. subjects  b. organs  c. bones

5. I usually go to the ..... to read books.
   a. library  b. office  c. police station

6. My brother is wearing a ..... on his head.
   a. pad  b. bike  c. helmet

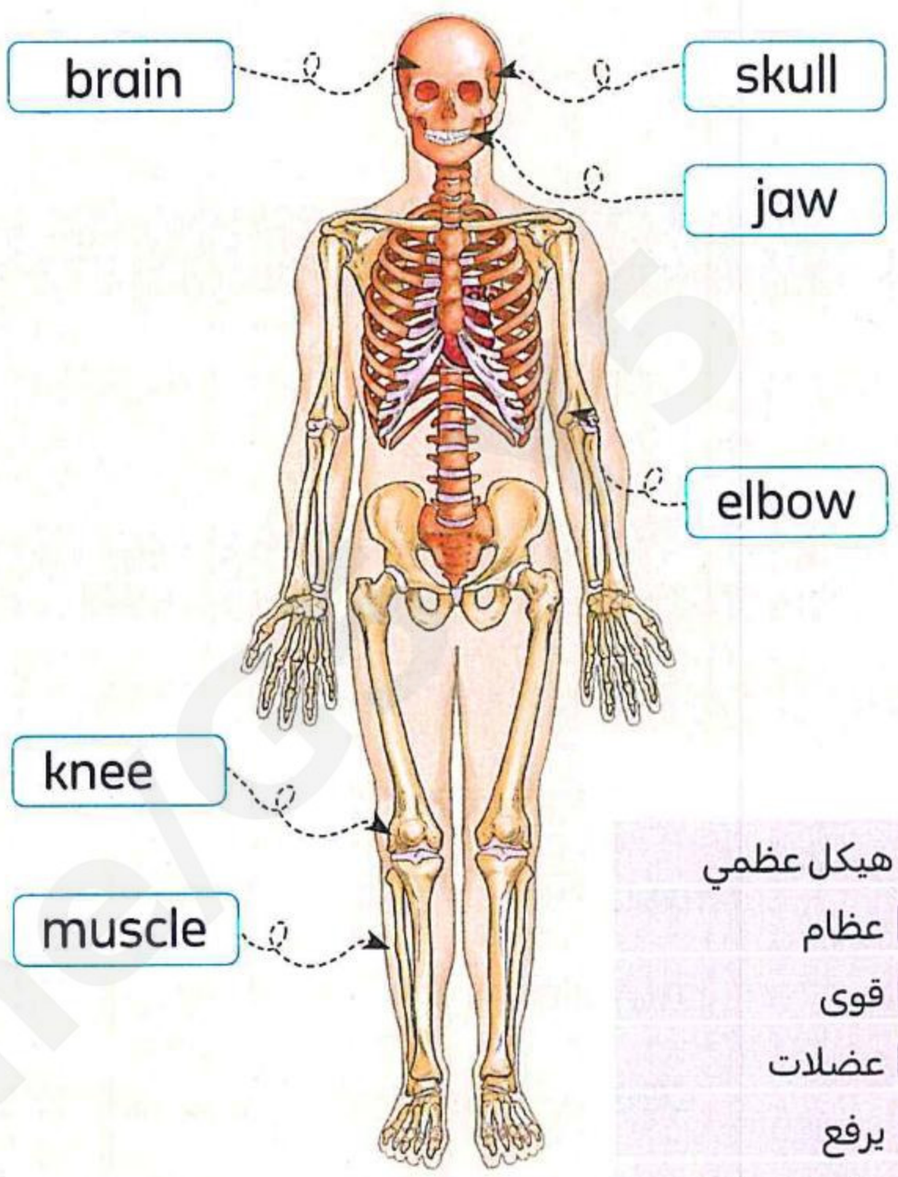
## II Listening and Reading

▶ **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

### Bones and muscles

Our **skeleton**[1] is all the **bones**[2] that keep us **strong**[3] and help us move. We need **muscles**[4] to move our bones. Muscles **lift**[5] and **turn**[6] bones so we can walk, run, dance – anything !
When we kick a ball, muscles make the bones in our leg and **knee**[7] move. Muscles in our arms and **elbows**[8] move when you play tennis.

We use muscles when we **chew**[9] food, to move the **jaw**[10] bone up and down. Bones are hard, and they **protect**[11] our soft **organs**[12]. Our **brain**[13], heart, and **lungs**[14] are important organs.



skeleton

[1] هيكل عظمي
[2] عظام
[3] قوى
[4] عضلات
[5] يرفع
[6] يلف / يحول
[7] ركبة
[8] مرفق [كوع]
[9] يمضغ
[10] فك
[11] يحمي
[12] أعضاء
[13] مخ
[14] رئتان

هيكلنا العظمى هو كل العظام التى تجعلنا أقوياء ويساعدنا على التحرك. نحن نحتاج إلى العضلات لنحرك عظامنا. تقوم العضلات برفع ولف العظام لذلك نتمكن من المشى، الجرى، الرقص وأى شىء! عندما نركل الكرة، تجعل العضلات العظام فى الساق والركبة تتحرك. تتحرك العضلات فى أذرعنا والمرفقين عندما تلعب التنس. نحن نستخدم العضلات عند مضغ الطعام لتحريك عظمة الفك لأعلى ولأسفل. العظام صلبة و هى تحمى أعضائنا الرخوة. دماغنا، قلبنا ورئتنا هما أعضاء مهمة.

**Learn**

- There are 206 bones in a skeleton.
- Muscles are soft.
- Bones are hard.
- The skull protects the brain.
- The ribs protect our heart.
- The jaw is a bone in your face.
- The knee is in our leg.
- The elbow is in our arm.



# III Language

## Using "be going to" for future plans.

استخدام "be going to" للتعبير عن الخطط المستقبلية

### 1 Affirmative statement ١. الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | → | am ['m] | |
| He / She / It / Singular noun | → | is ['s] | + going to + inf. المصدر + ..... . |
| We / You / They / Plural noun | → | are ['re] | |

- He is going to ride a bike.



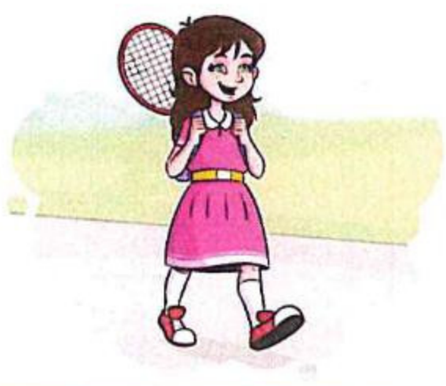
- We are going to go to the park.



### 2 Negative statement ٢. الجملة الخبرية المنفية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | → | am not | |
| He / She / It / Singular noun | → | isn't | + going to + inf. المصدر + ..... . |
| We / You / They / Plural noun | → | aren't | |

- She isn't going to go to the library today.



- They aren't going to go to the park.



## 3 Interrogative ٣. صيغة الاستفهام

### A Yes / No question السؤال بـ "هل"

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Is | he / she / it / singular noun | + going to + inf. المصدر + ..... ? | |
| Are | you / we / they / plural noun | | |

عند الإجابة المختصرة نستخدم :

Yes, + subject + is / are. No, + subject + isn't / aren't.

- Is she going to climb the rocks ?

  - Yes, she is.



- Are you going to go to the library ?

  - No, I 'm not.



### B Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| What | is | he / she / it / singular noun | + going to + inf. المصدر + ..... ? |
| | are | you / we / they / plural noun | |

- What are you going to do ?

  - I'm going to play football.



### Key words

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| • tomorrow | غدًا | • this evening | هذا المساء |
| • today | اليوم | • next (week, ...) | التالى |

لاحظ أن : [**are you**] فى السؤال تحول فى الإجابة إلى [**I am / We are**].

https://t.me/G5_Y5

https://t.me/G5Y5

## Pop Quiz on Language

### Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. I ..... going to go to the park after school. [Cairo – Ain Shams 2025]
   a. am  b. is  c. are
2. Yes, she is going to ..... football.
   a. play  b. plays  c. playing
3. This evening, Mona ..... going to visit her uncle.
   a. are  b. does  c. is
4. I'm ..... to go to the zoo tomorrow.
   a. go  b. goes  c. going
5. Hana and Sara ..... going to watch a film this evening.
   a. do  b. are  c. have
6. Is she ..... to climb the rock ?
   a. go  b. going  c. goes
7. What ..... he going to do? [Giza – Dokki 2025]
   a. does  b. is  c. has
8. ..... they going to go to the library today ?
   a. Is  b. Are  c. Do
9. Yes, he ..... going to wear a helmet.
   a. is  b. hasn't  c. are
10. No, I'm not ..... to play games. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / المنيا - بنى مزار]
    a. go  b. going  c. goes
11. He is going to ..... TV. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / المنيا - بنى مزار]
    a. watches  b. watching  c. watch
12. ..... are going to visit the Pyramids.
    a. They  b. She  c. I
13. What're they ..... to do ?
    a. go  b. going  c. goes
14. Sami is going to ..... chicken for lunch.
    a. have  b. has  c. having
15. She ..... going to go swimming.
    a. am  b. is  c. are
16. ..... she going to stay up late ? [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / القاهرة]
    a. Am  b. Is  c. Are
17. She is ..... to wear pads to protect her elbows.
    a. go  b. goes  c. going
18. No, they ..... going to go to the park.
    a. aren't  b. isn't  c. am not
19. He is going ..... buy a car.
    a. of  b. to  c. for
20. ..... are going to do our homework.
    a. We  b. She  c. He

# General Exercises On Lessons 2 & 3

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى **نهاية الكتاب**

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

strong – kick – lift – bones – balls

Our skeleton is all the [1] ..... in our body. It keeps us [2] ..... Muscles [3] ..... and turn bones, so we can run and walk. When we [4] ..... a ball, muscles make the bones in our leg and knee move.

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Samy likes science. He likes to read books about science in his free time. Yesterday, he read a book about our body. He got a lot of amazing information. There are 206 bones in our skeleton. Our skull protects our brain. Samy told his parents about this information. [Aswan - Kom Ombo 2025]

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Samy likes to ..... in his free time.
   a. sing  b. read  c. run
2. Samy told his ..... about his amazing information.
   a. friends  b. parents  c. teachers

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Samy do yesterday ?

   .....

4. What subject does Samy like ?

   .....

5. How many bones are there in our skeleton ?

   .....

6. What protects our brain ?

   .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

A. 1. ..... you going to climb the mountain ? - No, I am not.
   a. Am  b. Are  c. Do

2. Is Osama going to read a book ? - Yes, he ..... .
   a. is  b. isn't  c. was

3. They ..... going to enter a competition. [Assuit – Dairut 2025]

a. is b. am c. are

4. The cat is ..... to climb the wall.

a. goes b. going c. go

B. 1. Adel and Omar ..... going to wear helmets.

a. do b. are c. have

2. Are you ..... to swim ? [Luxor – Qurna 2025]

a. go b. goes c. going

3. ..... Nader going to play football?

a. Is b. Are c. Am

4. I'm going ..... go to the park.

a. of b. in c. to

## 4 Read, order and write.

A. 1. is - sunglasses - wear - He - going - to.

.....

2. need - We - muscles - move - to - bones - our.

.....

B. 1. the - The skull - brain – protects. [Damietta – Kafr Saad 2025]

.....

2. is - leg - our - The knee - in.

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**The skeleton**

**Guiding elements :**

- bones
- strong
- muscles

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

LESSONS 4&5

- Life skills and values
- Listening and writing



## I Vocabulary



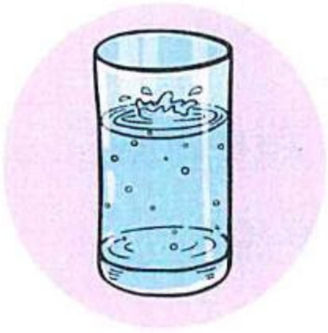

### Key vocabulary



calm هادئ



lunch وجبة الغداء



drink water يشرب المياه



cross = angry
غاضب



stay up late
يبقى مستيقظًا حتى وقت متأخر



argument
جِدال/مناقشة



candy حلوى



skip breakfast يفوت وجبة الإفطار

| | |
|---|---|
| unhealthy | غير صحى |
| tired | متعب |
| cycling | ركوب الدراجة |
| healthy | صحى |
| mood | حالة مزاجية |
| stay positive | يبقى إيجابى |

### Extra vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| choice | اختيار |
| difficult | صعب |
| do exercise | يتدرب |
| snack | وجبة خفيفة |
| worried | قلق |
| soda | مياه غازية |
| play outside | يلعب بالخارج |
| take a walk | يمشى |
| sleep | النوم |
| piece | قطعة |
| fruit | فاكهة |
| vegetables | خضراوات |
| video games | ألعاب ڤيديو |
| watch TV | يشاهد التلفاز |
| night | ليلة |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| prefer | يفضل | preferred |
| skip | يفوت | skipped |
| shout | يصيح | shouted |
| try | يحاول | tried |

**Irregular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| be | يكون | was / were |
| feel | يشعر | felt |
| sleep | ينام | slept |
| drink | يشرب | drank |
| eat | يأكل | ate |
| find | يجد | found |

## Read and identify these definitions اقرأ وتعرف على هذه التعريفات

| Word الكلمة | Definition التعريف |
|---|---|
| be calm يهدأ | relaxed, not angry مسترخى، غير غاضب |
| be in a good mood فى حالة مزاجية جيدة | feeling happy and having fun يشعر بالسعادة ويستمتع |
| have an argument يتشاجر | be cross with someone because you don't agree تكون غاضبًا من شخص ما لأنك غير متفق معه فى الرأى |
| stay up late يسهر لوقت متأخر | not going to bed at the right time لا ينام فى الوقت المناسب |
| stay positive يبقى إيجابى | try not to worry when facing a problem يحاول ألا يقلق عند مواجهة مشكلة |




## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائى

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية



### Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. My father bought me a new bike because I like ..... .
   a. reading  b. cycling  c. drawing
2. It's healthy to eat fruit and ..... .
   a. candy  b. sweets  c. vegetables
3. ..... for eight hours at night is good for you.
   a. Eating  b. Playing  c. Sleeping
4. Soda and sweets are ..... . [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / بنى سويف - الواسطى]
   a. unhealthy  b. healthy  c. good
5. It's good to stay ..... . [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / الشرقية - أبو كبير]
   a. worried  b. tired  c. positive

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## II Listening and Reading

▶ **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

### Making healthy choices القيام باختيارات صحية مناسبة



**Adam :** When I find things difficult at school, or I have arguments with my friends, I try to stay positive. I like taking a walk outside, because it helps me feel happy and calm.



عندما أجد الأمور صعبة فى المدرسة، أو يكون هناك شجار مع أصدقائى، أحاول أن أبقى إيجابيًا. أحب التنزه فى الخارج، لأنه يساعدنى على الشعور بالسعادة والهدوء.

**Dareen :** I do exercise every day - I play football or go swimming. I like cycling too. I'm always in a good mood after I do exercise.





أنا أتدرب كل يوم. العب كرة القدم أو أذهب للسباحة. أنا أحب ركوب الدراجة أيضًا. أنا دائمًا أكون فى حالة مزاجية جيدة بعد التدريب.



**Laila :** I sometimes stay up late on a school night because I like watching TV and playing video games. In the morning, I feel tired and cross !



أحيانًا أبقى مستيقظًا لوقت متأخر ليلة المدرسة لأنى أحب مشاهدة التليفزيون ولعب ألعاب الڤيديو. فى الصباح أشعر بالتعب والغضب !

**Zein :** I like fruit, but I eat a lot of sweet snacks too. Sometimes I feel tired, so I have candy and snacks. My mom says I don't get enough nutrients.

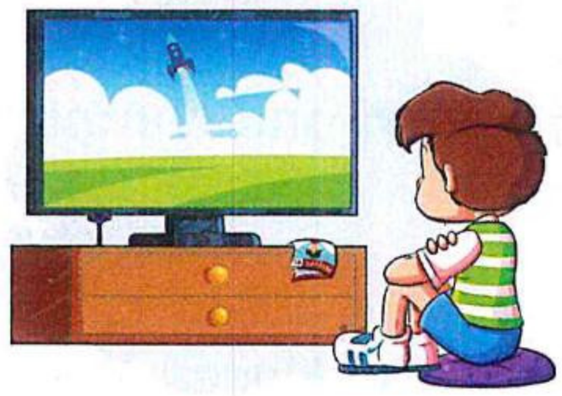


أنا أحب الفاكهة، لكننى أتناول الكثير من الوجبات الخفيفة الحلوة أيضًا.

أحيانًا أشعر بالتعب، لذا أتناول الحلوى والوجبات الخفيفة. تقول أمى أننى لا أحصل على ما يكفى من العناصر الغذائية.

▶ **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

My brother Fares is older than me. He often stays up late, and he's sometimes tired and angry in the morning. He skips breakfast, and has candy or snacks on the bus to school. He plays a lot of video games and he watches TV all the time. He likes watching sports on TV. So, I'm going to ask him to play football with me at the weekend. He'll feel healthier. I think he'll like it!



▶ **Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

- Drinking water is healthier than drinking cola.
- Eating fish and vegetables is healthier than eating fries.
- Running is healthier than playing video games.
- Riding a bike is healthier than watching television.

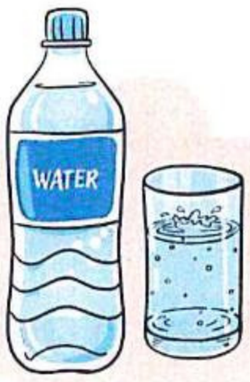
## III Language

### 1 How often ..... ? كم عدد المرات ... ؟



How often do you drink water ?

كم عدد المرات التى تشربين فيها الماء ؟




I drink about six cups a day, and more when it's hot.

أشرب حوالى ٦ أكواب فى اليوم، وأكثر عندما يكون الجو حار.



### 2 How much ..... ? كم مقدار ..... ؟



How much sleep do you get every night ?

كم من الوقت تنامين كل ليلة ؟



Between seven and nine hours.

بين سبع وتسع ساعات.



أخى فارس يكون أصغر منى سنًا. فهو غالبًا ما يسهر لوقت متأخر من الليل وأحيانًا يكون متعب وغاضبًا فى الصباح. إنه يفوت وجبة الإفطار ويتناول حلوى ووجبات خفيفة فى الحافلة وهو فى طريقه إلى المدرسة. يلعب فارس الكثير من ألعاب الفيديو ويشاهد التليفزيون طوال الوقت. يحب فارس مشاهدة الرياضة فى التلفاز. لذلك سوف أطلب منه أن يلعب كرة القدم معى فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. فسوف يشعر أنه بصحة جيدة اكثر. أعتقد أنه سوف يحب ذلك!

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# General Exercises On Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**A.**

stay – calm – cross – arguments – outside

I'm Maged. When I find things difficult at school, or I have [1] ..... with my friends, I try to [2] ..... positive. I like taking a walk [3] ..... , because it helps me feel happy and [4] ..... . [Sohag – Juhayna 2025]

**B.**

nutrients – strong – sweet – tired – play

I'm Rana. I like fruit, but I eat a lot of [1] ..... snacks too. Sometimes, I feel [2] ..... , so I have candy and snacks. My mom says I don't get enough [3] ..... . I have to eat lots of fruit and vegetables to be [4] ..... .

[Minia – Beni Mazar 2025]

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

My brother Fares is older than me. He often stays up late, and he feels tired and angry in the morning. He skips breakfast, and has candy or snacks on the bus to school. He plays a lot of video games and he watches TV all the time. He likes watching sports on TV. So, I'm going to ask him to play football with me at the weekend. He'll feel healthier. I think he'll like it!

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. Fares has ..... or snacks on the bus to school.
   a. juice  b. fruit  c. candy
2. Fares often stays up .....
   a. late  b. early  c. noisy

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What does Fares play all the time ?

   .....

4. How does Fares feel in the morning ?

   .....

5. What meal does Fares skip ?

   .....

6. What does Fares like watching on TV ?

   .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. ..... he going to cycle in the park ?

a. Does  b. Is  c. Are

2. I am going ..... to eat more fruit and vegetables.

a. trying  b. try  c. to try

3. What are you ..... to cook ?

a. go  b. goes  c. going

4. He is going to ..... a bike.

a. riding  b. ride  c. rides

## 4 Read, order and write.

A. 1. do - How often - drink - you - water ?

.....

2. skip - never - breakfast - I.

[التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / المنيا - مغاغة]

.....

B. 1. going – outside - I'm - play – to.

.....

2. feel – cross – and – I – tired.

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**How to be healthy**

**Guiding elements :**

- eat
- drink
- water

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

LESSON 6

# Learn Sounds with Busy Bee!



## Phonics



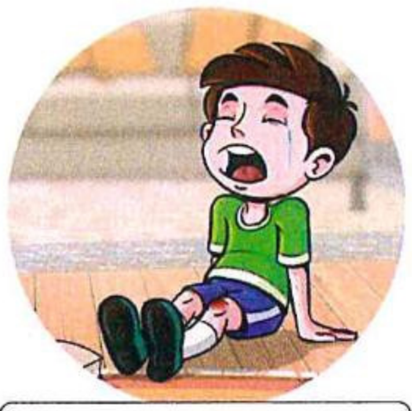

▶ **Listen and repeat.** استمع وردد.

### Long oo

**oo** ⟶ /u:/.



tool أداة



mood حالة مزاجية



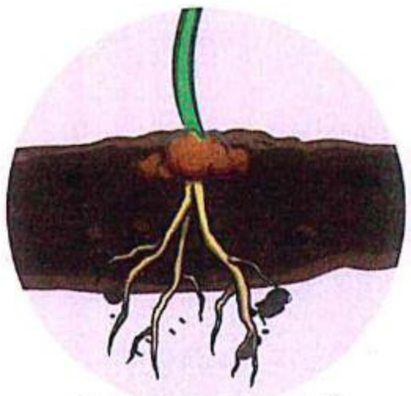
moon قمر



room غرفة



food طعام



root جذر

### Short oo

**oo** ⟶ /ʊ/.



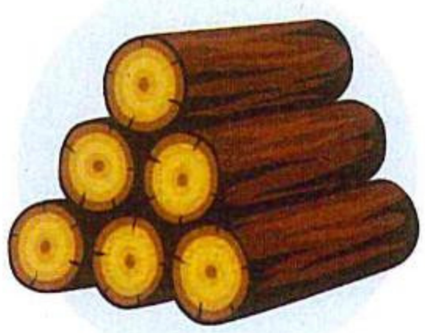

book كتاب



foot قدم



cook يطبخ



wood خشب



good جيد

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Pop Quiz on Phonics

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | 1. b _ _ k | 2. c _ _ k | 3. r _ _ t | 4. f _ _ t |
| B | 1. t _ _ l | 2. w _ _ d | 3. m _ _ n | 4. g _ _ d |

### 2 Read the sentences. Then circle short "oo" in red and long "oo" in blue.



1. Healthy food puts Fares in a good mood.



2. I'm in my room. I've got a book about the moon.

### 3 Read, sort and write.

food - tool - good - cook - wood - room

| Long "oo" sounds | Short "oo" sounds |
|---|---|
| ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... |

### 4 Read and circle the word with the different [oo] sound.

1. good - room - food - root
2. wood - foot - mood - book

https://t.me/G5_Y5

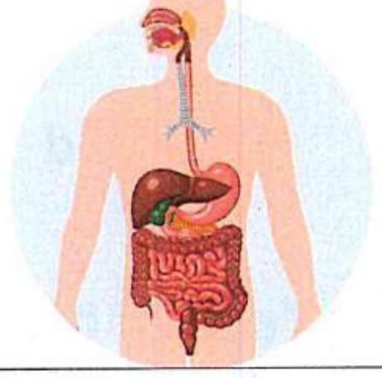
LESSONS 7, 8 & 9

- Song: My Body
- Story: Adam Has a Stomachache

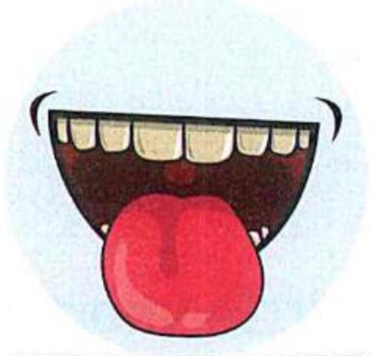
# I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

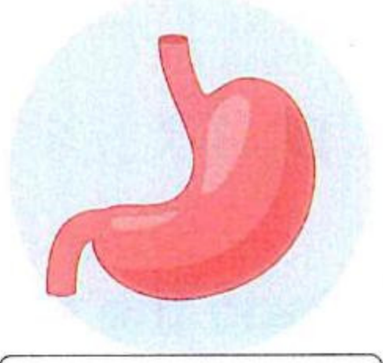
## Key vocabulary



digestion عملية الهضم



tongue لسان



stomach معدة

| | |
|---|---|
| saliva لعاب | stomachache الم في المعدة |

## Extra vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| through عبر / من خلال | quickly بسرعة |
| teeth أسنان | sick مريض |
| fit لائق بدنياً | slowly ببطء |
| energy طاقة | mouth فم |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| chew | يمضغ | chewed |
| swallow | يبتلع | swallowed |
| absorb | يمتص | absorbed |
| explain | يشرح | explained |

**Irregular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| eat | يأكل | ate |
| hurt | يؤلم | hurt |
| tell | يخبر | told |
| feel | يشعر | felt |

## Important Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | |
|---|---|
| • go into يدخل إلى | • go down ينزل / ينتقل |
| • break down يتحلل | • work as a team يعمل كفريق |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| My body organs | heart - blood | My heart pumps blood around my body. |
| | chew - teeth | I chew food with my teeth. |
| | saliva - swallow | Saliva helps me swallow food. |
| | break down - stomach | The food breaks down in my stomach. |
| | organs - strong | My organs keep me healthy, fit and strong. |
| Adam has a stomachache | eat - quickly | Adam ate his lunch very quickly. |
| | stomach - sick | Adam's stomach hurt and he felt sick. |
| | swallow- fast | Adam swallowed the food very fast. |
| | chew - smaller | Adam should chew the food and make it smaller. |
| | nutrients - energy | Nutrients in the food give us energy and help us grow. |
| | much better | The next day, Adam's stomach felt much better. |

## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

05 min

تدريب تلقائى

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

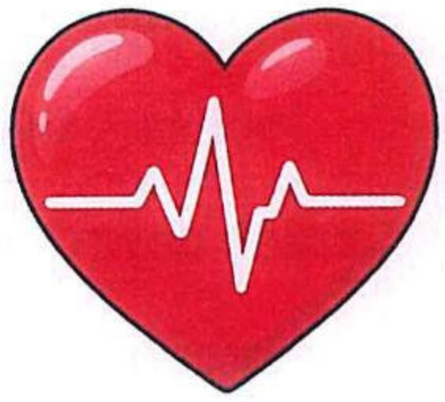
1. We ..... food with our teeth.
   a. chew  b. cook  c. grow
2. When we ..... food, it goes to our stomach.
   a. cook  b. buy  c. swallow
3. Food gives us ..... .
   a. saliva  b. energy  c. light
4. Our heart ..... blood around our body.
   a. eats  b. pumps  c. swallows
5. ..... helps us swallow food.
   a. Saliva  b. Tooth  c. Blood

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب
على قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع
05 min

▶ **Listen and sing.** استمع و غنِّ.



It pumps my blood around my body
To my lungs, through my veins
It beats seventy times a minute
What is it? It's my heart !

انه يضخ الدم حول جسـدي إلى رئتيّ عبر أوردتي انه ينبض سبعون مرة في الدقيقة ما هو؟
انه قلبي!



I use this to chew my food
With my teeth, and my tongue.
My saliva helps me swallow.
What is it? It's my mouth!

استخدمه لمضغ طعامي بأسناني ولساني.
يساعدني لعابي على البلع. ما هذا ؟ انه فمي!

This is where the food breaks down.
There's no question, that's digestion!
This is how I absorb my nutrients.
What is it? It's my stomach!



هنا حيث يتحلل الطعام.
بدون سؤال، انها عملية الهضم!
هذه هي الطريقة التي أمتص بها العناصر الغذائية. ما هذه ؟ انها المعدة!



These things all work as a team
With my skeleton and my bones.
They keep me healthy, fit and strong.
What are they? They're my body !

هذه الأشياء جميعها تعمل كفريق بهيكلي العظمي وعظامي .
انها تحافظ على صحتي ولياقتي وقوتي. ما هي ؟ انها أعضاء جسدي!

**Answer the following questions :**

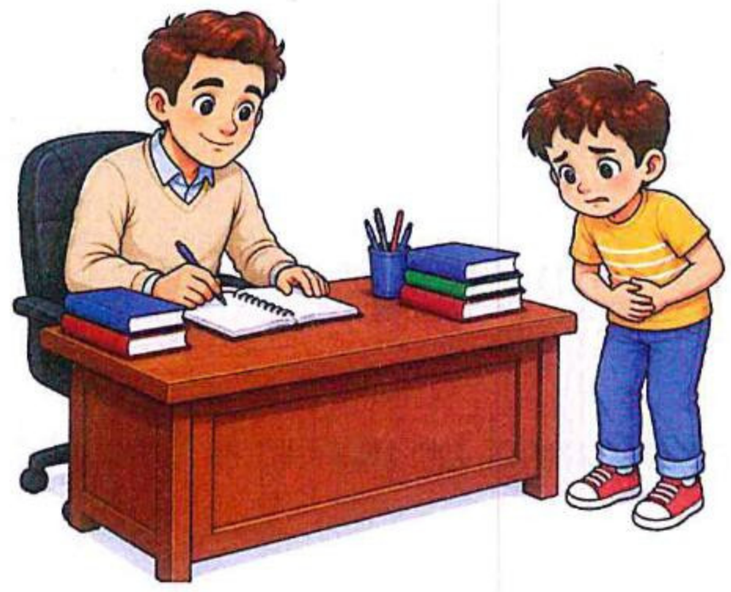
Learn 1. What pumps blood around the body ?
- My heart.

Practice 2. What do you use to chew food ?
.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

▶ **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

## Adam has a stomachache



Adam ate his lunch very quickly. A few minutes later, his stomach hurt.
"I feel sick," he told his teacher.
The teacher asked, "Did you chew your food slowly?"
"No," said Adam. "I swallowed it very fast."
Adam's teacher explained, "First, food goes into your mouth. Your teeth chew the food and make it smaller.
Then you swallow it, and it goes down to your stomach."
"What happens in my stomach?" asked Adam.
"In your stomach, food breaks down. Then your body absorbs the nutrients from the food. These nutrients give you energy and help you grow."
"I'll remember that," said Adam.
The next day, Adam chewed his food slowly and drank water. His stomach felt much better.

تناول أدم غدائه سريعاً وبعد دقائق قليلة بدأت معدته تؤلمه .
أخبر معلمه قائلاً "أنا اشعر بالمرض". سأل المعلم" هل قمت بمضغ طعامك ببطء ؟" قال أدم "لا، لقد قمت بإبتلاعه بسرعة كبيرة".
شرح معلم أدم قائلاً "أولاً الطعام يذهب إلى فمك. تقوم أسنانك بمضغ الطعام وتجعلها أصغر. ثم تبتلعها وتنزل إلى معدتك ".
سأل أدم "ماذا يحدث فى معدتى ؟ " "فى معدتك يتحلل الطعام ثم يمتص الجسم العناصر الغذائية من الطعام. هذه العناصر الغذائية تمنحك الطاقة وتساعدك على النمو".
قال أدم "سأتذكر هذا". وفى اليوم التالى، مضغ أدم الطعام ببطء وشرب الماء. شعر بأن معدته أفضل بكثير".



**Moral of the story**

Eat slowly.
تناول الطعام ببطء.

**Choose the correct answer :**

Learn 1. Adam's ..... hurt.
a. heart b. stomach c. leg

Practice 2. My ..... chew the food and make it smaller.
a. teeth b. knees c. elbows

# General Exercises On Lessons 7, 8 & 9

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. r _ _ m | 2. w _ _ d | 3. f _ _ d | 4. b _ _ k

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

stomach - soda - water - sick - slowly

One day, Adam ate his lunch quickly. His [1] ..... hurt. He felt [2] ..... . His teacher told him to eat [3] ..... . The next day, Adam chewed his food slowly and drank [4] ..... . His stomach felt much better.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Our body has many organs. Our heart pumps blood around our body and to our lungs. Our heart beats seventy times a minute. We can chew food with our teeth. Our saliva in the mouth helps us swallow . Our stomach helps break down food. These organs all work as a team. They keep us healthy, fit and strong.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. Our organs work as a ..... .
   a. family  b. class  c. team

2. Our organs keep us healthy, ..... and strong.
   a. tired  b. fit  c. sick

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. How many times does the heart beat in a minute ?
   .....

4. What helps us swallow our food ?
   .....

5. What does our stomach do ?
   .....

6. What do we use to chew food ?
   .....

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. ..... he going to read a book ? [Qena – Qus 2026]

a. Is b. Are c. Am

2. We are ..... to watch a movie tonight. [Minia – Maghaga 2025]

a. go b. goes c. going

3. Are you going to ..... for the exam ?

a. study b. studying c. studies

4. She ..... not going to eat dinner at home tonight.

a. were b. are c. is

## 5 Read, order and write.

A. 1. food - I - with – chew – my mouth.

.....

2. have - a - I - stomachache. [التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / المنيا - مغاغة]

.....

B. 1. What - in - my - happens - stomach ?

.....

2. down - helps - food - My stomach - break.

.....

## 6 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**Digestion**

**Guiding elements :**

- teeth
- chew
- tongue

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Skills 1 How to write about certain topics

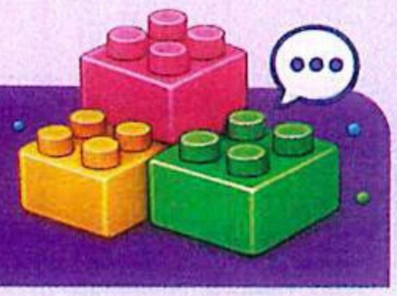



**كيفية كتابة الفقرات الإنشائية** ← اتباع الخطوات التالية يساعدك على تكوين فقرة إنشائية :

١. تكوين حصيلة من المفردات اللغوية. ٢. إتقان تكوين الجمل. ٣. بعد اتباع الخطوات السابقة يمكنك كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

| | Step 1 Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية: | Step 2 Sentences<br>متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية: | Step 3 Writing<br>متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية أكتب فقرة إنشائية: |
|---|---|---|---|
| Our body | **Write the meaning :**<br>..... هيكل عظمى<br>..... يتحرك<br>..... قوى<br>..... قلب<br>..... يتحكم فى | **Reorder the words :**<br>1. move - **Our skeleton** - us - helps.<br>.....<br>2. us - **It** - strong - makes.<br>.....<br>3. moves - around - **Our heart** - our body - blood.<br>.....<br>4. controls - **Our brain** - in - our body - everything.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"Our body"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| Bones and muscles | ..... عضلات<br>..... يرفع<br>..... يحمى<br>..... اعضاء<br>..... عظام | 5. need - **We** - to move - muscles - our bones.<br>.....<br>6. bones - **Muscles** - and - turn - lift.<br>.....<br>7. protect - **Bones** - soft - our - organs.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"Bones and muscles"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| Making healthy choices | ..... يتدرب<br>..... يمشى / يتمشى<br>..... يبقى ايجابى<br>..... ركوب الدرجات<br>..... اختيار | 8. every - **I** - day - exercise - do.<br>.....<br>9. outside - like - **I** - a walk - taking.<br>.....<br>10. positive - **I** - to - try - stay.<br>.....<br>11. too - **I** - cycling - like.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"Making healthy choices"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |

# 2 Sentence Building



الهدف من هذا الجزء تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

## ١ الجملة الخبريـة

1. blood - Our heart - our - around - moves - body.
2. protect - Bones - soft - our - organs.
3. exercise - I - day - every - do.
4. food - teeth - I - with - chew - my.

| | ١ فاعـل | ٢ فعـل | ٣ باقـى الجملـة. |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | | | |
| 2. | | protect | |
| 3. | I | | |
| 4. | | | |

### 1 Subject Detective

مين صاحب الفعل؟

ابحث عن الفاعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. Bones
   فاعل الجملة الثانية
2. I
   فاعل الجملة الثالثة



الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

### 2 Verb Hunter

بيعمل إيه؟

ابحث عن الفعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. moves
   فعل الجملة الأولى
2. chew
   فعل الجملة الرابعة



الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

## ٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

1. does - do - What - brain - our ?
2. do - water - drink - How - you - often ?
3. much - do - get - night - you - How - sleep - every ?
4. our - do - stomach - What - does ?

| | ١ كلمة استفهام | ٢ فعل مساعد | ٣ فاعـل | ٤ فعل | ٥ باقى السؤال؟ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | | | | | |
| 2. | How often | | | | |
| 3. | | do | | | |
| 4. | | | | | |

### 3 Helper Team

مين بيساعدنا؟

الأفعال المساعدة

Do تستخدم مع:

I, you, we, they,

Does تستخدم مع:

he, she, it



الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

### 4 The Wh-Team

نسأل ازاى؟

أدوات الاستفهام

- What [ما / ماذا]: للسؤال عن شئ.
- How often [كم مرة]: للسؤال عن عدد المرات.



أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائمًا في بداية السؤال.

# 3 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [١٥ جملة].

## 1 The heart

The heart beats about 70 times a minute[1]. The heart moves blood around our body[2]. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to all parts of the body[3].

## 2 Our body organs

Our brain controls everything that happens in our body[4]. Our skeleton helps us move and makes us strong[5]. We chew food with our teeth.[6] Our stomach helps break down food[7].

## 3 Bones and muscles

Our skeleton is all the bones that keep us strong and help us move[8]. We need muscles to move our bones[9]. Muscles lift and turn bones so we can walk, run and dance[10].

## 4 How to be healthy

To be healthy, we should eat fruit and vegetables[11]. We should drink lots of water[12]. We should exercise every day[13]. We shouldn't eat a lot of sweet snacks[14]. We shouldn't skip breakfast[15].

### From Sentences to Topics

- A Start with a capital letter.
- Use the correct tense.
- Put the words in the correct order.
- End with a full stop.





# Review through the Exam on Unit 2

**مراجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتدريبات**

## 25 Vocabulary

أهم 25 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| calm | هادئ | muscle | عضلة | veins | الاوردة |
| digestion | عملية الهضم | bones | عظام | brain | مخ |
| stomachache | الم فى المعدة | knee | ركبه | lungs | الرئتين |
| tongue | لسان | skull | جمجمة | arteries | الشرايين |
| saliva | لعاب | organ | عضو | blood | دم |
| nutrients | عناصر غذائية | elbow | مرفق [كوع] | heart | قلب |
| in a good mood | فى حالة مزاجية جيدة | stay up late | يسهر لوقت متأخر | skeleton | هيكل عظمى |
| | | argument | جدال / مناقشة | jaw | فك |
| | | skip breakfast | يفوت وجبة الافطار | rib | ضلع |

## 10 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعًا فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان

1. Our heart[1] moves blood around our body.
2. Our skeleton[2] helps us move and makes us strong.
3. Veins[3] carry blood from the body to the heart.
4. We need muscles[4] to move our bones.
5. Bones[5] protect our soft organs.
6. The jaw[6] is a bone in your face.
7. I am always in a good mood[7] after I exercise.
8. When I have arguments[8] with my friends, I try to stay positive.
9. Adam had a stomachache[9] because he ate his lunch very quickly.
10. He stayed up late[10], so he feels tired today.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| [1] الجيزة - كرداسة | [2] المنيا - مغاغه | [3] كتاب الطالب | [4] كتاب التدريبات | [5] سوهاج - جرجا |
| [6] الفيوم - سنورس | [7] القليوبية - بنها | [8] القاهرة - الزاوية | [9] كتاب الطالب | [10] الشرقية - ههيا |

## Phonics through the Exam

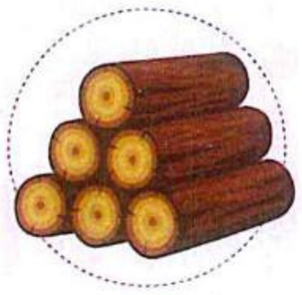
الصوتيات الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان].

**Short oo**



book


cook


wood

**Long oo**


mood


moon


room

## Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

### • Using "be going to" for future plans

**statement**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| I | → | am ['m not] | | |
| He, She , It, اسم مفرد | → | is [isn't] | + going to + | inf. مصدر الفعل ..... . |
| You , We, They, اسم جمع | → | are [aren't] | | |

## Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعًا
فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان

1. Are they going to climb the mountain ?
2. I am going to have fish and salad for lunch.
3. He is going to wear pads to protect his elbows.
4. She isn't going to go to the zoo today.
5. The boys are going to wear their helmets to protect their skulls.
6. My brother is going to play football after school.
7. I am going to clean my room.
8. Is she going to visit her grandparents ?
9. My father is going to buy a new car.
10. We aren't going to travel this summer.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| [1] كتاب الطالب | [2] القاهرة - عابدين | [3] كتاب الطالب | [4] الجيزة - اوسيم | [5] كتاب الطالب |
| [6] كفر الشيخ - دسوق | [7] الغربية - بسيون | [8] كتاب التدريبات | [9] المنيا - بنى مزار | [10] الغربية - سمنود |

# Sample Test 3

**On Unit 2**



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات
**فى نهاية الكتاب**

**اختبار المعاصر**

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. c _ _ k | 2. r _ _ t | 3. f _ _ t | 4. m _ _ n |

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

carries - lungs - blood - Veins - connect

The heart is very important. It moves [1] ..... around our body. Blood [2] ..... oxygen and nutrients to all parts of the body. [3] ..... carry blood from the body to the heart. The heart pushes the blood to the lungs. In the [4] ..... , the body adds oxygen to the blood.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Adam ate his lunch very quickly. A few minutes later, his stomach hurt, so he told his teacher that he felt sick. The teacher asked if he chewed his food slowly. Adam explained that he swallowed it very fast. The teacher explained that teeth chew the food and make it smaller. Then the food goes to the stomach, where it breaks down. Adam learned that chewing food slowly helps the stomach work better. The next day, Adam chewed his food slowly and drank water. His stomach felt much better.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Adam's ..... hurt when he ate very quickly.
   a. stomach  b. face  c. teeth

2. Adam told his ..... that he felt sick.
   a. friends  b. parents  c. teacher

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why did Adam feel sick ?

.....

4. What do your teeth do ?

.....

5. Where does the food go after you swallow it ?

.....

6. What did Adam do the next day ?

.....

## 4 The Reader

### A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares went swimming ● | ☐ a. a helmet or knee pads. |
| 2. Adam doesn't wear ● | ☐ b. every day. |

### B. Read and write T [True] or [False] :

1. Fares has tried skateboarding before. ☐
2. Fares wanted to be an engineer. ☐

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. What are they going to ..... ?
   a. do  b. does  c. doing
2. Is he ..... to go to bed late ?
   a. goes  b. go  c. going
3. They ..... going to go to the library.
   a. will  b. are  c. is
4. Is he going to play football ? - No, he ..... .
   a. is  b. aren't  c. isn't

## 6 Read, order and write.

1. helps - move - Our skeleton - us - to.

.....

2. she - to - pads - Is - wear - going ?

.....

## 7 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**Body organs**

**Guiding elements :**

- brain
- skeleton
- stomach

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5 Y5

# Sample Test 4

**On Unit 2**



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات **فى نهاية الكتاب**

اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. m _ _ d | 2. f _ _ d | 3. b _ _ k | 4. r _ _ m

[Asuit - Sedfa / Alexandria - West / Qalyubia - Obour 2025]

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sleep – sports – fruits – games – water

To be healthy, we drink [1] ..... and fresh juice. Eating [2] ..... and vegetables is healthier than eating fries. Playing [3] ..... and walking is better than playing video [4] ..... . We shouldn't sleep late.

[التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / القاهرة - النزهة ٢٠٢٥]

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

We need muscles to move our bones. Muscles lift and turn bones so we can walk, run and dance. When we kick a ball, muscles make the bones in our leg and knee move. Muscles in our arms and elbows move when we play tennis. Bones are hard, and they protect our soft organs.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.** [Cairo - West Nasr City 2026]

1. Muscles in our ..... and elbows move when you play tennis.
   a. lungs  b. heart  c. arms
2. Bones are ..... .
   a. hard  b. soft  c. easy

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What do muscles lift and turn ?

.....

4. Why do we need muscles ?

.....

5. What happens when we kick a ball ?

.....

6. What do hard bones protect in our body ?

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## 4 The Reader

### A. Read and match.

[Kafr El-Sheik –Bella 2025]

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares wanted to be • | ☐ a. close to the sports center. |
| 2. Fares and his family lived • | ☐ b. an athlete. |

### B. Read and write YES or NO :

1. Fares sometimes went to the sports center by car. [Fayoum – West Fayoum 2025] ☐

2. Fares loved swimming. [Qalyubia – Obour 2025] ☐

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. He is ..... visit his grandma tomorrow. [Giza - 6th of October 2026]
   a. will b. going to c. going

2. Is he going to play football ? – No, he ..... . [Sharqia – East Zagazig 2026]
   a. is b. aren't c. isn't

3. We ..... going to do the homework. [Monufia – Menuf 2025]
   a. am b. is c. are

4. They ..... to play tennis. [Luxor – Esna 2025]
   a. are going b. going c. are

## 6 Read, order and write.

1. you – skip - ever - Do - breakfast ? [Aswan – Adfu 2025]

.....

2. chew - We - food – teeth – our – with. [Alexandria – Gomrouk 2025]

.....

## 7 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Healthy choices"**

**Guiding elements :**

- drink water
- wear a helmet
- get a lot of sleep

.....

.....

.....

.....

[Gharbiya – West Tanta 2025]



تنويه
- علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
- علامة AB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التدريبات

UNIT 3

# What's on your plate ?

## ماذا يوجد فى طبقك ؟

### Unit Three objectives

**Vocabulary**
- carbohydrates, dairy, fat, fiber, vitamins, calories, percent

- الكربوهيدرات، منتجات ألبان، دهون، ألياف، فيتامينات، سعرات حرارية، نسبة مئوية

**Language**
- You should eat a healthy lunch every day.
- You shouldn't eat cookies every day.

- ينبغى أن تتناول وجبة الغداء كل يوم.
- لا ينبغى أن تأكل كعك مُحلى كل يوم.

**Reading and stories**
- A text about sugar
- Story: Lina tries something new

- نص عن السكر
- لينا تجرب شيئًا جديدًا

**Phonics**
- –tion ending : nutrition, digestion

- اللاحقة tion– : تغذية / عملية الهضم

LESSONS 1&2

- Vocabulary
- Language use



# I Vocabulary




## Key vocabulary

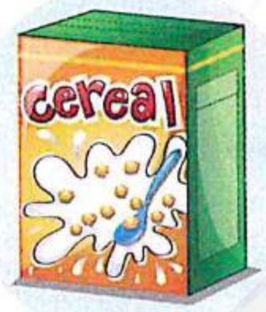
### Foods أطعمة



butter زبدة



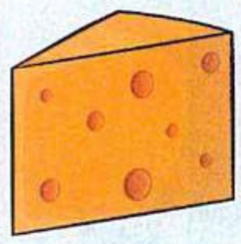

dairy منتجات ألبان




cereal طعام من الحبوب



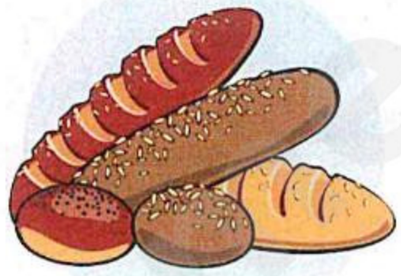
olive oil زيت زيتون



cheese جبن



rice أرز



bread خبز



pasta مكرونة



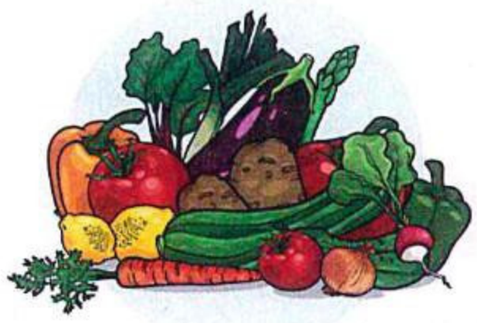
sugar سكر



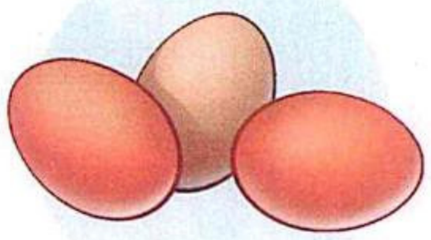
fruit فاكهة




biscuits بسكويت



vegetables خضروات



eggs بيض

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| vitamins | فيتامينات | delicious | لذيذ | fats | دهون |
| fiber | ألياف | meat | لحم | country | دولة |
| nutrients | عناصر غذائية | carbohydrates | الكربوهيدرات | plate | طبق |
| balance | توازن | healthy diet | نظام غذائى صحى | contain | يحتوى على |
| minerals | معادن | protein | بروتين | | |
| soda | مياه غازية | calcium | كالسيوم | | |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Nutrients in food | nutrients – vitamins | Our bodies need lots of different nutrients including vitamins and minerals. |
| | Vitamin C | There are lots of vitamins in fruit, such as Vitamin C. |
| | bread - cereal | We can get carbohydrates in bread, pasta, rice, and cereal. |
| | carbohydrates - energy | Carbohydrates give us energy. |
| | protein – fish | There is protein in meat, eggs, and fish. |
| | fats – olive oil | Olive oil and butter are healthy fats. |
| | calcium – cheese | Calcium is good for our bones, heart, and muscles. |




## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائى

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية



- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. It's important to get a ..... of the right kinds of food.
   a. race  b. photo  c. balance
2. Milk and ..... are dairy foods.
   a. oil  b. cheese  c. rice
3. Mom puts fruit on a ..... .
   a. plate  b. track  c. bike
4. Apples and bananas are ..... .
   a. fats  b. vegetables  c. fruits
5. We shouldn't eat or drink too much ..... .
   a. vitamins  b. sugar  c. minerals
6. We can get vitamins from ..... .
   a. cakes  b. fruit  c. candy

https://t.me/GSays

## II Listening and Reading

**Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

1 I always have fruit at breakfast - an apple or a banana. There are lots of vitamins in fruit, and there is fiber, too! Do you like fruit, Hany ?

أنا دائمًا أتناول الفاكهة فى وجبة الإفطار - تفاحة أو موزة. يوجد الكثير من الڤيتامينات فى الفاكهة ويوجد ألياف أيضًا ! هل تحب الفاكهة، يا هانى ؟

2 Yes, I do, but what are vitamins ? Why do we need them ?

نعم، أحبها، لكن ما هى الڤيتامينات ؟ ولماذا نحتاجها ؟



3 Vitamins are nutrients in some foods. They're good for all parts of your body, and they make you strong! Mom says we should eat lots of fruit to get the vitamins we need.

الڤيتامينات هى عناصر غذائية فى بعض الأطعمة. إنها جيدة لكل أجزاء جسمك، وتجعلك قويًا! تقول أمى يجب علينا تناول الكثير من الفاكهة لنحصل على الڤيتامينات التى نحتاجها.

4 That's good, because fruit is delicious ! Are there vitamins in eggs ?

ذلك جيد ، لأن الفاكهة لذيذة ! هل يوجد ڤيتامينات فى البيض ؟

5 Yes, there are !

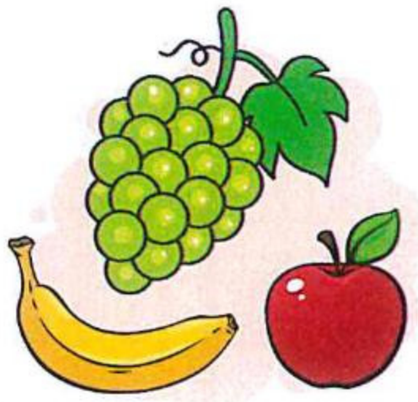
نعم، يوجد !

https://t.me/G5_Y5

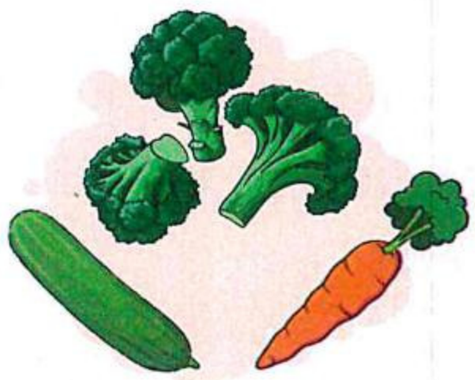
## ⭐ Read, learn and identify. اقرأ، تعلم وتعرف.

It's important to get a balance of the right kinds of food. Our bodies need lots of different nutrients, including vitamins and minerals, to work well and be healthy. This healthy eating plate is a good way to think about what we need.

### Vitamins and fiber are in :



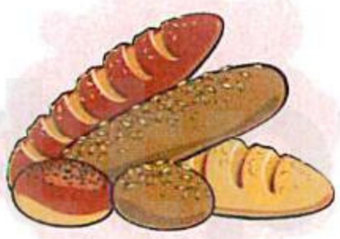
fruit



vegetables

We should try to eat 5 - 7 pieces of fruit and vegetables a day. There are lots of vitamins in fruit, such as Vitamin C. There is also fiber. Fiber is very important in a healthy diet.

### Carbohydrates are in :



bread



pasta



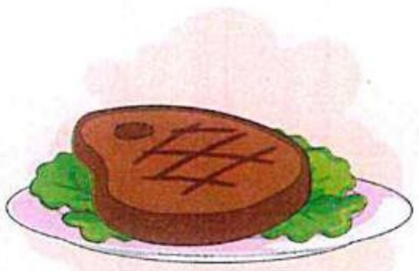
rice



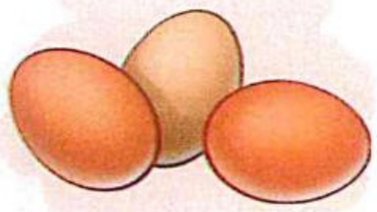

cereal

Carbohydrates give us energy. We can get these in bread, pasta, rice, and cereal.

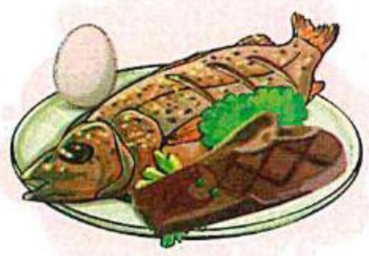
### Protein is in :



meat



eggs



fish

**TIPS**

- Many foods such as cakes, biscuits and soda contain sugar. We shouldn't eat or drink a lot of sugar !

العديد من الأطعمة مثل الكعك، البسكويت والمياه الغازية تحتوى على سكر. يجب عدم تناول أو شرب الكثير من السكريات!

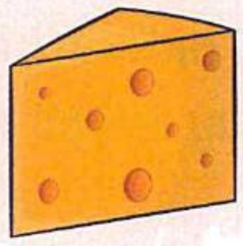
We need protein to help us grow and to make our bodies strong. There's protein in meat, fish, and eggs.

- من المهم الحصول على توازن بين أنواع الطعام المناسبة. تحتاج أجسامنا الكثير من العناصر الغذائية المختلفة، بما فى ذلك الفيتامينات والمعادن، لتعمل بشكل جيد وتكون بصحة جيدة. يعتبر طبق الطعام الصحى طريقة جيدة للتفكير فيما نحتاجه.
- يجب علينا محاولة تناول من ٥ إلى ٧ قطع من الفاكهة والخضروات يوميًا. يوجد الكثير من الفيتامينات فى الفاكهة مثل فيتامين C. يوجد أيضًا الألياف. الألياف مهمة جدًا فى النظام الغذائى الصحى.
- الكربوهيدرات تعطينا الطاقة. يمكننا الحصول عليها من الخبز، المكرونة، الأرز وطعام من الحبوب.
- نحتاج البروتين ليساعدنا ننمو ويجعل أجسامنا قوية. يوجد البروتين فى اللحوم، الأسماك والبيض.

## Calcium is in :




milk



cheese



yogurt

There is protein in dairy foods such as milk and cheese, too. Dairy foods also give us vitamins and a mineral called calcium. Calcium is good for our bones, heart, and muscles.

## Fats are in :



olive oil



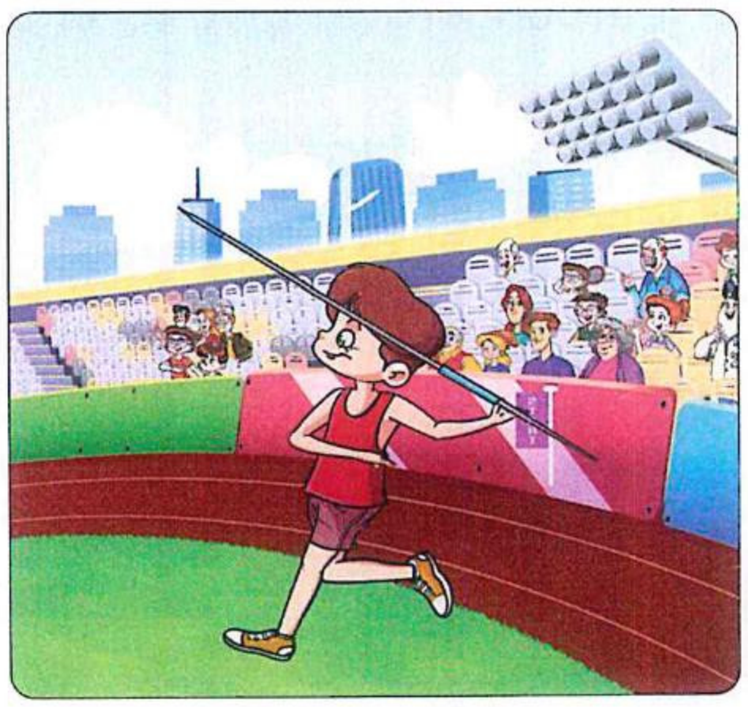
butter

We need some fats, too, because they give us energy and help us use some important vitamins. There are healthy fats and oils such as olive oil and butter.

## ⭐ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Younis is an athlete. He wants to have a healthy diet. He lives in a hot country and he does a lot of exercise. He's going to do a race tomorrow, so he needs lots of energy.

يونس لاعب رياضى. يريد أن يكون له نظام غذائى صحى. هو يعيش فى دولة حارة ويقوم بالكثير من التمارين. يونس سيذهب للسباق غدًا ولذلك يحتاج إلى الكثير من الطاقة.



- يوجد بروتين فى منتجات الألبان مثل اللبن والجبنة أيضًا. منتجات الألبان تعطينا أيضًا فيتامينات ومعدن يسمى الكالسيوم. الكالسيوم جيد لعظامنا، قلبنا وعضلاتنا.
- نحتاج بعض الدهون أيضًا، لأنها تمدنا بالطاقة وتساعدنا فى امتصاص بعض الفيتامينات الهامة. يوجد دهون وزيوت صحية مثل زيت الزيتون والزبدة.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# III Language

## Giving advice using "should & shouldn't"

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام «ينبغى أن / لا ينبغى أن»

### 1 Affirmative statements

١. الجمل المثبتة

**Subject** الفاعل **+ should +** **inf.** مصدر الفعل .....

You → should → drink water.



You should eat healthy food every day.

ينبغى أن تأكل طعامًا صحيًا كل يوم.



### 2 Negative statements

٢. الجمل المنفية

**Subject** الفاعل **+ shouldn't +** **inf.** مصدر الفعل .....

You → shouldn't → drink soda.



You shouldn't eat cookies every day.

لا ينبغى أن تأكل كعك مُحلى كل يوم.



### 3 Yes / No question with "should"

٣. السؤال بمعنى هل ينبغى ... ؟

**Should + subject** الفاعل **+ inf.** مصدر الفعل .....?

Should → he → skip breakfast ?



Yes, subject ..... should.

نعم ، ينبغى.



No, subject ..... shouldn't.

لا ، لا ينبغى.

https://t.me/G5 Y5

## Pop Quiz on Language

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

**1.** You ..... help your friends. [Aswan – Edfu 2025]

a. shouldn't b. should c. aren't

**2.** She is sick. She should ..... home.

a. stays b. staying c. stay

**3.** You shouldn't ..... TV for many hours.

a. watch b. watches c. watching

**4.** You should ..... some exercise every day. [التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / كفر الشيخ]

a. did b. do c. does

**5.** Should I ..... a lot of water ? [التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / المنيا - بنى مزار]

a. drinking b. drinks c. drink

**6.** No, you ..... eat too many sweets.

a. should b. shouldn't c. are

**7.** ..... I eat vegetables ? - Yes, you should.

a. Am b. Should c. Shouldn't

**8.** You ..... sleep for 8 hours every day.

a. should b. doesn't c. shouldn't

**9.** We should ..... a lot of vegetables. [التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / الاقصر - آسنا]

a. eats b. eating c. eat

**10.** Should we eat candies ? - No, we ..... .

a. shouldn't b. should c. aren't

**11.** I ..... come to school late.

a. should b. shouldn't c. 'm not

**12.** You shouldn't ..... breakfast.

a. skips b. skip c. skipping

**13.** You ..... do your homework. [التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / الجيزة - ٦ اكتوبر]

a. should b. shouldn't c. don't

**14.** ..... eat a lot of fish ? - Yes, he should.

a. I should b. She should c. Should he

**15.** Should they sleep early ? – No, ..... shouldn't.

a. he b. they c. we

# General Exercises On Lessons 1 & 2

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

country – energy – oil – healthy – race

Younis is an athlete. He wants to have a [1] ..... diet. He lives in a hot [2] ..... and he does a lot of exercise. He is going to do a [3] ..... tomorrow, so he needs lots of energy. He eats carbohydrates because they give us [4] ..... .

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I'm Aya. I always have fruit at breakfast – an apple or a banana. Fruit is delicious. There are lots of vitamins in fruit, and there is fiber, too ! Vitamins are nutrients in some foods. They're good for all parts of our body, and they make us strong. We should eat lots of fruit to get the vitamins we need.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :**

1. Fruits are ..... .

a. delicious b. ugly c. bad

2. There are lots of fiber in ..... .

a. butter b. rice c. fruit

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. What are vitamins ?

.....

4. What does Aya always have at breakfast ?

.....

5. Why are vitamins important ?

.....

6. How can we get the vitamins we need ?

.....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

A. 1. You ..... eat healthy food. [التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / البحيرة - ادكو]

a. should b. shouldn't c. can't

2. We ..... eat too much sugar.

a. doesn't b. shouldn't c. weren't

3. ..... I drink water ? - Yes, you should.

a. Should b. Does c. Is

4. Should they ..... the school uniform ?

a. wears b. to wear c. wear

**B.** 1. You should ..... hard for the exam. [Fayoum – Etsaa 2025]

a. study b. studies c. studying

2. She ..... take a break. She looks tired.

a. am b. shouldn't c. should

3. You should ..... to your teacher.

a. listen b. listens c. listening

4. I ..... play video games all night.

a. should b. shouldn't c. must

## 4 Read, order and write.

**A.** 1. good – is – bones – our - Calcium – for.

.....

2. lots of - Should - eat - she - candies ?

.....

**B.** 1. there - vitamins - Are – eggs - in ?

.....

2. protein - We - to – need – grow.

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Nutrients in food"**

**Guiding elements :**

• fiber • protein • fats

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5Y5

LESSON 3

# CLIL : Science

## I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

### Key vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| hydrated | مشبع بالماء | joints | مفاصل |
| headache | صداع | blood vessels | أوعية دموية |
| temperature | درجة حرارة | | |

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| humans | بشر | pure | نقي |
| living things | كائنات حية | health | صحة |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| carry | يحمل | carried |
| need | يحتاج | needed |

**Irregular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| mean | يعنى | meant |
| feel | يشعر | felt |

### Important Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| • made up of | مكون من | • break down into ..... | يتحلل إلى ..... |

### Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

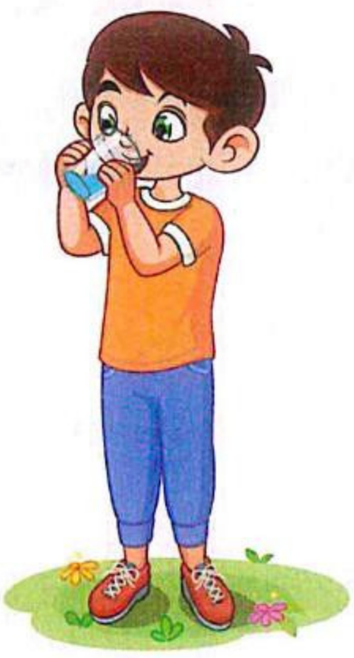
| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Why do we need water ? | living things | All living things need water. |
| | humans - water | Animals and humans drink water. |
| | soil – roots | Plants get water from the soil in their roots. |
| | blood | Our blood is about 82% water. |
| | brains | Our brains are made up of about 75% water. |
| | drink – liters | Children should drink about 1.5 liters of water every day. |

https://t.me/GSky5

## II Reading

**Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

### Why do we need water ?



All **living things**[1] need water. Animals and humans drink water. Plants get it from the soil in their roots.

We all know water is good for us, but do you know how important it is for our health? Our blood is about 82% water.

**Blood**[2] carries oxygen and nutrients around the body. We eat food, and it breaks down into nutrients in our stomach. Water helps with this, and it also helps carry the nutrients around the body in our blood vessels.

Our **brains**[3] are made up of about 75% water. If you drink enough water, your brain works better.

If you don't drink enough water, you feel tired and you don't have a lot of **energy**[4]. You can get a headache or find it difficult to think. When you are hydrated, it means you are getting enough water. It's good for your **joints**[5], your bones, and your body temperature.

Children should drink about 1.5 liters of water every day. Most of this should be **pure water**[6], but we can also get water from other drinks such as milk and fruit juices, or from fruits and vegetables. We should drink more water in hot **weather**[7].

[1] كائنات حية
[2] دم
[3] المخ
[4] طاقة
[5] مفاصل
[6] مياه نقية
[7] طقس




كل الكائنات الحية تحتاج إلى الماء. الحيوانات والإنسان (البشر) يشربون الماء. تحصل عليه النباتات من التربة الزراعية عن طريق جذورهم. جميعنا نعلم أن الماء جيد لنا، لكن هل تعرف أهمية (الماء) من أجل صحتنا ؟ دمنا يحتوى على ٨٢٪ من الماء. يحمل الدم الأكسچين والعناصر الغذائية حول الجسم. نحن نأكل الطعام ويتحلل إلى عناصر غذائية فى معدتنا، يُساعدنا الماء فى ذلك ويُساعدنا أيضًا فى حمل العناصر الغذائية حول الجسم فى أوعيتنا الدموية.

أجهزة المخ لدينا مكونة تقريبًا من ٧٥٪ من الماء. إذا كنت تشرب مياه كافية، مخك سيعمل بشكل أفضل. إذا لم تشرب مياه كافية ستشعر بالتعب ولن تحصل على كثير من الطاقة. يمكن أن تصاب بالصداع أو تجد صعوبة فى التفكير. عندما تكون مشبعًا بالماء هذا يعنى أنك حصلت على مياه كافية. الماء مفيد لمفاصلك وعظامك ودرجة حرارة جسمك.

يجب على الأطفال أن تشرب حوالى ١,٥ لتر من الماء كل يوم. يجب أن تكون معظم هذه المياه نقية ولكن يمكننا أيضًا الحصول على الماء من مشروبات أخرى مثل : اللبن، عصير الفواكه أوالفاكهة والخضروات.

يجب علينا أن نشرب الكثير من المياه فى الطقس الحار.

# General Exercises On Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

weather – enough – nutrients – water – brain

Water is good for us. If you don't drink [1] ..... water, you feel tired. If you drink enough water, your [2] ..... works better. Children should drink about 1.5 liters of [3] ..... every day. We should drink more water in hot [4] ..... .

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

All living things need water. Animals and humans drink water. Plants get it from the soil in their roots. We all know water is good for us, but do you know how important it is for our health? Our blood is about 82% water. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients around the body. We eat food, and it breaks down into nutrients in our stomach. Water helps with this, and it also helps carry the nutrients around the body in our blood vessels.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :**

1. Animals and humans drink ..... .

a. water b. juice c. milk

2. Our ..... is about 82% water.

a. oxygen b. temperature c. blood

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. What do all living things need ?

.....

4. Where do plants get water from ?

.....

5. What does blood carry around the body ?

.....

6. What happens to food in our stomach ?

.....

https://t.me/G5Y5

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. It's raining. You ..... take an umbrella. [Giza – South Giza 2025]

a. should b. shouldn't c. have

2. They shouldn't ..... football in the street. It's dangerous.

a. plays b. playing c. play

3. Should we ..... more vegetables ?

a. eating b. eats c. eat

4. He ..... eat too many sweets. It's bad for his teeth.

a. should b. shouldn't c. have

## 4 Read, order and write.

A. 1. do - need - Why - we - water ?

.....

2. can - We - water - from - fruits - get. [Gharbiya – West Tanta 2025]

.....

B. 1. plants - How - do - water - get ?

.....

2. humans - Animals - need – and – water.

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"The importance of water"**

**Guiding elements :**

• living things • brain • hydrated

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5Y5

LESSONS 4&5

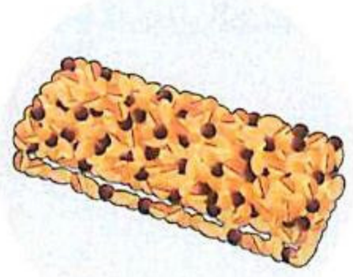
- Life skills
- Choosing a healthy snack

## I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق



cake كيك



cereal bar
قالب حلوى من الحبوب



chocolate brownie
كعكة الشيكولاتة



dried fruit bar
قالب من الفاكهة المجففة

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| serving | مقدار / حصة من الطعام | sodium | صوديوم | food packaging | تغليف المواد الغذائية |
| calories | سعرات حرارية | minerals | معادن | percent | نسبة مئوية |
| salt | ملح | amount | مقدار | better | أفضل |
| measure | يقيس | snack | وجبة خفيفة | nutrient | عنصر غذائى |
| enough | كافى | too much | كثير جدًا | natural | طبيعى |

## II Listening and Reading

**Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

We can look at food packaging to find out what is in our food. This helps us decide if it is healthy or unhealthy. These are some words you will find on a food package.

**serving** : how much you eat at one time
**calories** : the amount of energy in food
**sodium** : this is a mineral; we need enough of it, but we shouldn't have too much.
**enough** : the right amount
**too much** : more than we need
**percent** : When we see something like 50%, it means that this food gives us 50%, or half, of the amount of that vitamin or mineral that our bodies need every day.




| | |
|---|---|
| Serving size | 30 grams |
| Energy | 115 calories |
| Fat | 0.4 grams |
| Carbohydrate | 26 grams |
| Sugar | 2.4 grams |
| Sodium | 0.3 grams |
| Fiber | 0.6 grams |
| Protein | 2.1 grams |
| Vitamin C | 50% [percent] |
| Vitamin D | 50% [percent] |

يمكننا أن ننظر إلى غلاف المواد الغذائية لمعرفة ما هو موجود فى طعامنا. يساعدنا هذا فى تحديد ما إذا كان صحيًا أم غير صحى. هذه بعض الكلمات التى ستجدها على عبوة الطعام.
مقدار / حصة من الطعام : مقدار ما تأكله فى المرة الواحدة السعرات الحرارية : كمية الطاقة في الطعام
الصوديوم : هو معدن نحتاج ما يكفى منه، لكن لا ينبغى أن نتناول الكثير منه.
كاف : الكمية المناسبة الكثير : أكثر مما نحتاجه
النسبة المئوية : عندما نرى شئ ما مثلاً ٥٠٪ هذا يعنى أن هذا الطعام يعطينا ٥٠٪ أو نصف احتياجنا من كمية الفيتامينات أو المعادن التى تحتاجها أجسامنا كل يوم.

## Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

1. We measure energy in calories. نقيس الطاقة بمعرفة مقدار السعرات الحرارية.
2. We use grams to measure a nutrient. نستخدم الجرامات لقياس العنصر الغذائى.
3. If we know how much we need of a nutrient each day, we can look at what percent, or %, this food gives us.

لو أردنا أن نعرف كم كمية ما نحتاجه من العنصر الغذائى كل يوم، نستطيع أن ننظر إلى النسبة المئوية أو ٪ ، التى تعطينا إياها تلك الأطعمة.

# Choosing a healthy snack اختيار وجبة خفيفة صحية

## Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.



| | |
|---|---|
| Energy | 128 calories |
| Fat | 3 grams |
| Sugar | 8 grams |
| Salt | 0.2 grams |

cake



| | |
|---|---|
| Energy | 143 calories |
| Fat | 6 grams |
| Sugar | 11 grams |
| Salt | 0.1 grams |

cereal bar



| | |
|---|---|
| Energy | 310 calories |
| Fat | 21 grams |
| Sugar | 23 grams |
| Salt | 0.2 grams |

chocolate brownie



| | |
|---|---|
| Energy | 68 calories |
| Fat | 1.2 grams |
| Sugar | 7 grams |
| Salt | 0.1 grams |

dried fruit bar

**Tip** There is sugar in fruit, so it tastes sweet. Natural sugar in fruit is better for you than sugar in cakes and candies.

يوجد سكر فى الفاكهة، لذلك فهى حلوة المذاق. السكر الطبيعى فى الفاكهة مفيد لك أكثر من السكر الموجود فى الكعك والحلويات.


EL-MOASSER

El-Moasser Follow-up

كراسة المعاصر للتقييمات والواجب المنزلى

فى نهاية الكتاب



# General Exercises On Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sugar – tastes – amount – Sodium – healthy

We can look at food packaging to find out what is in our food. This helps us decide if it is [1] ..... or unhealthy. [2] ..... is a mineral that we need enough of it, but we shouldn't have too much. There is sugar in fruit, so it [3] ..... sweet. Natural sugar in fruit is better for us than [4] ..... in cakes and candies.

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

We measure energy in calories. We use grams to measure nutrients. If we know how much of a nutrient we need each day, we can look at how many grams this food gives us. In a cereal bar, there are 143 calories. There are 6 grams of fat and 11 grams of sugar. In a chocolate brownie, there are 310 calories. There are 21 grams of fat and 23 grams of sugar.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

1. In cereal bar, there are 143 ..... .

a. calories b. fat c. sugar

2. There are 21 ..... of fat in chocolate brownie.

a. salt b. calories c. grams

### B. Answer the following questions :

3. What do we use to measure energy ?

.....

4. How many calories are in a chocolate brownie ?

.....

5. How do we measure nutrients ?

.....

6. Which food has more sugar, the cereal bar or the chocolate brownie ?

.....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Children should ..... a healthy breakfast.

a. having b. have c. has

2. You ..... eat food with too much salt.

a. shouldn't b. should c. is

3. You ..... eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.

a. shouldn't b. should c. is

4. You should ..... sports every day.

a. do b. does c. doing

## 4 Read, order and write.

A. 1. in - calories - energy - measure - We. [Ismailia - Ismailia 2025]

.....

2. fiber - children - How much - do - need ?

.....

B. 1. snack - Which - the most - has - fat ?

.....

2. is - fruit - in - There - sugar.

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Your favorite snack"**

**Guiding elements :**

• grams • sugar • calories

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

LESSON 6

# Learn Sounds with Busy Bee !

## Phonics

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

☆ Listen and repeat. استمع ورردد.

**The letters "tion"** make the sound/ʃən/.



fiction خيال




fire station
محطة إطفاء




nutrition
التغذية



digestion
عملية الهضم



pollution
تلوث

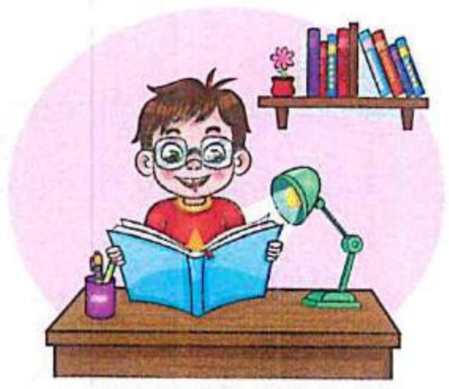
05 min **Pop Quiz on Phonics**

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

**1 Listen and write the missing sounds.**

1. fic _ _ _ _ | 2. fire sta _ _ _ _ | 3. pollu _ _ _ _ | 4. nutri _ _ _ _

**2 Look and complete.**



I have a new book. It isn't fic _ _ _ _ . It's about nutri _ _ _ _ and diges _ _ _ _ !

**3 Look, read and complete.**

fiction – Pollution – fire station




1. The firefighters are at the ..... .



2. ..... is bad for us.

LESSON 7

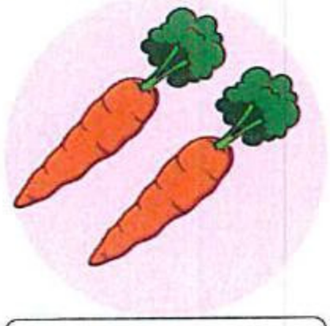
# Story : Lina Tries Something New



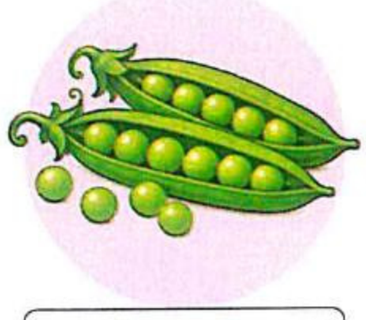
## I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

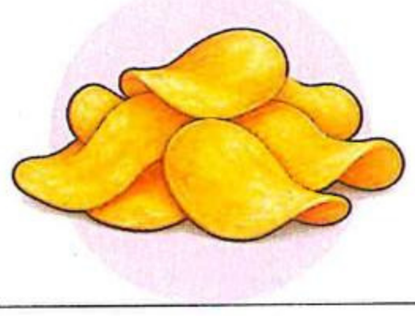
### Key vocabulary



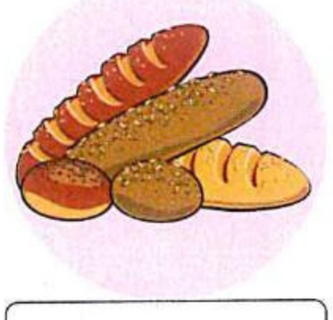
carrots جزر



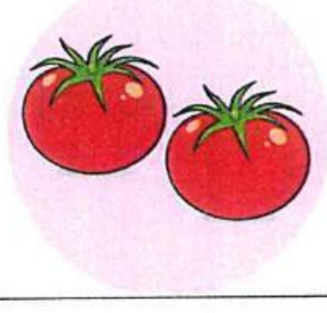
peas بازلاء



chips
رقائق البطاطس/ شيبسي



bread خبز



tomatoes طماطم

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| stick | عصا / عود | moon | قمر |
| special | مميز / خاص | garden | حديقة |
| strange | غريب | | |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Regular | | | Irregular | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
| smile | يبتسم | smiled | make | يعمل / يصنع | made |
| try | يحاول / يجرب | tried | eat | يأكل | ate |
| look at | ينظر إلى | looked at | give | يعطى | gave |

### Important Expressions and Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| • make lunch | يقوم بإعداد الغداء | • taste good | مذاقه لذيذ |

### Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Trying something new | like - peas | Lina didn't like carrots, peas or tomatoes. |
| | brother - vegetables | Lina's brother gave her vegetables with fun names. |
| | try – carrots | Lina tried the carrots and liked them. |
| | eat – peas | Lina ate peas and tomatoes. |
| | food - strange | Lina learnt that food can look strange and taste good. |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Pop Quiz on Reading

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. Carrots, ..... and tomatoes are different kinds of vegetables.
   a. chips  b. chocolate  c. peas

2. My mom ..... lunch every day.
   a. makes  b. looks  c. travels

3. I don't eat ..... . They are unhealthy.
   a. chips  b. carrots  c. bananas

# II Reading

**Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ

## "Lina Tries Something New"



Lina wasn't happy. "I don't like carrots, peas or tomatoes," she said. "I only want bread and chips!" One day, her brother Sami made lunch. "What are those?" Lina asked.

"They're orange moon sticks[1]," said Sami.

They were really carrots, but Lina didn't know that. She tried one. "I like it," she says. Then Sami gave her some peas. "These are green balls from a special[2] garden," he said. Lina ate one pea, then another. "They're very nice!" she said.

Finally, Sami gave her a tomato. "This is a red sun fruit," said Sami.

Lina looked at it and ate it.

"It's good!" she said. Later, Mom asked, "What did you eat today?" Lina smiled. "I ate carrots, peas, and a tomato!" Lina learnt that food can look strange[3] and taste good[4]!

[1] عصا / عصى
[2] مميز / خاص
[3] يبدو غريبًا
[4] مذاقه لذيذ



**Moral of the story**

Try new healthy foods.
جرب أطعمة صحية جديدة.

- لم تكن لينا سعيدة. قالت "أنا لا أحب الجزر أو البازلاء أو الطماطم. أريد فقط الخبز ورقائق البطاطس"! فى أحد الأيام، أعد أخوها سامى وجبة الغداء. سألت لينا. "ما هذا؟" أجاب سامى: "إنها أعود القمر البرتقالية"، كانت فى الحقيقة جزرًا، لكن لينا لم تكن تعرف ذلك. تذوقت قطعة وقالت: "أعجبتنى". ثم أعطاها سامى بعض البازلاء. وقال "هذه كرات خضراء من حديقة خاصة"، أكلت لينا حبة ثم أخرى. وقالت "إنها لذيذة جدًا!" وأخيرًا أعطاها سامى ثمرة طماطم. وقال: "هذه فاكهة شمسية حمراء"، نظرت إليها لينا ثم أكلتها. وقالت: "إنها شهية!" لاحقًا سألتها أمها: "ماذا أكلت اليوم؟" ابتسمت لينا وقالت "أكلت الجزر والبازلاء والطماطم!" وهكذا تعملت لينا أن الطعام قد يبدو غريبًا لكنه يكون لذيذًا أيضًا.

# General Exercises On Lesson 7

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى **نهاية الكتاب**

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. diges _ _ _ _ | 2. fic _ _ _ _ | 3. nutri _ _ _ _ | 4. fire sta _ _ _ _

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

strange - tried - new - chips - tomato

Lina wasn't happy because she didn't like carrots, peas, or tomatoes. She only wanted bread and [1] ..... . One day, her brother Sami made lunch. He gave her orange moon sticks. They were really carrots. Lina [2] ..... one and liked it. Then she ate green balls from a special garden. They were peas. Finally, she ate a red sun fruit. It was a [3] ..... . Later, Mom asked about her lunch. Lina smilled because she ate carrots, peas, and a tomato. She learnt that food can look [4] ..... and taste good.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. We should ..... more careful when crossing the street.
   a. be  b. being  c. been

2. He should ..... to the doctor if he's feeling sick.
   a. go  b. goes  c. going

3. We ..... drive too fast in bad weather.
   a. should  b. shouldn't  c. must

4. You should always ..... a seatbelt in the car.
   a. wearing  b. wears  c. wear

## 4 Read, order and write.

1. Lina - What - eat - does - usually ?

   .....

2. new - Lina - something - tries.

   .....

https://t.me/G5 Y5

LESSONS 8&9

- Listening and reading
- CLIL : Math



## I Vocabulary




| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| teaspoon | ملعقة صغيرة | fruit yogurt | زبادى بالفواكه | kind | نوع |
| last | يستمر | raisins | زبيب | sugar | سكر |
| quickly | بسرعة | over a long time | على المدى البعيد | highest | الأعلى / الأكثر |
| affect | يؤثر على | easy | سهل | damage | يتلف |
| lowest | الأقل | confused | مرتبك | work well | يعمل جيدًا |
| lose | يخسر / يفقد | anxious | متوتر | bad for | ضار لـ |
| plain yogurt | زبادى سادة | know | يعرف | | |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Sugar | much - teeth | Eating too much sugar damages our teeth. |
| | sugar - energy | Sugar gives us energy, but it isn't a good kind. |
| | carbohydrates | Energy from carbohydrates lasts a long time. |
| | brain - confused | Too much sugar can make our brain confused. |
| | bad - mood | Sugar can be bad for our mood. |

https://t.me/GbY5




## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary




- Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. ..... is bad for our teeth.
   a. Chicken  b. Meat  c. Sugar
2. Add a ..... of sugar to my cup of tea.
   a. can  b. teaspoon  c. jar
3. He became ..... when he couldn't find his book.
   a. confused  b. careful  c. kind
4. He feels ..... when he has a problem.
   a. anxious  b. happy  c. fresh

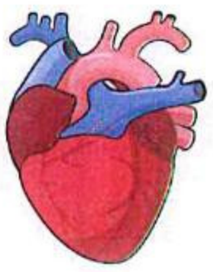
## II Listening and Reading

**Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

### Sugar




What is your favorite snack ? There are lots of things we can choose from. Sometimes it's easy to eat a cookie or a candy, but they have a lot of sugar in them. Why is eating sugar bad for us ? Sugar is bad for our teeth. Eating too much sugar damages our teeth.



Sugar is bad for our heart, too. It stops our arteries working well. Over a long time, this can damage our heart.



Sugar gives us energy, but it isn't a good kind. When we get energy from carbohydrates, that energy lasts a long time. When we get energy from sugar, we lose it quickly. Then our body wants more sugar.



Sugar can affect our brains. If we have too much sugar, our brain gets a lot of energy quickly. This can make our brain confused. We can feel worried and anxious. Sugar can be bad for our mood.

**Look, read and complete.** انظر، اقرأ واكمل.

Children shouldn't have more than 25 grams of sugar a day. 25 grams is about six teaspoons. One teaspoon has four grams of sugar.



| Snack | Sugar | |
|---|---|---|
| | grams | teaspoons |
| banana | 12 | 3 |
| plain yogurt | ..... | 1 |
| cereal bar | 12 | ..... |

**Tip!**

There is natural sugar in fruit. This is better than sugar cakes and candies.

يوجد سكر طبيعى فى الفاكهة. هذا أفضل من الكعك المحلى بالسكر والحلويات.



"السكر"

- ما هى وجبتك الخفيفة المفضلة ؟ هناك الكثير من الأشياء التى يمكننا الاختيار من بينها. فى بعض الأحيان يكون من السهل أن تأكل قطعة من كعكة محلاة أو من الحلوى، ولكنها تحتوى على الكثير من السكر. لماذا تناول السكر مضر بالنسبة لنا ؟
- السكر مضر لأسناننا. تناول الكثير من السكر يدمر أسناننا. - السكر مضر لقلبنا أيضًا. إنه يوقف الشرايين عن العمل بشكل جيد. مع مرور الوقت، يمكن لهذا أن يدمر قلبنا.
- يمنحنا السكر الطاقة، لكنها ليست من النوع الجيد. عندما نحصل على الطاقة من الكربوهيدرات، فإن هذه الطاقة تستمر لفترة طويلة. عندما نحصل على الطاقة من السكر، نفقدها بسرعة. بعد ذلك يريد جسمنا المزيد من السكر.
- يمكن أن يؤثر السكر على أجهزة المخ لدينا. إذا تناولنا الكثير من السكر، فإن أجهزة المخ لدينا تحصل على الكثير من الطاقة بسرعة. هذا يمكن أن يجعل المخ مرتبك. وهذا يسبب لنا الشعور بالقلق والتوتر. السكر يمكن أن يكون ضارًا لحالتنا المزاجية.
- لا يجب على الأطفال تناول أكثر من ٢٥ جرام من السكر يوميًا. ٢٥ جرام تعنى حوالى ٦ ملاعق صغيرة. ملعقة صغيرة تحتوى على ٤ جرامات من السكر.

# General Exercises On Lessons 8 & 9

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. pollu _ _ _ _ | 2. nutri _ _ _ _ | 3. fic _ _ _ _ | 4. diges _ _ _ _

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sugar – damage – teeth – natural – cakes

Cookies and candies have a lot of sugar in them. Sugar is bad for our [1] ..... . Children shouldn't have more than 25 grams of [2] ..... a day. There is [3] ..... sugar in fruit. This is better than sugar in [4] ..... and candies.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Eating sugar is bad for us. Sugar is bad for our teeth. Eating too much sugar damages our teeth. Sugar is bad for our heart, too. It stops our arteries from working well. Over a long time, this can damage our heart. Sugar gives us energy, but it isn't a good kind. When we get energy from sugar, we lose it quickly. Then our body wants more sugar. Sugar also can affect our brains. If we have too much sugar, our brains get a lot of energy quickly.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :**

1. ..... is bad for our teeth.
   a. Milk  b. Water  c. Sugar
2. Sugar can ..... our brains.
   a. affect  b. feel  c. listen

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. What does eating too much sugar do to our teeth ?

.....

4. How does sugar affect our heart ?

.....

5. What happens to our brain if we have much sugar ?

.....

6. What happens after we get energy from sugar ?

.....

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. We ..... go to bed late.

a. should  b. shouldn't  c. isn't

2. They should ..... their hands before eating.

a. wash  b. washes  c. washing

3. We shouldn't ..... too much sugar.

a. eating  b. eat  c. ate

4. You should ..... on time for class.

a. arrives  b. arrive  c. arriving

## 5 Read, order and write.

A. 1. favorite - is - your - What - snack ?

.....

2. bad - is - Sugar - our - heart - for.

.....

B. 1. can be - bad - Sugar - for - our mood.

.....

2. is – sugar - Why - for us – eating – bad ?

.....

## 6 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Sugar"**

**Guiding elements :**

• teeth  • energy  • lose

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Skills 1 How to write about certain topics



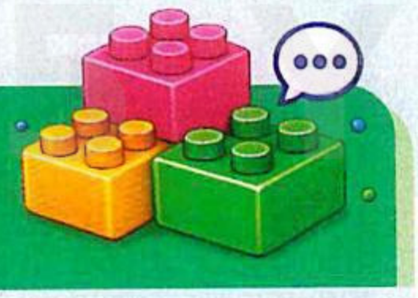

كيفية كتابة الفقرات الإنشائية ← اتباع الخطوات التالية يساعدك على تكوين فقرة إنشائية :

١. تكوين حصيلة من المفردات اللغوية. ٢. إتقان تكوين الجمل. ٣. بعد اتباع الخطوات السابقة يمكنك كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

| | Step 1 Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية: | Step 2 Sentences<br>متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية: | Step 3 Writing<br>متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية أكتب فقرة إنشائية: |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nutrients in food | Write the meaning :<br>..... الكربوهيدرات<br>..... طاقة<br>..... بروتين<br>..... منتجات ألبان<br>..... فيتامينات | Reorder the words :<br>1. energy - Carbohydrates - us - give.<br>.....<br>2. protein - grow - We - us - to help - need.<br>.....<br>3. foods - us - Dairy - vitamins - give.<br>.....<br>4. are - vitamins - There - in fruit - of - lots.<br>..... | Write a paragraph on :<br>**"Nutrients in food"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| Water | ..... يحتاج<br>..... كائنات حية<br>..... بشر<br>..... تربة<br>..... نباتات | 5. living - water - All - need - things.<br>.....<br>6. and - water - Animals - drink - humans.<br>.....<br>7. water - Plants - the - from - get - soil.<br>..... | Write a paragraph on :<br>**"Water"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| Sugar | ..... سكر<br>..... ضار لـ<br>..... يؤثر على<br>..... دماغ / مخ<br>..... حالة مزاجية | 8. too - damages - Eating - our - sugar - much - teeth.<br>.....<br>9. gives - energy - Sugar - us.<br>.....<br>10. can - mood - our - Sugar - for - bad - be.<br>.....<br>11. affect - Sugar - brain - can - our.<br>..... | Write a paragraph on :<br>**"Sugar"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |

https://t.me/GS_Y3

# 2 Sentence Building



الهدف من هذا الجزء تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

## ١ الجملة الخبريـة

**1 Subject Detective**

مين صاحب الفعل؟

**ابحث عن الفاعل**

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. Younis
   فاعل الجملة الأولى
2. I
   فاعل الجملة الثانية



الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

1. lives - a hot - Younis - country - in.
2. have - always - I - fruit - breakfast - at.
3. energy - us - Carbohydrates - give.
4. can - Sugar - our - affect - brains.

| | 1 فاعـل | 2 فعـل | 3 باقـى الجملـة. |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | | lives | |
| 2. | I | | |
| 3. | | | |
| 4. | | | |

**2 Verb Hunter**

بيعمل إيه؟

**ابحث عن الفعل**

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. give
   فعل الجملة الثالثة
2. can affect
   فعل الجملة الرابعة



الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

## ٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

**3 Helper Team**

مين بيساعدنا؟

**الأفعال المساعدة**

**Do** تستخدم مع:
I, you, we, they

**Does / Is** تستخدم مع:
he, she, it



الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

1. need - do - Why - vitamins - we ?
2. does - What - Lina - eat - usually ?
3. children - How much fiber - need - do - a day ?
4. snack - What - your - is - favorite ?

| | 1 كلمة استفهام | 2 فعل مساعد | 3 فاعـل | 4 فعل | 5 باقى السؤال ؟ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Why | | | | |
| 2. | | does | | | |
| 3. | | | | | |
| 4. | | | | | |

**4 The Wh-Team**

نسأل ازاى؟

**أدوات الاستفهام**

- Why [لماذا]: للسؤال عن السبب.
- What [ما / ماذا]: للسؤال عن شيئ.



أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائمًا في بداية السؤال.

# 3 Important Topics



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢١ جملة].

## 1 The importance of nutrients

It is important to get a balance of the right kinds of food[1]. Our bodies need lots of different nutrients to work well[2]. We need protein to make our bodies strong[3]. We need some fats to give us energy[4].

## 2 Water

All living things need water[5]. Animals and humans drink water[6]. Plants get water from the soil in their roots[7]. Children should drink 1.5 liters of water every day[8]. We should drink more water in hot weather[9].

## 3 Protein

Protein is very important for our bodies[10]. We need protein to help us grow[11]. It makes our bodies strong[12]. There is protein in meat, fish, and eggs[13].

## 4 Sugar

Sugar is bad for our teeth[14]. Eating too much sugar damages our teeth[15]. Sugar is bad for our heart, too[16]. Sugar also can affect our brains[17].

## 5 Dairy foods

Dairy foods such as milk and cheese are important for us[18]. Dairy foods give us calcium[19]. Calcium is good for our bones[20]. It is also good for our heart and muscles[21].

### From Sentences to Topics

- A Start with a capital letter.
- Use the correct tense.
- Put the words in the correct order.
- End with a full stop.





# Review through the Exam on Unit 3

**مراجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات السابقة.**

## 25 Vocabulary

أهم 25 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| balance | توازن | hydrated | مشبع بالماء | lose | يخسر / يفقد |
| butter | زبدة | headache | صداع | confused | مرتبك |
| olive oil | زيت زيتون | joints | مفاصل | damage | يتلف |
| cereal | طعام من الحبوب | temperature | درجة الحرارة | pasta | مكرونة |
| vegetables | خضروات | pure | نقى | fruit | فاكهة |
| sugar | سكر | living things | كائنات حية | fiber | الياف |
| cheese | جبن | calories | سعرات حرارية | plain yogurt | زبادى سادة |
| rice | أرز | dairy | منتجات البان | | |
| protein | بروتين | food packaging | تغليف المواد الغذائية | | |

## 10 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعًا فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. It's important to get a balance[1] of the right kinds of food.
2. There's protein[2] in meat, fish, and eggs.
3. Milk, cheese, and yogurt are dairy[3] foods.
4. Olive oil and butter[4] are healthy fats.
5. When you are hydrated[5] , it means you are getting enough water.
6. All living things[6] need water.
7. We measure energy in calories[7].
8. Sugar[8] is bad for our teeth.
9. When we get energy from sugar, we lose[9] it quickly.
10. We can look at food packaging[10] to find out what is in our food.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| [1] كتاب الطالب | [2] القاهرة - الزيتون | [3] البحيرة - الدلنجات | [4] الجيزة - العجوزة | [5] كتاب الطالب |
| [6] دمياط - عزبة البرج | [7] المنوفية - تلا | [8] كتاب الطالب | [9] دمياط - الروضة | [10] كتاب التدريبات |

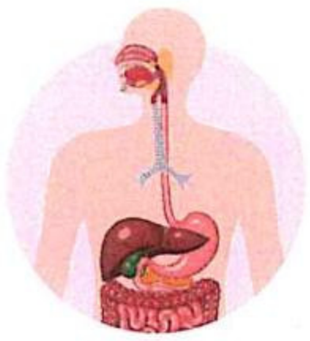
## Phonics through the Exam

الصوتيات الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان].

### tion /ʃən/



nutrition


digestion



fire station


pollution


fiction

## Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

### Giving advice using "should & shouldn't"

#### ① Affirmative statements

**Subject** الفاعل **+ should + inf.** مصدر الفعل ..... .

#### ② Negative statements

**Subject** الفاعل **+ shouldn't + inf.** مصدر الفعل ..... .

## Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعًا
فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان

1. She should go to bed early.
2. You should study hard for the exam.
3. Hana shouldn't eat candies every day.
4. We should eat healthy food.
5. You shouldn't watch TV all day.
6. Should he drink water when he exercises ?
7. We shouldn't make noise in class.
8. Should he sleep for 4 hours tonight ?
9. We shouldn't make fun of our friends.
10. Students should listen to their teacher.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| [1] القاهرة - المرج | [2] الفيوم - ابشواى | [3] كتاب الطالب | [4] المنوفية - منوف | [5] اسيوط - اسيوط |
| [6] كتاب الطالب | [7] اسوان - ادفو | [8] كتاب التدريبات | [9] القاهرة - المعادى | [10] كفر الشيخ - قلين |

# Sample Test 5

**On Unit 3**



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات
**فى نهاية الكتاب**

**اختبار المعاصر**

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. diges _ _ _ _ | 2. nutri _ _ _ _ | 3. fire sta _ _ _ _ | 4. fic _ _ _ _

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

nutrients – fruit – healthy – eat – bad

It's important to get a balance of the right kinds of food. Our bodies need lots of different [1] ..... , including vitamins and minerals, to work well and be [2] ..... . We should try to [3] ..... 5 - 7 pieces of fruit and vegetables a day. There are lots of vitamins in [4] ..... , such as Vitamin C.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

We can choose our snack from lots of different things. Sometimes it's easy to eat a cookie or a candy, but they have a lot of sugar in them. Sugar is bad for our teeth. Sugar is bad for our heart, too. We can eat fruits or vegetables as snacks to be healthy and fit.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :**

1. Cookies and candies are ..... .

a. snakes　　b. snacks　　c. meals

2. Sugar is bad for our ..... .

a. muscle　　b. bones　　c. heart

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. What is bad for our teeth ?

.....

4. Why is it bad to eat a cookie or a candy as a snack ?

.....

5. What can we eat as a healthy snack ?

.....

6. Which snacks have a lot of sugar ?

.....

[Sharqia - Sharqia 2025]

## 4 The Reader

### A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares had an X-ray ● | ☐ a. broken. |
| 2. Fares's leg was ● | ☐ b. at the hospital. |

### B. Read and write [YES] or [NO] :

1. Fares will have to wear a cast for about six weeks. [.....]
2. Fares's mom and dad were worried. [.....]

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. We ..... do a lot of exercise.
   a. should  b. are  c. were
2. Ali shouldn't ..... too much sugar.
   a. eats  b. ate  c. eat
3. Should I eat a lot of candy ? – No, you ..... .
   a. should  b. shouldn't  c. are
4. I should ..... my room every day.
   a. cleaning  b. cleans  c. clean

## 6 Read, order and write.

1. too much - sugar - shouldn't - We - eat.

.....

2. does – eat - What - usually - Lina ?

.....

## 7 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Dairy foods"**

**Guiding elements :**

• milk  • calcium  • bones

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# Sample Test 6

**On Unit 3**



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات
**فى نهاية الكتاب**

اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. nutri _ _ _ _ | 2. diges _ _ _ _ | 3. pollu _ _ _ _ | 4. fic _ _ _ _

[Kafr El Sheikh / Beheira - Abu El Matamir / Kom Hamada 2026]

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

much – happy – bad – stops – heart

Eating a lot of sugar is bad for us. Sugar is [1] ..... for our teeth. Eating too [2] ..... sugar damages our teeth. Sugar is bad for our [3] ..... , too. It [4] ..... our arteries from working well as they should.

[Dakahlia - West Mansoura 2025]

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

All living things need water. Plants get water from the soil in their roots. Children should drink about 1.5 liters of water every day. Most of this should be pure water, but we can also get water from other drinks such as milk and fruit juices, or from fruits and vegetables. We should drink more water in hot weather.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :**

1. We should drink water in ..... weather.
   a. hot  b. cold  c. warm

2. We can get water from fruits and ..... .
   a. sweets  b. salt  c. vegetables

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. What do all living things need ?

.....

4. How do plants get water ?

.....

5. What other drinks can provide water ?

.....

6. How much water should children drink every day ?

.....

[Giza - Dokki 2026]

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## 4 The Reader

### A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares apologized • | ☐ a. an accident. |
| 2. Fares had • | ☐ b. to his family. |

[Aswan - Nasr 2025]

### B. Read and write T [True] or F [False] :

1. Fares's hand was broken. [Qalyubia – Obour 2025] ☐
2. Fares was happy when he had to wear a cast. [Menufia - Shebin El-Kom 2025] ☐

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. You should ..... healthy food. [Gharbia - West Tanta 2025]
   a. eat b. ate c. eating
2. They should ..... well every day. [Cairo – Ain Shams 2025]
   a. sleep b. sleeps c. slept
3. You ..... have a healthy diet. [Cairo – Ain Shams 2025]
   a. should b. shouldn't c. can't
4. You should ..... enough water. [Menufia – Sers El Lyan 2025]
   a. drinks b. drink c. drinking

## 6 Read, order and write.

1. living – water – things - All – need to – drink. [Suez - North 2026]

.....

2. nutrients – different – lots of – Our – need – bodies. [Fayoum 2025]

.....

## 7 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Food"**

**Guiding elements :**

• healthy • important • nutrients

.....

.....

.....

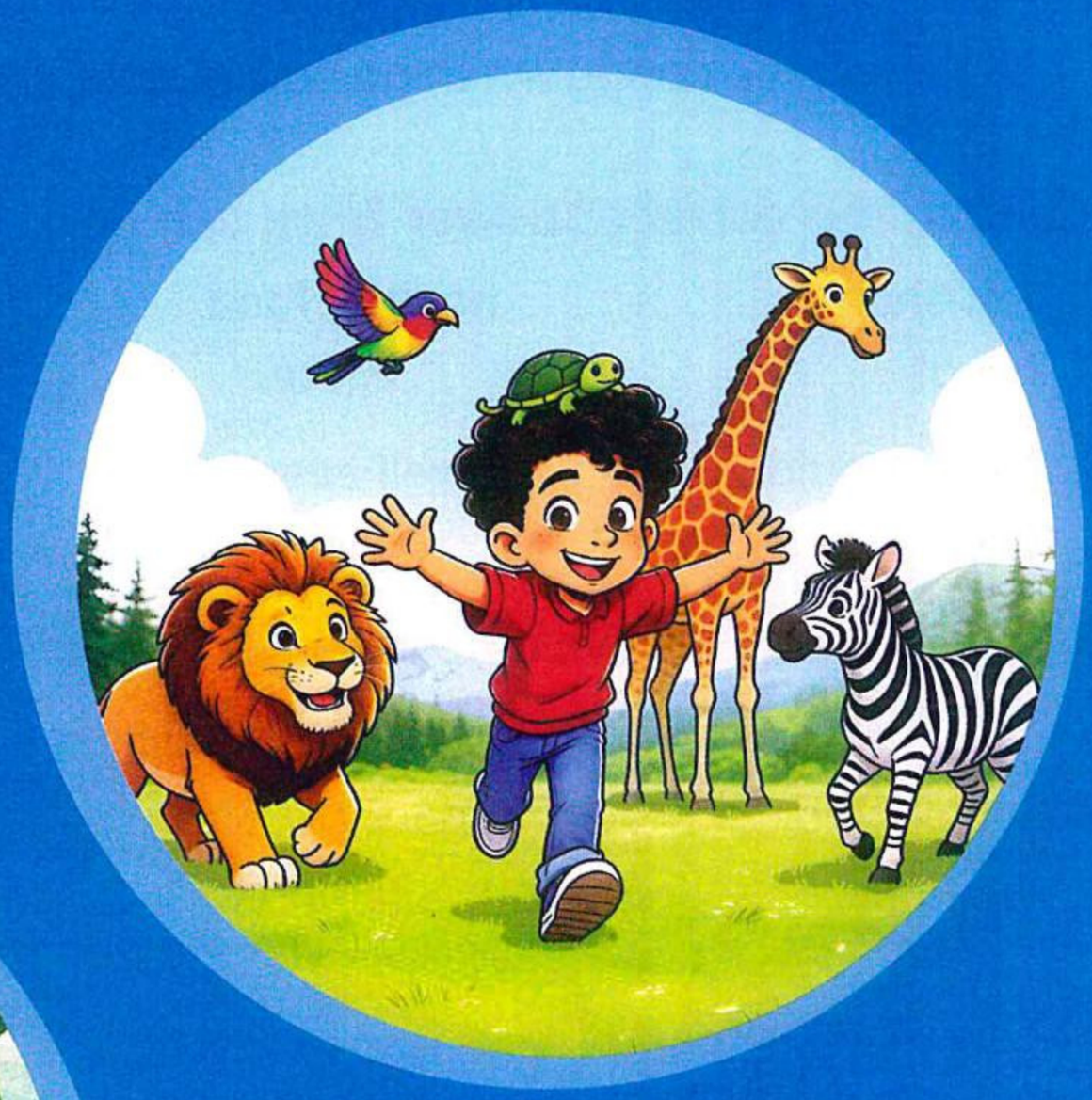
.....

[Beheira – Abu El-Matamir 2025]

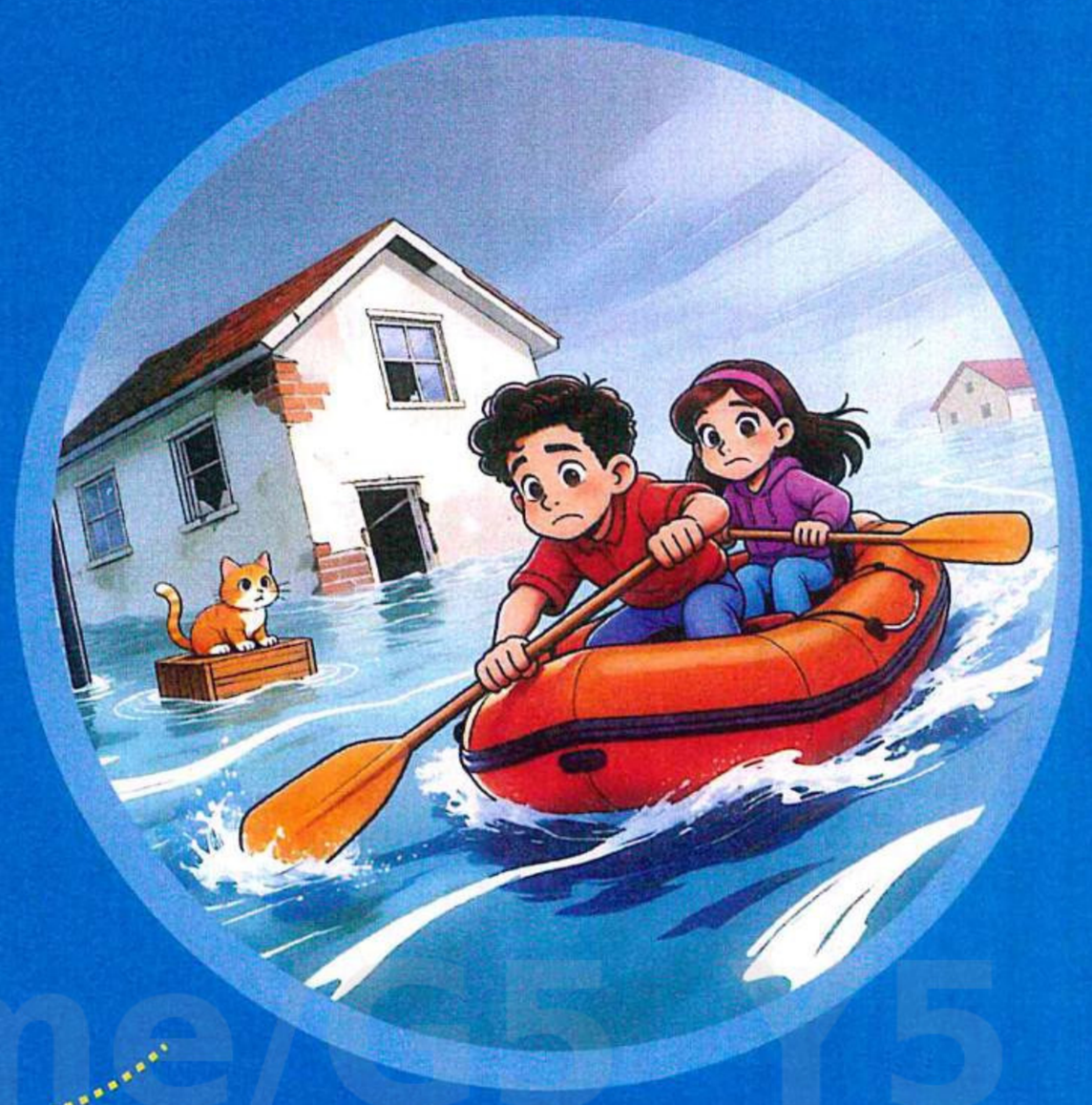
THEME 2

# The world around me

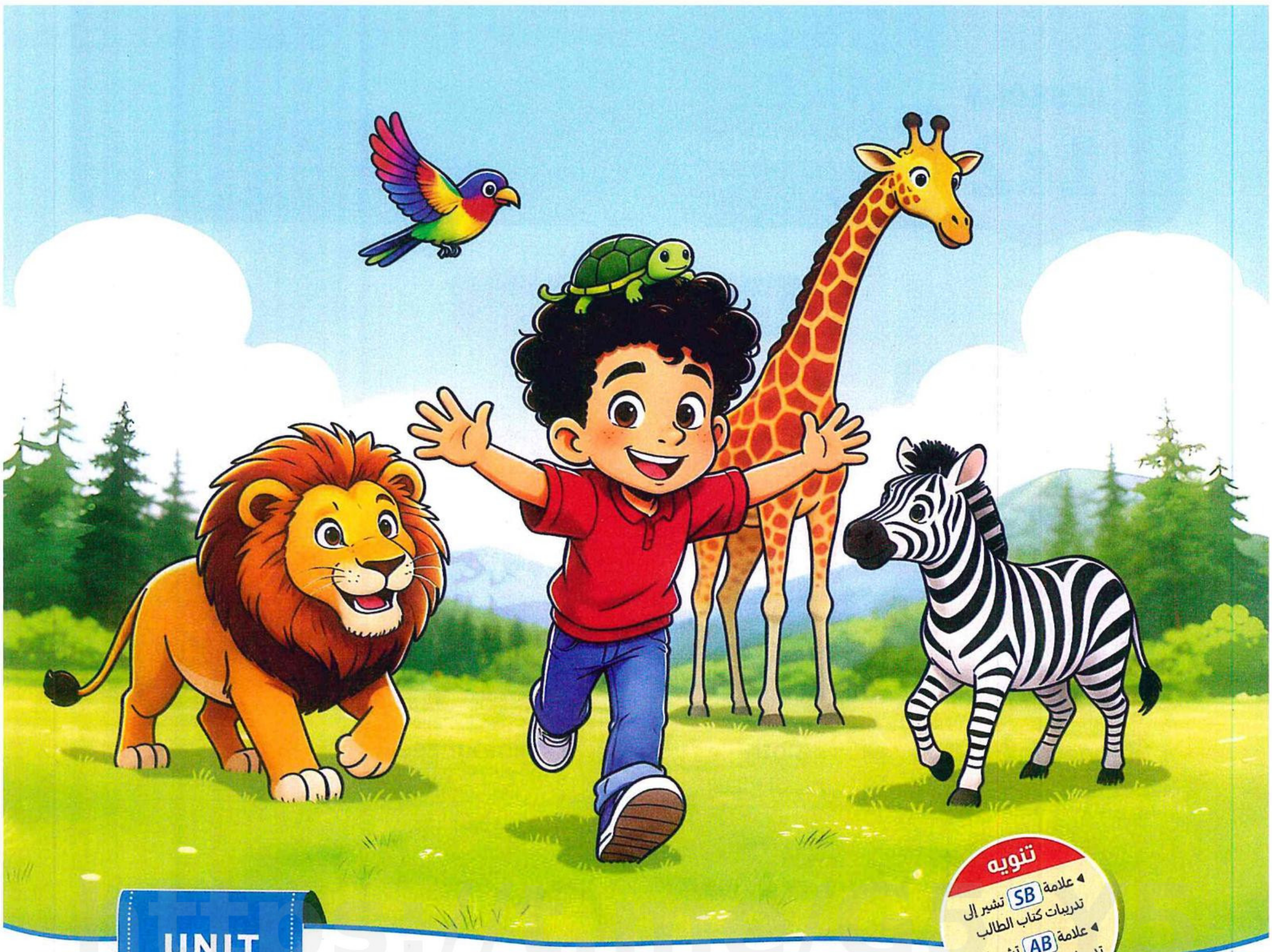
## (Taking care of our world)







https://t.me/c...15



تنويه
- علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
- علامة AB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التدريبات

UNIT 4

# In the wild

## فى البرية

### Unit Four Objectives

**Vocabulary**
- cheetah, chimpanzee, cobra, chase, desert, grassland, wetland

- الفهد الصياد، الشمبانزى، الكوبرا، يطارد، الصحراء، مرعى، أرض رطبة

**Language**
- It might live in Africa.
- It might not eat grass.

- قد يعيش فى أفريقيا.
- قد لا يأكل العشب.

**Reading and stories**
- A text about animal behavior.
- Story:
- The Monkey and the Crocodile.
- Wael protects Animal Habitats.

- نص عن سلوك الحيوان.
- القرد والتمساح
- يحمى وائل مواطن الحيوانات.

**Phonics**
- mp → swamp
- nt → tent
- nd → grassland

LESSONS 1&2

# Vocabulary

## I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

### Key vocabulary

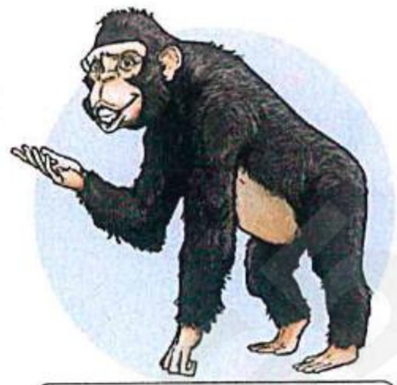
#### Animals حيوانات



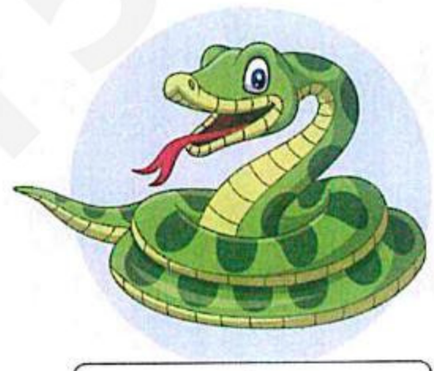
fennec fox
ثعلب الفنك



sloth
حيوان الكسلان



chimpanzee
الشمبانزى



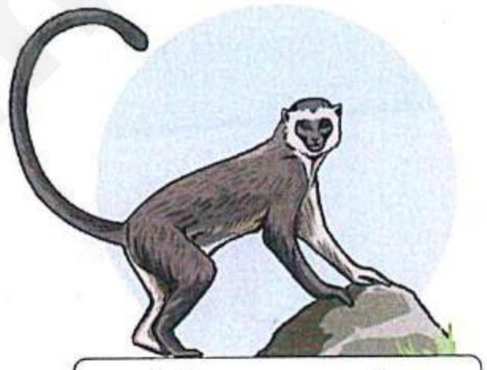
cobra
ثعبان الكوبرا



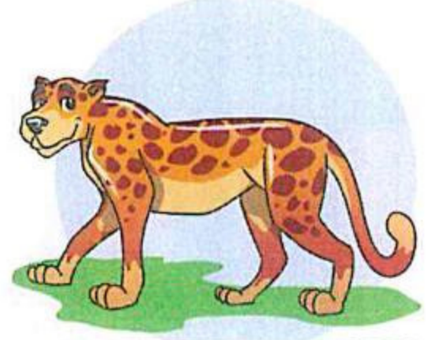
macaw
ببغاء أمريكى ضخم



sea lion
أسد البحر



spider monkey
قرد العنكبوت



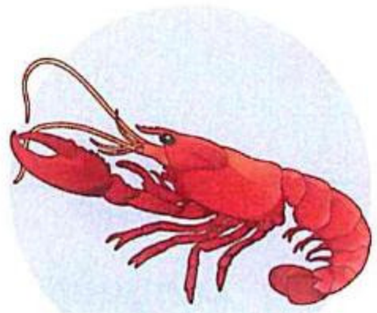
cheetah
الفهد الصياد



rabbit
أرنب



owl بومة



crayfish
جراد البحر [سلطعون]



penguin
بطريق

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| webcam | كاميرا ويب | rocks | صخور |
| slowly | ببطء | wildlife park | حديقة الحياة البرية |
| hole | فتحة | burrow | جُحر |
| nest | عُش | difficult | صعب |
| safely | بأمان | leaves | أوراق شجر |
| warm | دافئ | shelter | مأوى |
| stick | عصا | colony | مستعمرة |
| behavior | سلوك | habitat | موطن - بيئة |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| hunt | يصطاد | hunted |
| gather | يتجمع | gathered |
| visit | يزور | visited |
| behave | يتصرف | behaved |

**Irregular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| dig | يحفر | dug |
| hide | يختبئ | hid |
| build | يبنى | built |
| think | يعتقد | thought |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| • That's a great idea ! | إنها فكرة رائعة ! | • in the day time | فى وقت النهار |
| • close to | قريبة من | • come out | يخرج |
| • in the wild | فى البرية | | |

تدريب تلقائى
يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. A ..... is a very colorful bird.
   a. fennec fox  b. macaw  c. chimpanzee
2. Foxes and rabbits dig ..... in the ground. [التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / الاسكندرية - شرق الاسكندرية]
   a. rocks  b. nests  c. burrows
3. Crayfish live in ..... .
   a. trees  b. rivers  c. deserts
4. Lions and cheetahs ..... other animals to eat.
   a. hunt  b. build  c. behave

## II Listening and Reading

▶ **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.




**Remember : V. to be in the past**

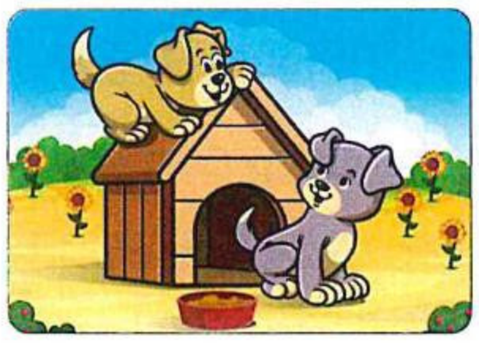
I / He / She / It ⟶ was (I was happy.)  You / We / They ⟶ were (We were at the park.)

▶ **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

## Animal behavior

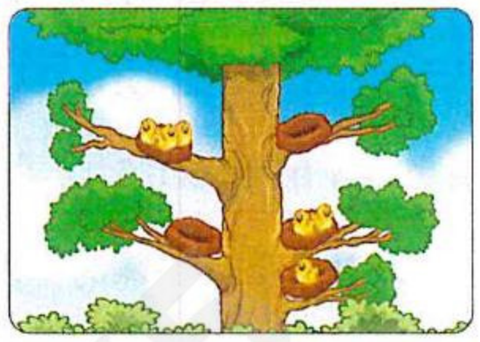
When we visit a **wildlife park**[1], we can learn how animals behave by watching what they do. In wildlife parks, animals live in places which are close to their **natural habitat**[2]. But how do animals behave in the wild ?

**1** Animals live in habitats where they can get food and water, and live safely.

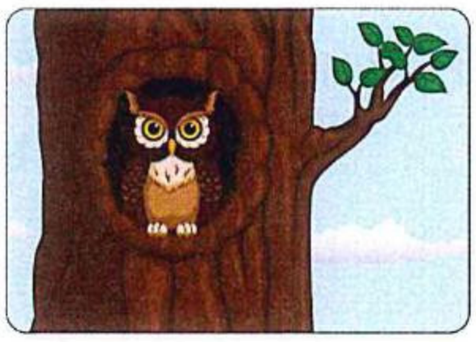


Animals take **shelter**[3] so they can stay warm, be safe from other animals, and protect their families.

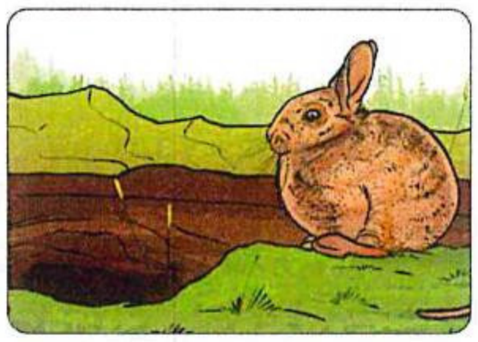
**2** Lots of birds build **nests**[4] in trees. They use grass,sticks, and leaves.



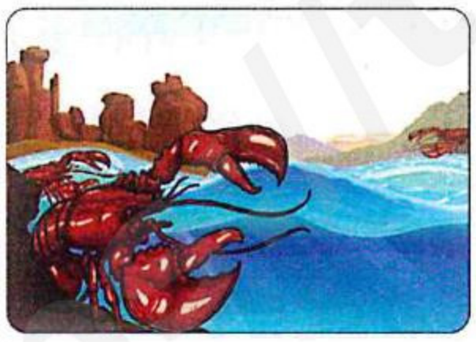
**3** Other birds such as owls live in **holes**[5] in trees. They don't make holes. They find them.



**4** Foxes and rabbits dig **burrows**[6] in the ground. They can take shelter here. They dig in earth or sand.



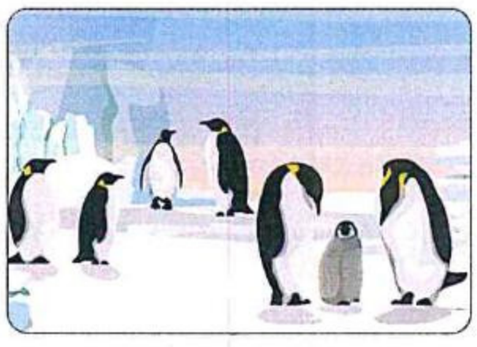
**5** Crayfish live in rivers. They **hide**[7] under rocks in the day time and come out to find food at night.



**6** Lions and cheetahs **hunt**[8] other animals to eat. Sometimes it's difficult to get food.



**7** Penguins gather in a large group, called a **colony**[9], to keep warm. Thousands of penguins can live **together**[10]!



| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| [1] حديقة الحياة البرية | [2] بيئة طبيعية | [3] مأوى | [4] أعشاش | [5] فتحات |
| [6] جُحور | [7] يختبئ | [8] يصطاد | [9] مستعمرة | [10] معًا |

• عندما نزور حديقة الحياة البرية، يمكننا أن نتعلم سلوك الحيوانات من خلال مشاهدة ما تفعله. تعيش الحيوانات فى حدائق الحياة البرية فى أماكن تشبه بيئتها الطبيعية. لكن كيف تتصرف الحيوانات فى البرية ؟

١- تعيش الحيوانات فى مواطن حيث يمكنها الحصول على الطعام والماء والعيش بأمان فيها. فتلجأ الحيوانات للمأوى لذلك يمكن أن تبقى دافئة، تكون فى مأمن من الحيوانات الأخرى، وتحمى عائلاتها.

٢- تبنى كثير من الطيور أعشاش على الأشجار. يستخدمون الحشائش، العصى، و أوراق الأشجار. ٣- الطيور الأخرى مثل البوم يعيشون فى فتحات فى الأشجار. هم لا يصنعون الفتحات بل يجدوها.

٤- يحفر الثعالب والأرانب جحور فى الأرض. يمكنهم الاحتماء فيها. إنهم يحفرون فى الأرض أو الرمال. ٥- يعيش جراد البحر فى الأنهار. هم يختبئوا تحت الصخور فى النهار ويخرجون لإيجاد الطعام فى الليل.

٦- الأسود والفهود يصطادون الحيوانات الأخرى لتناولها. أحيانًا يكون من الصعب إيجاد الطعام.

٧- تتجمع البطاريق فى مجموعة كبيرة، تسمى مستعمرة، لتبقى دافئة. آلاف من البطاريق يمكنها العيش سويًا !

# General Exercises On Lessons 1 & 2

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**A.** safe – rivers – shelter – Animals – rocks

When we visit a wildlife park, we can learn how animals behave by watching what they do. [1] ..... live in habitats where they can get food and water, and live safely. Animals take [2] ..... so they can stay warm, be safe from other animals, and protect their families. Crayfish live in [3] ..... . They hide under [4] ..... in the day time and come out to find food at night.

**B.** hunt – penguins – night – gather – food

In wildlife parks, animals live in places which are close to their natural habitat. Lions and cheetahs [1] ..... other animals to eat. Sometimes it's difficult to get [2] ..... . Penguins [3] ..... in a large group, called a colony, to keep warm. Thousands of [4] ..... can live together.

[Alexandria - Borg El-Arab 2025]

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Lots of birds build nests in trees. They use grass, sticks and leaves. Other birds such as owls live in holes in trees. They don't make holes. They find them. Foxes and rabbits dig burrows in the ground. They can take shelter in them. They dig in earth or sand.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. Birds use grass and ..... to build nests.
   a. stones  b. sticks  c. water
2. ..... find holes in trees.
   a. Foxes  b. Owls  c. Rabbits

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where do rabbits dig their burrows ?

   .....

4. What do lots of birds build in trees ?

   .....

5. Why do rabbits need burrows ?

   .....

6. Where do foxes live ?

   .....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## 3 Read, order and write.

A. 1. hide - under - Crayfish - rocks.

.....

2. fox - Was - it - a fennec ?

.....

B. 1. chimpanzees - loved - the - I - seeing. [Sharkia - East Sharkia 2025]

.....

2. moves - slowly - A sloth - very.

.....

## 4 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Animal behavior"**

**Guiding elements :**

- behave
- birds
- warm

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

https://t.me/G5Y5

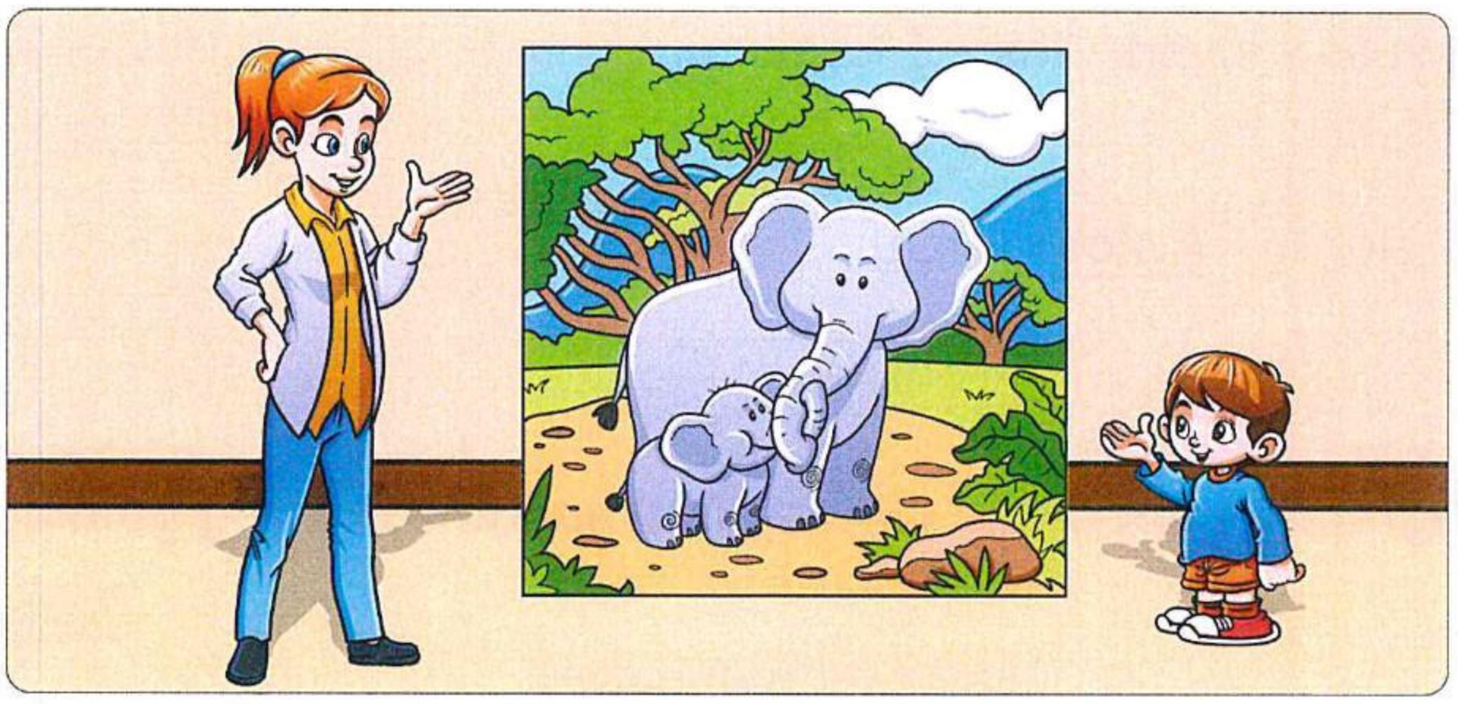
LESSON 3

# Language use

## I Reading

▶ **Look, listen and read.** انظر، استمع واقرأ.

قاموس المعاصر الناطق



[1] عرض الحيوانات
[2] حشائش
[3] العالم
[4] الحيتان الزرقاء
[5] صحيح
[6] غير صحيح

Welcome to the **Animal Show**[1]! Look! What do you know about this animal ? What do elephants eat ?

مرحبًا بكم فى عرض الحيوانات ! انظر ! ماذا تعرف عن هذا الحيوان ؟ ماذا تأكل الأفيال ؟

Hmm. They're very big, but I don't think they eat meat. I think they might eat **grass**[2].

همم! حجمهم كبير جدًا، لكن لا أعتقد أنهم يأكلون اللحوم. أعتقد أنهم ربما يأكلون الحشائش.

Correct! OK, next. Is the elephant the biggest animal in the **world**[3]?

صحيح! حسنًا، التالى. هل الفيل هو أكبر حيوان فى العالم ؟

Er, no. I don't think it is. I think **blue whales**[4] might be the biggest animals in the world.

لا. لا أعتقد أنه هو. أعتقد أن الحيتان الزرقاء ربما تكون أكبر الحيوانات فى العالم.

**Correct**[5] again. Last question. Elephants can swim, true or false ?

صحيح مرة أخرى. السؤال الأخير. يمكن للأفيال أن تسبح، صواب أم خطأ ؟

Well, they don't live near the sea, so I think they might not be able to swim.

حسنًا، إنهم لا يعيشون بالقرب من البحر، لذلك أعتقد أنهم لا يستطيعون السباحة.

That's **incorrect**[6]- elephants can swim in rivers very well!

هذا غير صحيح - يمكن للفيلة السباحة فى الأنهار بشكل جيد جدًا!

# II Language

- **We use "might" when we are "not sure" about something.**

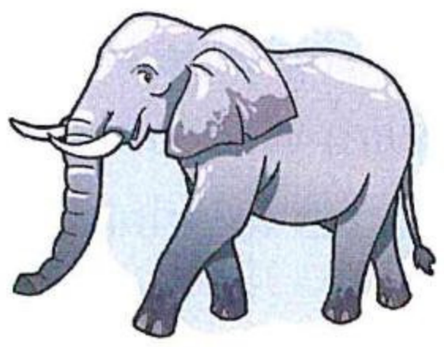
- نستخدم **might** بمعنى «ربما» عند عدم التأكد من شـيء ما.

## 1 Affirmative statements

١. الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

| Subj. الفاعل | + | might | + | inf. مصدر الفعل | + | باقى الجملة |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| It | | might | | eat | | grass. |

- It might live in Africa.

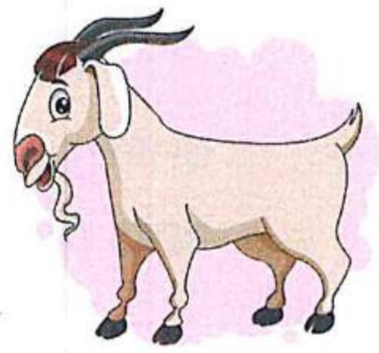


## 2 Negative statements

٢. الجمل الخبرية المنفية

| Subj. الفاعل | + | might not | + | inf. مصدر الفعل | + | باقى الجملة |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| It | | might not | | climb | | trees. |

- I think it might not be able to swim.



## Pop Quiz on Language

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. A sloth ..... be able to move fast. It's slow.
   a. might  b. might not  c. must

2. A turtle might ..... in the river. [Menofia - Ashmoun 2025]
   a. living  b. lives  c. live

3. Crocodiles live in rivers. They ..... eat fish.
   a. might  b. might not  c. is

4. The elephant might not ..... the biggest animal.
   a. be  b. to be  c. being

5. I might not ..... math. [Beheira - Kom Hamada 2025]
   a. studies  b. study  c. studied

6. I might ..... the dog for a walk.
   a. take  b. took  c. taking

7. We might ..... to the zoo next week.
   a. went  b. goes  c. go

8. Crayfish might ..... shelter under rocks.
   a. took  b. take  c. taking

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# General Exercises On Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

elephant – meat – swim – zoo – big

I'm Menna. Last week, I went to the [1] ..... . I saw lots of animals there. My favorite animal is the [2] ..... . Elephants are very [3] ..... . They don't eat [4] ..... . They eat grass. I enjoyed my day at the zoo very much.

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Elephants are very big. They don't eat meat. They eat grass. Elephants aren't the biggest animals in the world. The blue whales are the biggest animals in the world. Elephants can swim well in rivers. Elephants have big ears and long trunks. They use their trunks to drink water.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Elephants have big ..... .
   a. ears  b. arms  c. heads
2. Elephants can ..... well.
   a. fly  b. swim  c. jump

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. Which animal is the biggest in the world ?

   .....

4. What do elephants eat ?

   .....

5. Where can elephants swim well ?

   .....

6. What do elephants use their trunks for ?

   .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

A. 1. This bag ..... be your bag, but I can't see your name on it.
   a. might  b. is  c. are

2. Ali might ..... the race. [Sohag - Tema 2025]
   a. wins  b. win  c. won

3. They ..... have an argument. I'm not sure.

a. are b. might c. do

4. I think chocolate might ..... your teeth.

a. damaging b. damage c. damages

B. 1. I think the elephant might not ..... grass. [Port Said - North Port Said 2025]

a. eat b. to eat c. eating

2. The animals might ..... in Africa. [التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٦]

a. lives b. live c. living

3. We ..... visit the park, but I'm not sure.

a. are b. going to c. might

4. What do you think the birds might ..... ?

a. eat b. eating c. eats

## 4 Read, order and write.

A. 1. fruits - Elephants - eat - might.

.....

2. bird - have - This - might - a nest.

.....

B. 1. think - be - I - might - here - the cat.

.....

2. don't - near - sea - They - live – the.

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Elephants"**

**Guiding elements :**

- rivers
- swim
- grass

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

LESSON 4

# Reading

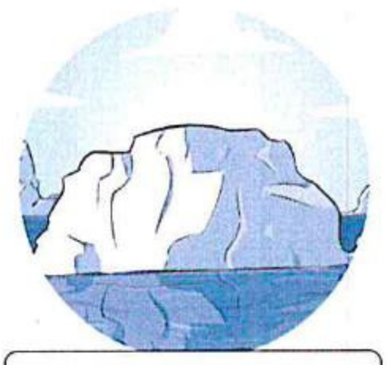


## I Vocabulary




### Key vocabulary

#### Habitats البيئات



polar habitat
موطن قطبى



rainforest
غابة مطيرة



wetland
أرض رطبة



desert صحراء



grassland مرعى

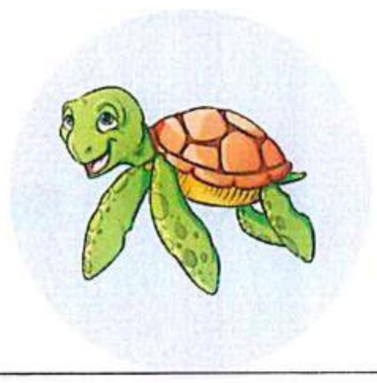
#### Animals



wolf / wolves ذئب / ذئاب



Arctic fox ثعلب القطب الشمالى



turtle سلحفاة

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| climate | مناخ | fur | فراء | dark | مظلم |
| landscape | منظر طبيعى | swamp | مستنقع | non-living things | كائنات غير حية |
| tropical | استوائى | feather | ريشة | colored | ملون |
| wet | رطب | snow | ثلج | on land | على اليابسة |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Understanding different habitats | climate - landscape | A habitat is a place with a kind of climate and landscape. |
| | habitats – world | There are different habitats all over the world. |
| | snow - ice | In a polar habitat, there is snow and ice. |
| | rainforests - wet | In rainforests, it's hot and wet, and the trees grow lots of fruit. |
| | wetlands - river | Wetlands can be near the sea or near a river. |
| | swamp – trees | A swamp is a wetland with lots of trees. |




## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary




- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. Macaws have beautiful colored ..... .
   a. swamps  b. deserts  c. feathers

2. The ..... in the rainforest is hot and wet.
   a. mood  b. climate  c. star

3. The ..... habitat has snow and ice.
   a. polar  b. desert  c. swamp

4. Rainforest and grassland are kinds of ..... .
   a. birds  b. animals  c. habitats

5. My favorite animals are ..... .
   a. turtles  b. snow  c. fur

6. The sun is very hot in the ..... .
   a. polar habitat  b. desert  c. wetland

[التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / القليوبية - بنها]

## II Listening and reading

▶ **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

### Understanding different habitats

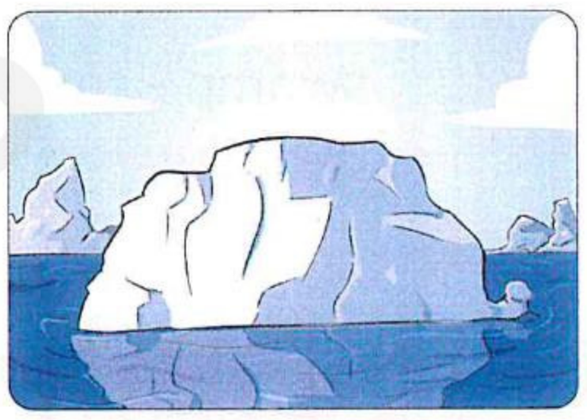
A **habitat**[1] is a place with a kind of climate and **landscape**[2]. There are different habitats all over the world. They have different animals, plants, and non-living things.

الموطن هو مكان له نوع من المناخ والمناظر الطبيعية. هناك مواطن مختلفة فى جميع أنحاء العالم. لديهم حيوانات ونباتات وكائنات غير حية مختلفة.

[1] موطن-بيئة
[2] منظر طبيعى
[3] غابات مطيرة
[4] استوائية
[5] أرض رطبة
[6] مستنقع
[7] جذور

In a polar habitat, there is snow and ice, and everything looks white. There aren't any trees, and the plants are small. Animals can take shelter in burrows.

فى الموطن القطبى، يوجد جليد وثلوج ويبدو كل شىء أبيض اللون. لا توجد أى أشجار، والنباتات صغيرة. يمكن للحيوانات أن تحتمى فى الجحور.



polar habitat

There are **rainforests**[3] in warm, **tropical**[4] parts of the world. Lots of animals here live in the trees and they eat leaves and fruit. It is hot and wet, and the trees grow lots of fruit.

تـوجد غابات ممطرة فى الأجزاء الاستوائية، الدافئة من العالم. يعيش الكثير من الحيوانات هنا فى الأشجار ويأكلون أوراق الأشجار والفاكهة. يكون الجو حارًا ورطبًا وتثمر الأشجار الكثير من الفاكهة.



rainforest

A **wetland**[5] can be wet all the time. Wetlands can be near the sea or near a river. A **swamp**[6] is a wetland with lots of trees. The tree **roots**[7] can be in the water and animals hide in them.

يمكن للأرض الرطبة أن تكون مبللة طوال الوقت. يمكن أن تتواجد الأراضى الرطبة بالقرب من البحر أو النهر. المستنقع هو عبارة عن أرض رطبة بها الكثير من الأشجار. جذور الشجرة يمكن أن تبقى فى الماء وتختبئ الحيوانات فيها.



wetland

## ▶ Read and match each animal to its habitat.

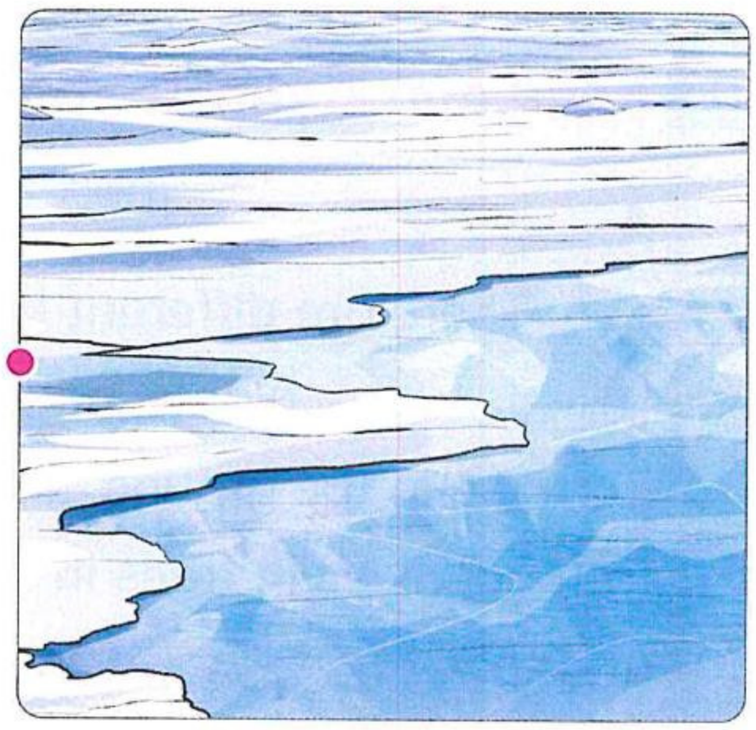
اقرأ وصِل كل حيوان بموطنه.

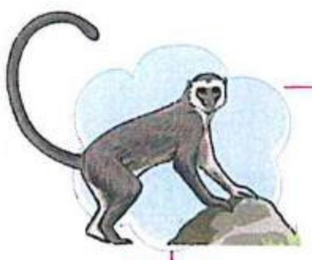


An Arctic fox is white.
It digs burrows in the ground.

1

ثعلب القطب الشمالى لونه أبيض. يحفر جُحر تحت الأرض.





A spider monkey eats fruit and lives in trees.

2

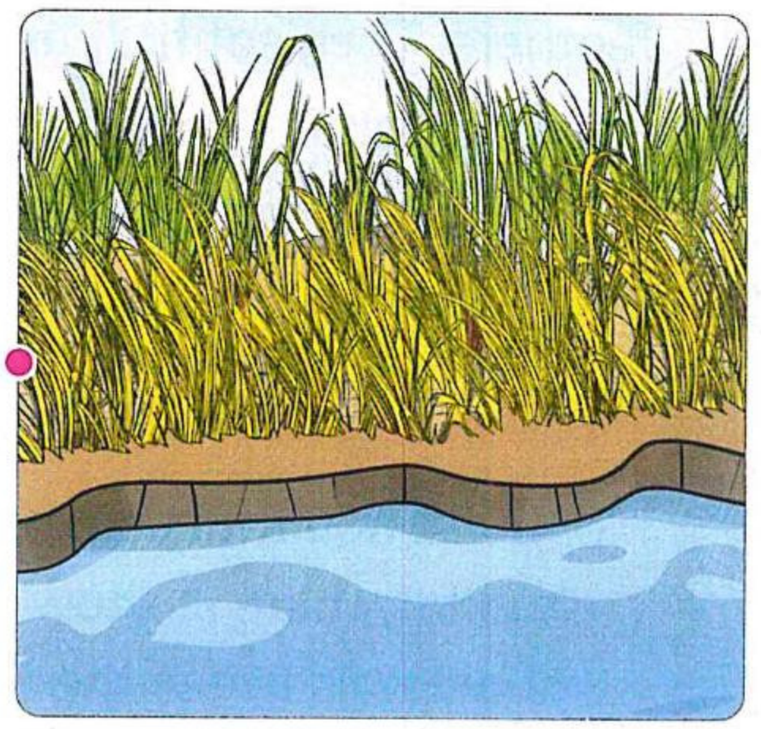
قرد العنكبوت يأكل الفاكهة ويعيش على الأشجار.



Crayfish often live in dark,warm water, and take shelter in tree roots.

3

جراد البحر غالبًا ما يعيش فى مياه عميقة [مظلمة] دافئة ويحتمى فى جذور الأشجار.





Macaws have beautiful colored feathers. They eat fruit and leaves.

4

طيور المقو [نوع من الببغاء] لديهم ريش جميل ملون. يأكلون الفاكهة وأوراق الشجر.

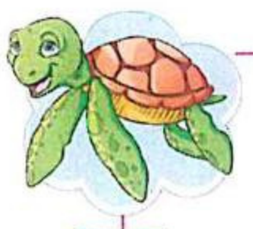


Wolves have light colored fur. They eat rabbits and other animals that live on the ground.

5

الذئاب لديها فراء [فاتح اللون]. تأكل الأرانب وحيوانات أخرى تعيش على الأرض.





Turtles eat plants and animals in the water and on land.

6

تأكل السلاحف النباتات والحيوانات التى تعيش فى الماء وعلى الأرض.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# General Exercises On Lesson 4

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**A.**

north – eats – animals – digs – shelter

There are different habitats all over the world. They have different [1] ..... , plants, and non-living things. An Arctic fox is white. It [2] ..... burrows in the ground. It lives in polar habitats. A spider monkey [3] ..... fruit and lives in trees in the rainforests. Crayfish often live in dark, warm water, and take [4] ..... in tree roots. Crayfish live in a wetland.

**B.**

fur - colored - plants - hide - ground

Many animals live in different habitats. Macaws have beautiful [1] ..... feathers. They eat fruit and leaves. Wolves have light colored [2] ..... . They eat rabbits and other animals that live on the [3] ..... . Turtles eat [4] ..... and animals in the water and on land. Every animal has its own food and habitat.

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

A habitat is a place with a kind of climate and landscape. In a polar habitat, there is snow and ice. There aren't any trees. In rainforests, lots of animals live in the trees and they eat leaves and fruit. The rainforests are hot and wet, and the trees grow lots of fruit.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. There aren't any ..... in polar habitats.
   a. snow  b. trees  c. ice
2. The rainforests are ..... and wet.
   a. hot  b. cold  c. snow

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What's a habitat ?

   .....

4. Which habitat has snow and ice ?

   .....

5. Where do lots of animals in the rainforest live ?

   .....

6. What do animals in rainforests eat ?

   .....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. The elephant might ..... in Africa.

a. live  b. lives  c. living

2. The crocodiles ..... live in the river. They can swim.

a. might not  b. might  c. is

3. The giraffe might ..... grass.

a. eats  b. eating  c. eat

4. I think the goat might not ..... able to swim.

a. be  b. been  c. being

## 4 Read, order and write.

A. 1. wolves – crayfish – Where – live – do – and ?

.....

2. light – fur – Wolves – colored – have.

.....

B. 1. can – wet – A wetland – be – the time – all.

.....

2. plants – the – Turtles – in – water – eat.

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Different habitats"**

**Guiding elements :**

- polar habitat
- wetland
- climate

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5Y5

LESSON 5

# Learn sounds with Busy Bee!

## Phonics

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

▶ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

**mp** → **/mp/**



swamp مستنقع



camp معسكر

**nt** → **/nt/**



hunt يصطاد



tent خيمة

**nd** → **/nd/**



grassland مرعى



wetland أرض رطبة

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

## Pop Quiz on Phonics

**1** Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. hu _ _
2. te _ _
3. wetla _ _
4. ca _ _

**2** Look, read and circle "mp" , "nd" or "nt".



- Can I camp in a wetland ?
  - No! Don't put a tent in a swamp!
- Can I camp in a grassland ?
  - No! Cheetahs hunt in the grassland.

https://t.me/GS Y5

LESSON 6

# Story : The Monkey and the Crocodile



## I Vocabulary




### Key vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| crocodile | تمساح | wife | زوجة | sweet | حلو المذاق |
| truth | الحقيقة | monkey | قرد | | |

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| river | نهر | quickly | بسرعة | heart | قلب |
| friend | صديق | kind | طيب / عطوف | home | منزل |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| jump | يقفز | jumped |
| carry | يحمل | carried |
| ask | يطلب / يسأل | asked |

**Irregular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| give | يعطى | gave |
| become | يصبح | became |
| swim | يسبح | swam |
| hurt | يجرح / يؤلم | hurt |

### Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| • in the middle of | فى المنتصف | • become friends | يصبحوا أصدقاء |
| • take ..... back | يعيد / يرجع | • by a river | بالقرب من نهر |

### Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| The Monkey and the Crocodile | monkey - river | A monkey lived in a tree by a river. |
| | give - fruit | The monkey gave the crocodile some sweet fruit. |
| | crocodile - become | The monkey and the crocodile became friends. |
| | crocodile's wife | The crocodile's wife wanted the monkey's heart. |
| | come - home | The crocodile asked the monkey to come to his home. |
| | truth | The crocodile told the monkey the truth. |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## II Reading

▶ **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

### The Monkey and the Crocodile

A monkey lived in a tree by a river. One day, he gave a crocodile some fruit and they became friends.

The crocodile took some fruit to his **wife**[1]. "The fruit is **sweet**.[2] "she said.

"The monkey's heart must be sweet, too. **Bring**[3] me his heart."

The crocodile didn't want to **hurt**[4] his friend, but he asked the monkey to come to his home.

"I will carry you," he said to the monkey.

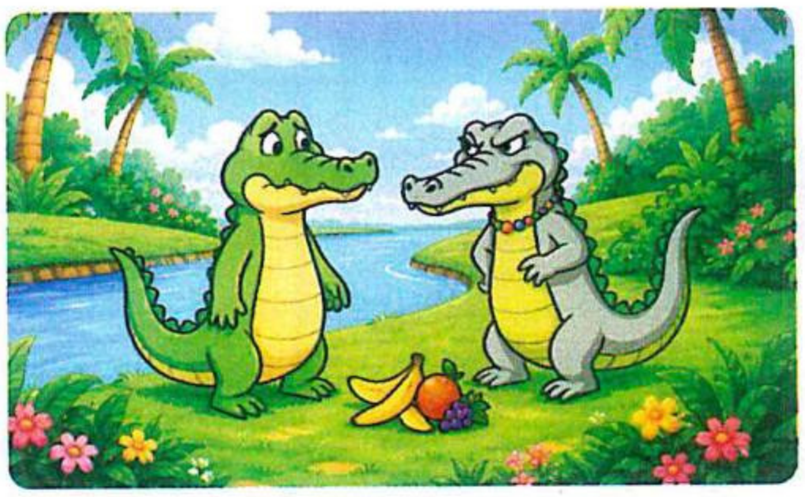
In the middle of the river, the crocodile told the monkey the **truth**[5]. The monkey thought quickly.

"My heart is in the tree," he said. "Take me back, and I will get it."

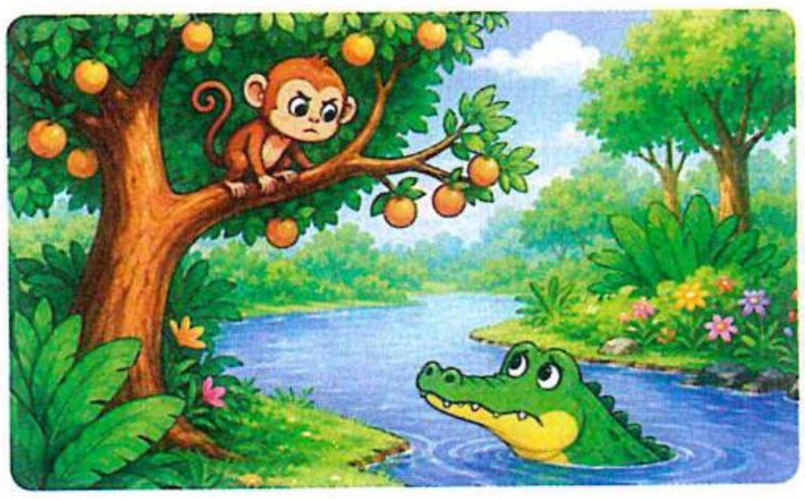
The crocodile swam back, and the monkey jumped into the tree.

"You are not my friend," said the monkey.









كان هناك قرد يعيش على شجرة بجوار نهر. وفى أحد الأيام، أعطى تمساحًا بعض الفاكهة، فأصبحا صديقين. أخذ التمساح بعض الفاكهة إلى زوجته. فقالت: "هذه الفاكهة حلوة المذاق، ولا بد أن قلب القرد حلو أيضًا. أحضر لي قلبه." لم يرد التمساح أن يؤذي صديقه، لكنه طلب من القرد أن يزور بيته. وقال له: "سأحملك على ظهرى." وعندما وصلوا إلى منتصف النهر، أخبر التمساح القرد بالحقيقة. ففكر القرد بسرعة، ثم قال: "قلبى موجود فى الشجرة. أعدنى إليها، وسأحضره لك." فعاد التمساح يسبح بالقرد إلى الشجرة، فقفز القرد بسرعة إلى أعلى الشجرة، ثم قال: "أنت لست صديقى."

[1] زوجة [2] حلو المذاق [3] يحضر [4] يؤلم / يؤذى [5] الحقيقة



**The moral of the story**

Be a kind friend.
كن صديقًا طيبًا.

# General Exercises

On Lesson 6

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. hu _ _ | 2. grassla _ _ | 3. wetla _ _ | 4. ca _ _

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

A monkey lived in a tree by a river. One day, he gave some fruit to a crocodile and they became friends. The crocodile took some fruit to his wife. The crocodile's wife liked the fruit, but she wanted the monkey's heart. The crocodile asked the monkey to come to his home. In the middle of the river, he told the monkey the truth. The clever monkey said "My heart is in the tree. Take me back, and I will get it". The crocodile swam back. The monkey jumped into the tree and told the crocodile that they are not friends.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. The monkey and the ..... became friends.
   a. crocodile  b. bird  c. lion
2. In the ..... of the river, the crocodile told the monkey the truth.
   a. top  b. bottom  c. middle

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did the monkey live?

   .....

4. What did the monkey give the crocodile?

   .....

5. What did the crocodile's wife want?

   .....

6. What did the monkey tell the crocodile at the end?

   .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. She might ..... to the school.
   a. come  b. comes  c. coming
2. We might ..... to the beach if it's sunny.
   a. goes  b. go  c. going
3. We might ..... a movie this weekend.
   a. sees  b. saw  c. see
4. She ..... not like the food at that restaurant. I'm not sure.
   a. is  b. must  c. might

https://t.me/G5 Y5

## 4 Read, order and write.

**A.** 1. does – live - Where - monkey – the ?

.....

2. didn't – to hurt – The crocodile - friend – want – his.

.....

**B.** 1. some - The monkey - fruit - gave - the crocodile.

.....

2. want – wife - What - the crocodile's – does ?

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Your favorite story"**

**Guiding elements :**

- become friends
- sweet
- truth

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

https://t.me/G5Y5

LESSON 7

# Reading

## I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

### Key vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| equator | خط الاستواء | North Pole | القطب الشمالى | South Pole | القطب الجنوبى |
| climate | مناخ | conditions | شروط / ظروف | imaginary | وهمي / خيال |

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| sunshine | أشعة الشمس | line | خط | cold | بارد |
| map | خريطة | farthest | الأبعد | | |

### Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| • part of | جزء من | • around the world | حول العالم |
| • at the farthest | فى أقصى | | |

## II Reading

**Read and identify.** اقرأ وتعرف.

### Equator خط الاستواء

- An imaginary line. - هو خط وهمى.
- The hottest part of the world. - الجزء الأكثر حرارة فى العالم.
- The nearest to the Sun. - الأقرب إلى الشمس.
- It gets the most sunshine. - يحصل على أغلب أشعة الشمس.

### North/South Pole القطب الشمالى / الجنوبى

- The points at the farthest north/ south of the world. - أبعد مناطق فى أقصى الشمال/ الجنوب فى العالم.
- The coldest parts of the world. - الأجزاء الأكثر برودة فى العالم.
- The farthest from the Sun. - الأبعد عن الشمس.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

There are different habitats around the world because of the different climate and conditions. Some parts of the world are cold, and some are hot.

هناك مواطن مختلفة حول العالم بسبب المناخ والأحوال المختلفة. بعض أجزاء العالم تكون باردة والبعض الآخر يكون حار.

**Equator :** This is an imaginary line all around the middle of the Earth.

خط الاستواء : هو خط وهمى حول منتصف كوكب الأرض.



**North Pole :** This is the point at the farthest north of the world.

القطب الشمالى : هذه هى النقطة / المنطقة فى أقصى شمال العالم.

**South Pole :** This is the point at the farthest south of the world.

القطب الجنوبى : هذه هى النقطة / المنطقة فى أقصى جنوب العالم.

The equator gets the most sunshine. It is hot here for all 12 months of the year. The North and South Pole don't get a lot of sunshine. It is very cold in these parts of the world.

We can see the different habitats on a map of the world.

يحصل خط الاستواء على أكبر قدر من أشعة الشمس. يكون الجو حارًا هنا طوال ١٢ شهرًا من العام. لا يحصل القطب الشمالى والجنوبى على الكثير من أشعة الشمس. الجو شديد البرودة فى هذه الأجزاء من العالم. نستطيع أن نرى مواطن مختلفة على خريطة العالم.

## A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج
والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط



# General Exercises On Lesson 7

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sunshine - South - hot - middle - cold

There are different habitats around the world because of the different climate and conditions. Some parts of the world are cold, and some are [1] ..... .
The equator gets the most [2] ..... . It is hot there for all 12 months of the year. The North and [3] ..... Pole don't get a lot of sunshine. It's very [4] ..... in these parts of the world.

[Gharbiya - West Mahala 2025]

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. They might ..... football after school.
   a. plays  b. playing  c. play
2. We ..... travel this summer. I am not sure.
   a. haven't  b. might not  c. aren't
3. They might ..... the museum.
   a. visit  b. visiting  c. visited
4. I might ..... my mother cook dinner.
   a. helping  b. help  c. helps

## 3 Read, order and write.

A. 1. sunshine - gets - The equator – most – the.

.....

2. habitats – What - you - do – know - Egypt – in ?

.....

B. 1. line – is - The equator - imaginary – an.

.....

2. are – parts – the world - Some - cold – of.

.....

LESSONS 8&9

- Story : Wael Protects Animal Habitats
- Life skills

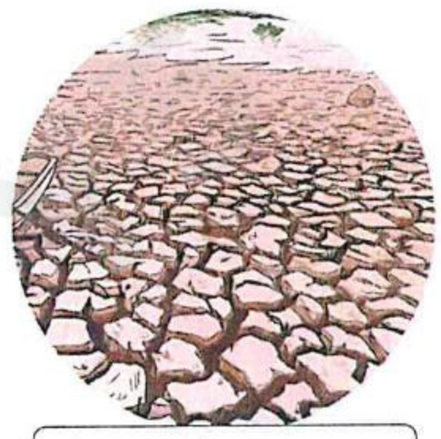


## I Vocabulary

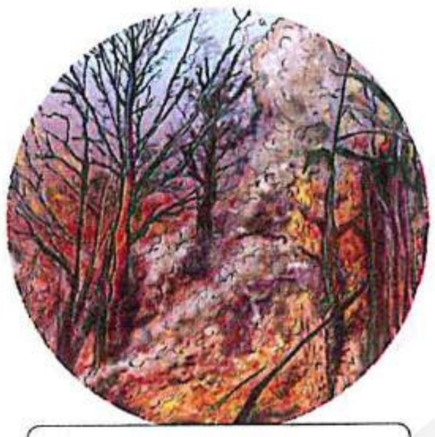



### Key vocabulary

#### Natural disasters كوارث طبيعية



drought جفاف



fire حريق / نار



flood فيضان

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| poster | ملصق | rubbish | قمامة |
| nature | طبيعة | crowded | مزدحم |

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| burn | يحرق | beside | بجانب / بجوار |
| machines | آلات | wrong | خطأ |
| town | مدينة [صغيرة] | safe | آمن |
| air | هواء | classmates | أصدقاء الفصل |
| farm | مزرعة | clean | نظيف |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular**

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| notice | يلاحظ | noticed | promise | يوعد | promised |
| pollute | يلوث | polluted | relax | يسترخى | relaxed |
| damage | يدمر / يتلف | damaged | destroy | يدمر | destroyed |
| explain | يفسر / يشرح | explained | protect | يحمى | protected |

https://t.me/G5

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| • make a poster | يقوم بعمل ملصق | • cut down | يقطع |
| • look after | يعتنى بـ | • fly away | يطير بعيداً |
| • make jobs | يوفر فرص عمل | • look worried | يبدو قلقاً |
| • on the edge of | على حافة | • home to | موطن لـ |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Protecting animal habitats | rubbish – river | Wael noticed rubbish in the river. |
| | clean - homes | Birds and animals need clean water, food, and safe homes. |
| | fires - damage | Fires burn trees and plants, and floods damage animal homes. |
| | make a poster | Wael made a poster with a clean river, green trees, and happy animals. |
| | classmates - look after | Wael's classmates promised to look after nature. |

## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائى

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. We shouldn't ..... the garden.
   a. plant  b. pollute  c. clean
2. I meet my ..... at school every day.
   a. classmates  b. animals  c. food
3. We shouldn't throw the ..... in the streets.
   a. sun  b. storm  c. rubbish
4. A ..... happens when there is too much rain.
   a. flood  b. drought  c. fire
5. Animals need to live in .....homes.
   a. dirty  b. bad  c. safe
6. The fire can ..... and destroy everything.
   a. burn  b. clean  c. plant

https://t.me/G5 Y5

## II Reading




▶ **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

### Wael Protects Animal Habitats

One afternoon, Wael and his father walked **beside**[1] a river. Wael noticed something wrong. "Look!" he said. "There is rubbish in the water."



"Why are the birds flying away?" Wael asked. His father said, "Birds and animals need clean water, food, and safe homes. Rubbish pollutes the river. Birds need trees."

Wael **looked worried**[2]. "Fires burn trees and plants. Floods **damage**[3] animal homes," said his father.



"How can we protect animal habitats?" Wael asked. "We can keep rivers clean, plant trees, and protect animals," his father explained.

The next day, Wael made a **poster**[4] for his class. The poster had a clean river, green trees, and happy animals.



"Protect animal habitats!" the poster said. His **classmates**[5] promised to look after nature every day.



في أحد أيام بعد الظهر، كان وائل ووالده يسيران بجانب نهر. لاحظ وائل أن هناك شيئًا غير طبيعي. قال: "انظر! هناك قمامة في الماء." سأل وائل: "لماذا تطير الطيور مبتعدة؟" فأجابه والده: "تحتاج الطيور والحيوانات إلى ماء نظيف، وطعام، وبيوت آمنة. فالقمامة تلوث النهر، والطيور تحتاج إلى الأشجار." شعر وائل بالقلق. قال والده: "تحرق الحرائق الأشجار والنباتات، كما تسبب الفيضانات أضرارًا ببيوت الحيوانات." سأل وائل: "كيف يمكننا حماية مواطن الحيوانات؟" فأوضح والده: "يمكننا الحفاظ على نظافة الأنهار، وزراعة الأشجار، وحماية الحيوانات." وفي اليوم التالي، صنع وائل ملصقًا لفصله الدراسي. كان الملصق يظهر نهرًا نظيفًا، وأشجارًا خضراء، وحيوانات سعيدة. وكانت العبارة المكتوبة على الملصق هي: "احموا مواطن الحيوانات!" ووعد زملاء وائل في الفصل بأن يعتنوا بالطبيعة كل يوم.

[1] بجانب [2] يبدو قلقًا [3] يدمر / يتلف [4] ملصق [5] زملاء الفصل



**The Moral of the story**

Look after nature and animals.
أعتني بالطبيعة والحيوانات

**Choose the correct answer.**

Learn 1. Wael and his father walked beside a ..... .
a. pond b. lake c. river

Practice 2. ..... can burn trees and plants.
a. Fire b. Flood c. Drought

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## ⭐ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.



**Seleem**

I don't think we should **build**[1] twenty new homes next to the lake on the **edge**[2] of our town. The lake is a habitat for lots of wildlife. There are birds, fish, **insects**[3], snakes and frogs. There are lots of different trees and plants. It is also a **beautiful**[4] place for people to visit and relax. The new **homes**[5] will destroy this habitat. The machines will pollute the air and the water.

- لا أعتقد أننا يجب أن نبنى عشرين منزلًا جديدًا بجوار البحيرة على حافة مدينتنا. البحيرة موطن للكثير من الحياة البرية. هناك طيور وأسماك وحشرات وثعابين وضفادع. يوجد الكثير من الأشجار والنباتات المختلفة. كما أنه مكان جميل للناس للزيارة والاسترخاء. ستدمر المنازل الجديدة هذا الموطن. سوف تلوث الآلات الهواء والماء.

[1] يبنى [2] حافة [3] حشرات [4] جميل [5] منازل

**Adam**



I think it is a good idea to build the new homes. People need homes to live in. The **city**[6] is crowded with too many houses.
It will make **jobs**[7] for lots of people. We can plant new trees after they **build**[8] the homes.
The animals will **find**[9] somewhere else to live. It will be a beautiful place for people to live in.

- أعتقد أنها فكرة جيدة لبناء منازل جديدة. يحتاج الناس منازل للعيش فيها. المدينة مزدحمة بالعديد من المنازل. ستوفر وظائف للكثير من الناس. يمكننا زرع أشجار جديدة بعد بناءهم للمنازل. سوف تجد الحيوانات مكانًا آخر للعيش فيه. سيكون مكان جميل للناس للعيش فيه.

[6] مدينة (كبيرة) [7] وظائف [8] يبنى [9] يجد

https://t.me/G5

# General Exercises On Lessons 8 & 9

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى **نهاية الكتاب**

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. wetla _ _ | 2. ca _ _ | 3. grassla _ _ | 4. te _ _

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

trees - fire - idea - crowded - homes

People want to build 20 homes next to the lake. I think it's a good [1] ..... . People need [2] ..... to live in . The city is [3] ..... with too many houses . It will make jobs for lots of people. We can plant new [4] ..... after they build the homes .

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

One afternoon, Wael and his father walked beside a river. Wael saw rubbish in the water and felt sad. His father explained that birds and animals need clean water, food, and safe homes. Later, they saw a forest fire. Wael was worried because fires burn trees and plants. His father told him that floods and fires can destroy animal habitats. Wael wanted to help protect nature. The next day, Wael made a poster for his class. It showed a clean river, green trees, and happy animals. The poster said, "Protect animal habitats!".

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Wael saw ..... in the water and felt sad.
   a. rubbish  b. fish  c. plants
2. Wael wanted to ..... nature.
   a. pollute  b. protect  c. burn

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did Wael and his father walk?

   .....

4. Why was Wael worried?

   .....

5. What can floods and fires do?

   .....

6. What did the poster show ?

   .....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. I might ..... my grandparents this weekend.

a. visit b. visited c. visits

2. You might ..... that book at the library. [Gharbia - Tanta 2025]

a. finds b. found c. find

3. He ..... come to school if he's feeling sick. [Damietta - New Damietta 2025]

a. might b. might not c. are

4. You ..... pass the exam if you study.

a. might b. might not c. is

## 5 Read, order and write.

A. 1. idea - a good - to build - homes - new - It's.

.....

2. and - Fires - plants - trees - burn.

.....

B. 1. the - will - The machines - air - pollute.

.....

2. protect – How - we – can – habitats – animal ? [Beheira - Damanhur 2025]

.....

## 6 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Protecting animal habitats"**

**Guiding elements :**

- rubbish
- safe homes
- poster

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

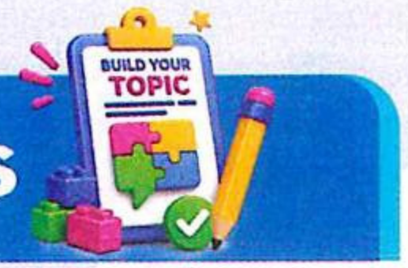
.....

.....

.....

.....

# Skills 1 How to write about certain topics



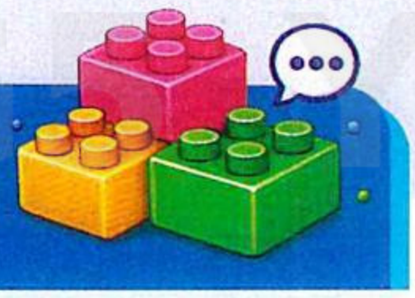

كيفية كتابة الفقرات الإنشائية ← اتباع الخطوات التالية يساعدك على تكوين فقرة إنشائية :

١. تكوين حصيلة من المفردات اللغوية. ٢. إتقان تكوين الجمل. ٣. بعد اتباع الخطوات السابقة يمكنك كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

| | Step 1 Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية: | Step 2 Sentences<br>متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية: | Step 3 Writing<br>متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية أكتب فقرة إنشائية: |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Animal behavior** | **Write the meaning :**<br>..... عُش<br>..... يحفر<br>..... جحر<br>..... جراد البحر [سلطعون]<br>..... بومة | **Reorder the words :**<br>1. of - in trees - **Lots** - build - birds - nests.<br>.....<br>2. dig - ground - **Foxes** - in - burrows - the.<br>.....<br>3. hide - in the day - **Crayfish** - rocks - under - time.<br>.....<br>4. live - trees - **Owls** - in - in holes.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"Animal behavior"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| **Different habitats** | ..... بيئة / موطن<br>..... موطن قطبى<br>..... أرض رطبة<br>..... ثلج / جليد<br>..... رطب | 5. are - habitats - **There** - the world - different - all over.<br>.....<br>6. is - in - habitat - **There** - the polar - snow.<br>.....<br>7. can - the time - **A wetland** - wet - be - all.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"Different habitats"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| **The equator** | ..... خط الاستواء<br>..... وهمى / خيال<br>..... أشعة الشمس<br>..... جزء من<br>..... خط | 8. an - line - **The equator** - imaginary - is.<br>.....<br>9. gets - sunshine - **The equator** - most - the.<br>.....<br>10. is - the world - **It** - part - the hottest - of.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"The equator"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |

https://t.me/GS_Y5

# 2 Sentence Building



**الهدف من هذا الجزء** تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

## ١ الجملة الخبريـة

**1 Subject Detective**

**مين صاحب الفعل؟**

**ابحث عن الفاعل**

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. Crayfish
   فاعل الجملة الأولى
2. The monkey
   فاعل الجملة الثالثة



الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

1. live - rivers - **Crayfish** - in.
2. colored - feathers - **Macaws** - beautiful -have.
3. into - tree - **The monkey** - the - jumped.
4. burn - **Fires** - and - trees - plants.

| | 1 فاعـل | 2 فعـل | 3 باقـى الجملـة. |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | | live | |
| 2. | | | |
| 3. | | | into the tree. |
| 4. | | | |

**2 Verb Hunter**

**بيعمل إيه؟**

**ابحث عن الفعل**

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. have
   فعل الجملة الثانية
2. burn
   فعل الجملة الرابعة



الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

## ٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

**3 Helper Team**

**مين بيساعدنا؟**

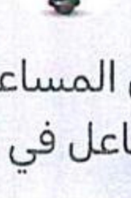
**الأفعال المساعدة**

**Do**

تستخدم مع:
I, you, we, they

**Can**

تستخدم مع:
I, you, we, they, he, she, it



الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

1. do - the wild - in - **How** - behave – animals ?
2. elephants - **What** - eat - do ?
3. I – a – in – wetland - **Can** – camp ?
4. we – **How** – protect – habitats – can – animal ?

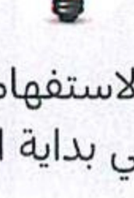
| | 1 كلمة استفهام | 2 فعل مساعد | 3 فاعـل | 4 فعل | 5 باقى السؤال ؟. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | How | | | | |
| 2. | | do | | | |
| 3. | | | | | |
| 4. | | | we | | |

**4 The Wh-Team**

**نسأل ازاى؟**

**أدوات الاستفهام**

- How [كيف]: للسؤال عن الحالة.
- What [ما / ماذا]: للسؤال عن شيء.



أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائمًا في بداية السؤال.

# 3 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [١٩ جملة].

## 1 Animal behavior

Animals live in habitats where they can get food and water, and live safely[1]. Animals take shelter so they can stay warm[2]. Lots of birds build nests in trees[3]. Other birds such as owls live in holes in trees[4].

## 2 Elephants

Elephants are very big[5]. They don't live near the sea[6]. Elephants can swim in rivers very well[7].

## 3 A wetland habitat

A wetland can be wet all the time[8]. Wetlands can be near the sea or near a river[9]. A swamp is a wetland with lots of trees[10]. The tree roots can be in the water and animals hide in them[11].

## 4 Protecting animal habitats

We should protect animal habitats[12]. We shouldn't throw rubbish in the river[13]. Rubbish pollutes the river[14]. Birds and animals need clean water, food, and safe homes[15].

## 5 Polar habitats

There is snow and ice in a polar habitat[16]. Everything looks white in polar habitats[17]. There aren't any trees[18]. Animals can take shelter in burrows[19].

### From Sentences to Topics

- Start with a capital letter.
- Use the correct tense.
- Put the words in the correct order.
- End with a full stop.

https://t.me/G5_45



# Review through the Exam on Unit 4

**مراجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتدريبات.**

## 25 Vocabulary

أهم 25 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| imaginary | وهمى/ خيالى | equator | خط الاستواء | sloth | حيوان الكسلان |
| flood | فيضان | dig | يحفر | burrow | جُحر |
| fire | حريق/نار | hunt | يصطاد | owl | بومة |
| drought | جفاف | rainforest | غابة مطيرة | shelter | مأوى |
| natural disasters | كوارث طبيعية | grassland | مرعى | polar habitat | موطن قطبى |
| rubbish | قمامة | wetland | أرض رطبة | swamp | مستنقع |
| crowded | مزدحم | wife | زوجة | spider monkey | قرد العنكبوت |
| | | truth | الحقيقة | animals | حيوانات |
| | | climate | مناخ | habitats | بيئات |

## 10 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعًا فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان

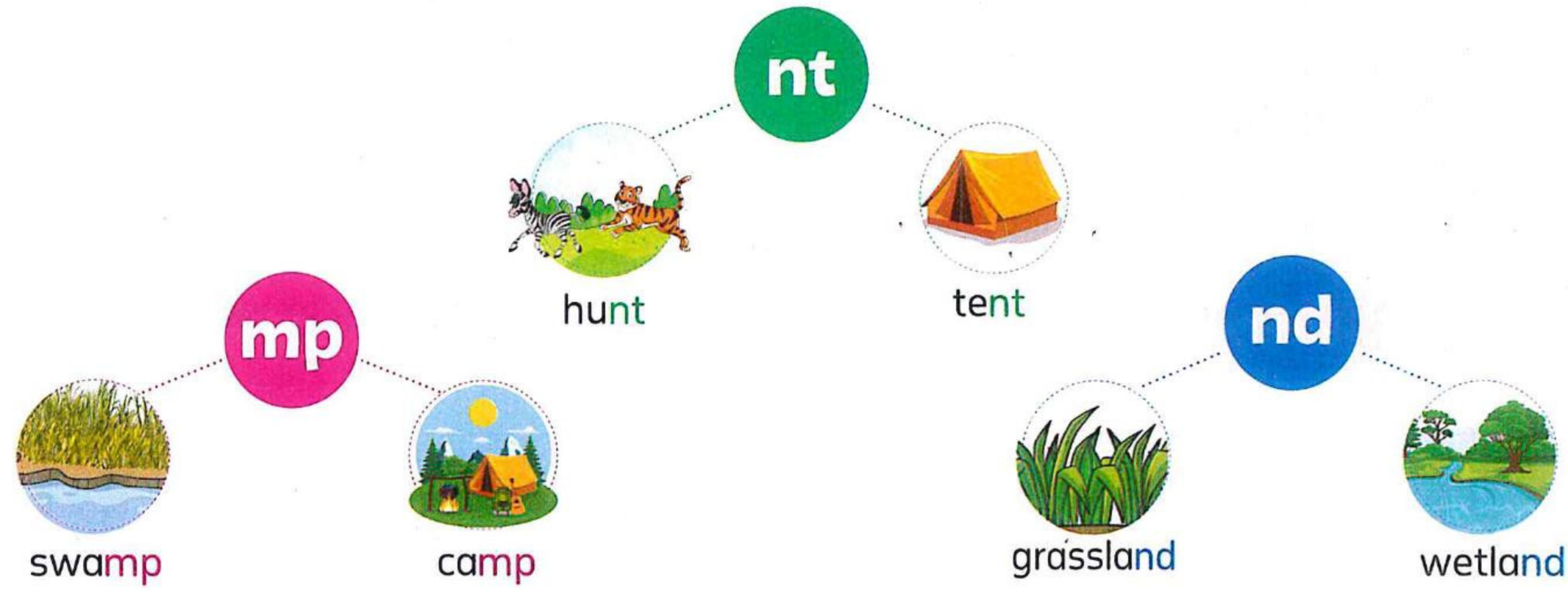
1. I thought the sloth[1] was great.
2. Foxes and rabbits dig burrows[2] in the ground.
3. Owls[3] live in holes.
4. Animals take shelter[4] so they can stay warm.
5. In a polar habitat[5], there is snow and ice.
6. A swamp[6] is a wetland with lots of trees.
7. A spider monkey[7] eats fruit and lives in trees.
8. Birds and animals[8] need clean water and safe homes.
9. A habitat[9] is a place with a kind of climate and landscape.
10. The equator[10] is an imaginary line.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| [1] كتاب الطالب | [2] الإسكندرية - الجمرك | [3] البحيرة - الدلنجات | [4] المنوفية - تلا | [5] كتاب الطالب |
| [6] القليوبية - بنها | [7] دمياط - عزبة البرج | [8] كتاب التدريبات | [9] الجيزة - الدقى | [10] كتاب التدريبات |

https://t.me/GB_Y5

## Phonics through the Exam

الصوتيات الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان].




## Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

| might | might not |
| --- | --- |
| Subj. + might + inf. ..... | Subj. + might not + inf. ..... |

## Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعًا
فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان

1. The owl might live in a hole.
2. The turtle might not be able to move fast.
3. I think blue whales might be the biggest animals in the world.
4. I think elephants might eat grass.
5. We might go to the zoo next week.
6. It might rain tomorrow.
7. We might not play football because of the rain.
8. My father might not be at home now.
9. My brother might help me with my homework.
10. Sara might read a new book tonight.

[1] القاهرة - المرج [2] الجيزة - أوسيم [3] كتاب الطالب [4] كتاب الطالب [5] الشرقية - منيا القمح
[6] دمياط - الروضة [7] الغربية - قطور [8] بورسعيد - بورفؤاد [9] المنوفية - تلا [10] كفر الشيخ - دسوق

https://t.me/GS_TS

# Sample Test 7

**On Unit 4**



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات
**فى نهاية الكتاب**

## اختبار المعاصر

### 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. swa _ _
2. te _ _
3. ca _ _
4. grassla _ _

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

fruit - truth - teachers - friends - hurt

One day, a monkey lived in a tree by a river. He gave a crocodile some [1] ..... . They became [2] ..... . The crocodile's wife wanted the monkey's heart. The crocodile didn't want to [3] ..... his friend. The crocodile told the monkey the [4] ..... .

### 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

People want to build 20 homes next to the lake. Adel thinks it's a good idea because people need homes to live in. The city is crowded with too many houses. Ahmed doesn't think we should build new homes next to the lake. The lake is home to birds, fish, insects, snakes and frogs. Around the lake, there are lots of different trees and plants. The new homes will destroy this habitat. The machines will pollute the air and the water.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :**

1. The city is crowded with too many ..... .
   a. schools  b. houses  c. hospitals
2. The lake is home for birds, fish, insects and ..... .
   a. penguins  b. elephants  c. frogs

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. How many homes do people want to build ?

.....

4. Why does Adel think it's a good idea ?

.....

5. What will the machines do ?

.....

6. What can we see around the lake ?

.....

https://t.me/G5 Y5

## 4 The Reader

### A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares's leg is • | ☐ a. he had a stupid accident. |
| 2. Fares is angry because • | ☐ b. broken. |

### B. Read and write [YES] or [NO] :

1. Fares's leg hurts. [.....]
2. Dalia and Wael were kind to Fares. [.....]

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. I might ..... to music.
   a. listen  b. listens  c. listening
2. I might not ..... to the museum today.
   a. goes  b. go  c. going
3. They ..... play football if it rains.
   a. might  b. might not  c. are
4. They might ..... the game if they play well.
   a. win  b. won  c. wins

## 6 Read, order and write.

1. beautiful - Macaws - colored - have - feathers.

.....

2. went - park - wildlife - to - I - the.

.....

## 7 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Crayfish"**

**Guiding elements :**

• live  • rivers  • hide

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Sample Test 8

**On Unit 4**



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات
**فى نهاية الكتاب**

اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. hu _ _ | 2. te _ _ | 3. wetla _ _ | 4. ca _ _

Giza / Beheira - Abu El Matamir - Kom Hamada 2025

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

protect – close to – shelter – behave – wild

When we visit a wildlife park, we can learn how animals [1] ..... by watching what they do. In wildlife parks, animals live in places which are [2] ..... their natural habitat. But how do animals behave in the [3] ..... ? Animals live in habitats where they can get food and water, and live safely. Animals take [4] ..... so they can stay warm, be safe from other animals and protect their families.

[Cairo – Heliopolis 2025]

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Animals live in habitats where they can get food and water, and live safely. Animals take shelter so they can stay warm, be safe from other animals, and protect their families. Lions and cheetahs hunt other animals to eat. Sometimes it's difficult to get food.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :**

1. The text is about ..... .
   a. habitats  b. families  c. animals
2. Sometimes it's ..... for the lions to get food.
   a. easy  b. difficult  c. safe

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. Where do animals live ?

.....

4. Why do animals take shelter ?

.....

5. What do lions eat ?

.....

6. Why do animals need habitats ?

.....

[Fayoum 2025]

https://t.me/G5Y5

https://t.me/G5 Y5

## 4 The Reader

### A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares couldn't [Bani Suef 2025] | a. his leg was broken. |
| 2. The doctor told Fares [Menia - Deir Mawas 2025] | b. move his leg. |

### B. Read and write T [True] or F [False] :

1. Fares will have to wear a cast for six weeks. [Suez – North 2025] ☐
2. Fares didn't go to the hospital. [Aswan - Edfu 2025] ☐

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Penguins ..... in a colony. [Sharkia – West Zagazig 2025]
   a. live  b. lives  c. living
2. They might not ..... the trees. [Cairo - East Nasr City 2025]
   a. cutting down  b. cuts down  c. cut down
3. Ali might ..... a new shirt. [Luxor - Esna 2025]
   a. buys  b. buy  c. buying
4. Elephants might not ..... flowers. [Cairo - East Nasr City 2025]
   a. eating  b. eat  c. eats

## 6 Read, order and write.

1. can - Birds - nests – build. [Minya – Beni Mazar 2025]

.....

2. hide – under - The crayfish - rocks - can. [Sharqia – Abu Hammad 2025]

.....

## 7 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Wildlife park"**

**Guiding elements :**

- wildlife park
- chimpanzee
- enjoyed

.....

.....

.....

.....

[Alexandria – Gomrok 2025]



**تنويه**

- علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
- علامة AB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التدريبات

UNIT

5

# All about water

## كل شئ عن الماء

### Unit Five Objectives

#### Vocabulary

- ground, oasis, soak, spring, condensation, evaporation, precipitation

- أرض، واحة ، يغمر ، ينبوع ، عملية التكثيف ، عملية التبخر ، سقوط الأمطار

#### Language

- He's climbed a mountain.
- Have you ever visited an oasis ?

- لقد تسلق جبلًا.
- هل زرت واحة من قبل؟

#### Reading and stories

- A brochure about an oasis; a text about rivers, seas, and oceans
- Story: The Oak and the Reed

- كتيب عن الواحة؛ نص عن الأنهار، البحار والمحيطات
- قصة البلوط والقصب

#### Phonics

- schwa : river, water, polar, cobra

- نهر، ماء، قطب، أفعى الكوبرا

LESSON 1

# Vocabulary

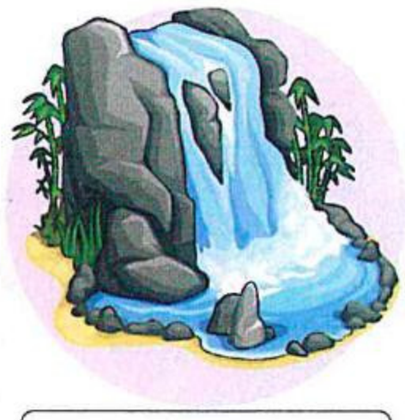
## I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

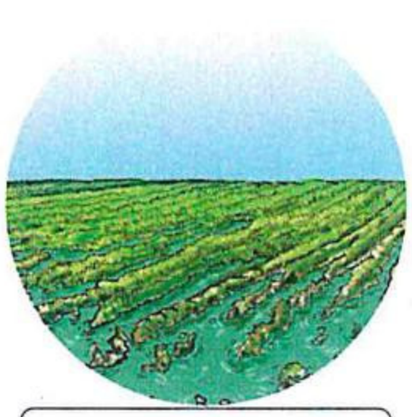
### Key vocabulary



dry جاف



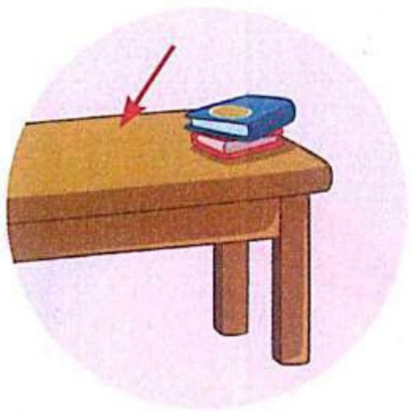
spring ينبوع



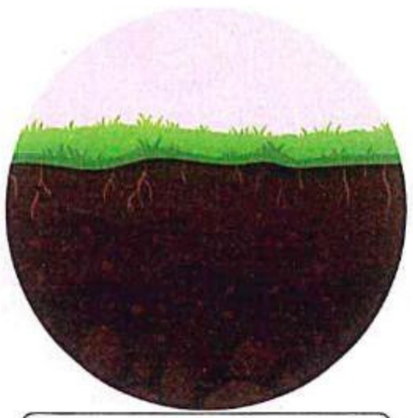
soak يغمر/يبلل



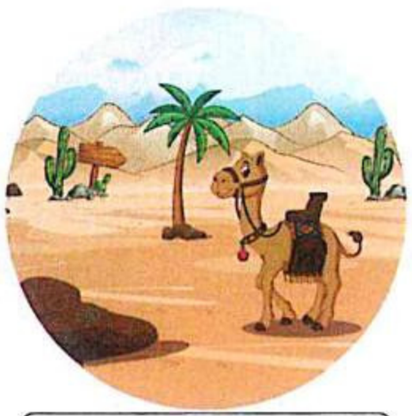
rain مطر



surface سطح



ground أرض



oasis واحة



desert صحراء

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| interesting | شيق / ممتع | monuments | آثار |
| year | سنة | come up | يرتفع / يصعد |
| fall | يسقط | special | مميز - خاص |

### Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Siwa Oasis | desert | Siwa Oasis is a very interesting place in the desert. |
| | hot - dry | The desert is hot and dry, but in an oasis there is water. |
| | grow - plants | People can grow trees and plants, and look after animals. |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائى
يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

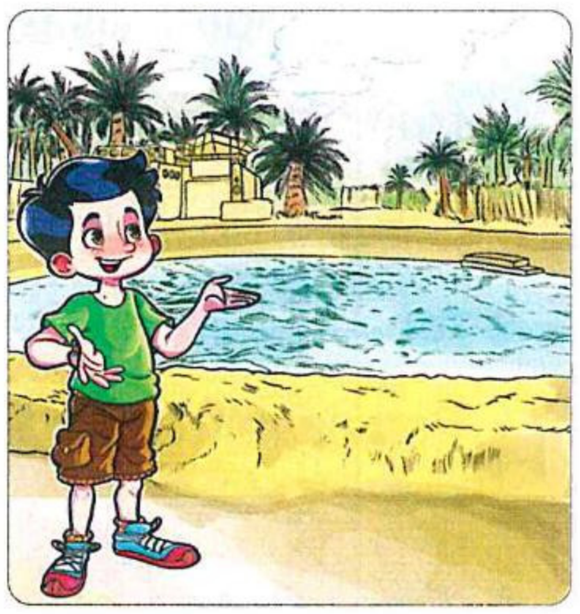
1. A/An ..... is a place in a desert where there is water.
   a. oasis  b. mountain  c. park
2. The ..... is a hot and dry place.
   a. forest  b. desert  c. river
3. They saw ..... made of gold in the museum.
   a. monuments  b. springs  c. dates

## II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب
على قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

▶ **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

Siwa Oasis is a very interesting place in the **desert**[1]. People have lived here for thousands of years. The desert is **hot**[2] and **dry**[3], but in an **oasis**[4] there is water. People can grow trees and plants, and look after animals. I've visited Siwa Oasis with my family. We ate lots of fruit, we saw some monuments and we swam in the **spring**[5].



واحة سيوة مكان ممتع للغاية فى الصحراء. عاش الناس هنا منذ آلاف السنين. الصحراء حارة وجافة، لكن فى الواحة يوجد مياه. يمكن للناس زراعة الأشجار والنباتات، ورعاية الحيوانات. لقد زرت واحة سيوة مع عائلتى. أكلنا الكثير من الفاكهة ورأينا بعض الآثار وسبحنا فى الينبوع.

[1] صحراء
[2] حار
[3] جاف
[4] واحة
[5] ينبوع

**Answer the following questions**

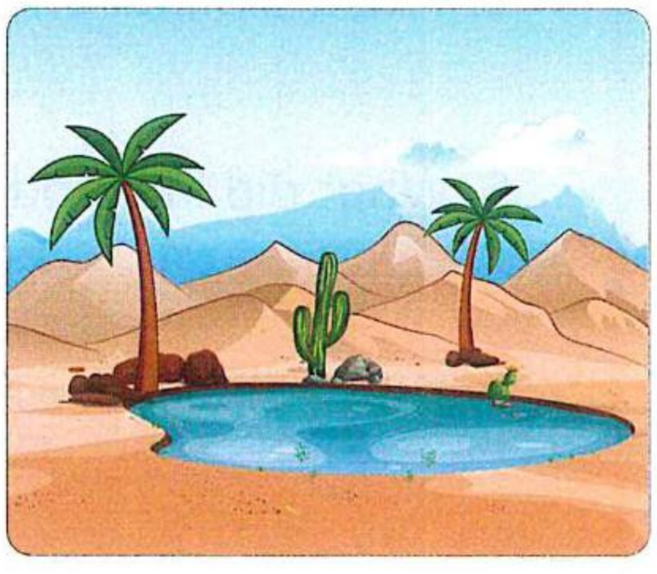
Learn 1. Why can people grow plants in an oasis?
- Because there is water.

Practice 2. How is the weather in the desert ?
.....

▶ **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

### How is an oasis made ? كيف تتكون الواحة ؟

1. Rain falls to the ground. - تسقط الأمطار على الأرض.
2. The rain soaks into the earth. - يتسرب المطر إلى الأرض.
3. The rain makes rivers and lakes under the ground.
   - تصنع الأمطار والأنهار والبحيرات تحت الأرض.
4. Water comes up to the surface of the ground in a spring.
   - يرتفع الماء إلى سطح الأرض فى ينبوع.
5. An oasis is a place where there is a big spring or lots of springs.
   - الواحة هى مكان حيث يوجد ينبوع مياه كبير أو الكثير من الينابيع.



https://t.me/G5_Y5

# General Exercises On Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

comes – hot – soaks – ground – rivers

An oasis is a place where there is a big spring. This is how an oasis is made. Rain falls to the [1] ..... . The rain [2] ..... into the earth. The rain makes [3] ..... and lakes under the ground. Water [4] ..... up to the surface of the ground in a spring.

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I'm Mai. I visited Siwa Oasis with my family last week. We ate lots of fruit. We saw some monuments and swam in the spring.

Siwa Oasis is a very interesting place in the desert. People have lived here for thousands of years. The desert is hot and dry. There's water in the oasis. People can grow trees and plants and look after animals.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

1. The weather is ..... in the desert.

a. cold  b. hot  c. rainy

2. Siwa Oasis is a very ..... place.

a. bad  b. sad  c. interesting

### B. Answer the following questions :

3. What can people grow in Siwa Oasis ?

.....

4. When did Mai and her family visit Siwa Oasis ?

.....

5. What did Mai and her family eat in Siwa Oasis ?

.....

6. How long have people lived in Siwa Oasis ?

.....

https://t.me/G5Y5

## 3 Read, order and write.

اقرأ، رتب واكتب.

A. 1. ate – fruit – We – lots of.

.....

2. animals – can - after - look – People.

.....

B. 1. some – saw - monuments - We.

.....

2. is – special - Why - oasis – an ?

.....

## 4 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Siwa Oasis"**

**Guiding elements :**

- interesting
- live
- water

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5 Y5

LESSONS 2&3

- Reading
- Language use



# I Vocabulary



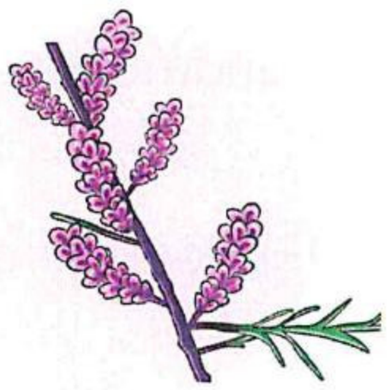

## Key vocabulary



leaves
أوراق شجر



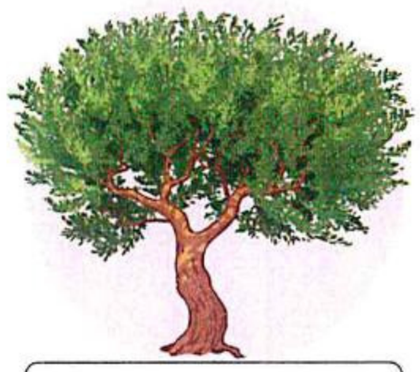
basil ريحان



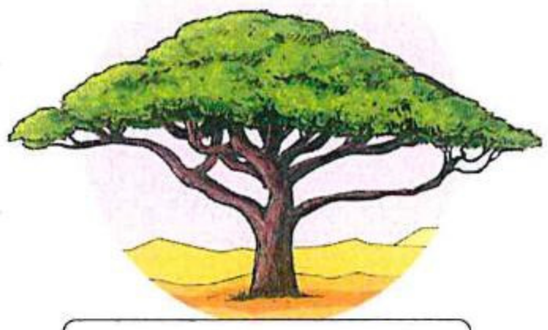
tamarisk
شجرة الطرفاء



herb عشب



olive tree
شجرة زيتون



acacia tree
شجرة السنط / الصمغ



date palm tree
شجرة نخيل



spearmint
نعناع

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| hard | صلب | bowl | إناء عميق (سلطانية) |
| useful | مفيد | spoon | ملعقة |
| sandstorm | عاصفة رملية | shade | ظل |
| as well | أيضًا | medicine | دواء |
| basket | سلة | provide | يمد / يزود |
| pretty | جميل | sell | يبيع |
| dates | تمر / بلح | olive oil | زيت زيتون |
| wood | خشب | | |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Plants at an oasis | plants - trees | There are many different plants and trees at an oasis. |
| | farmers - grow | Farmers grow tall date palm trees. |
| | leaves - baskets | People use the leaves of date palm trees to make baskets. |
| | olives | People eat olives, cook with olives, and make olive oil. |
| | provide - shelter | Acacia trees provide shelter for people and animals. |
| | spearmint | People can grow spearmint in an oasis. |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائى

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c .**

1. We can sit in the ..... of a tree.
   a. fruit  b. shade  c. basket
2. The wood from the olive tree is ..... .
   a. hard  b. plastic  c. cold
3. Basil and spearmint are ..... .
   a. vegetables  b. herbs  c. fruits
4. There are lots of dates on the ..... trees.
   a. palm  b. tamarisk  c. acacia
5. He wants a ..... of soup.
   a. basket  b. spoon  c. bowl

## II Listening and Reading

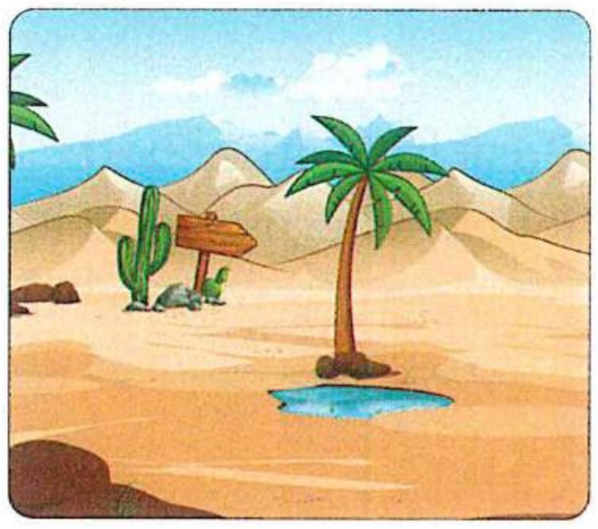
Pop Quiz تدرب على قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

▶ **Look, read and identify.** انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

### What plants can we see at an oasis ?

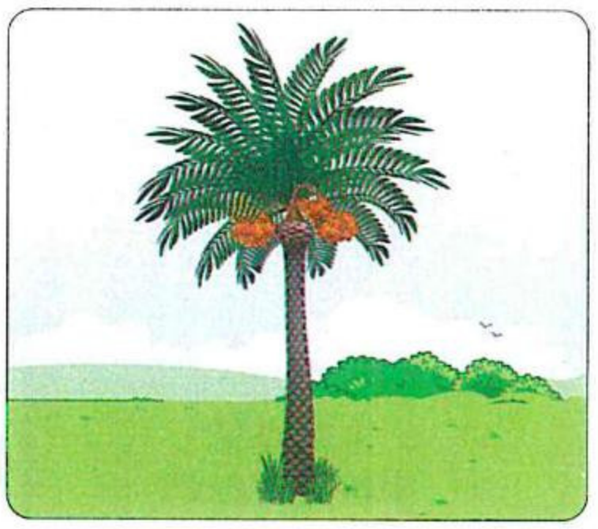
There are many different plants and trees at an **oasis**[1]. They make the oasis a special place. The desert is hot, and the trees and plants give people food, **medicine**[2], and shade.

يوجد العديد من النباتات والأشجار المختلفة فى الواحة. وهذا يجعل من الواحة مكان مميز. الصحراء حارة والأشجار والنباتات تمد الناس بالطعام, الدواء والظل.



Farmers grow tall **date palm trees**[3]. They can sell dates in Egypt and all over the world. We can put **dates**[4] in food or eat them whole. People also use the leaves of date palm trees to make baskets.

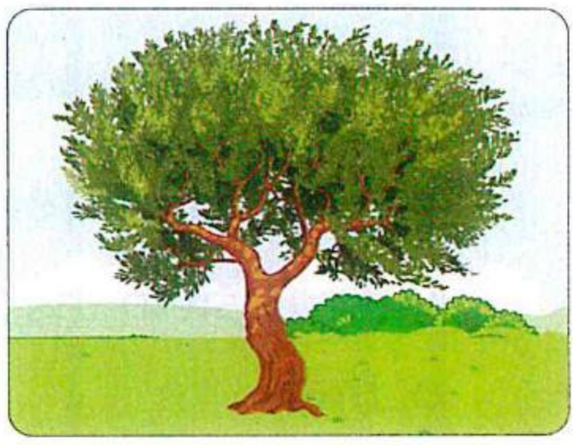
يزرع الفلاحون أشجار النخيل الطويلة. يمكنهم بيع التمر فى مصر وجميع أنحاء العالم. يمكننا أن نضع التمر فى الطعام أو نأكله كاملًا. يستخدم الناس أيضًا أوراق أشجار النخيل فى صنع السلال.



[1] واحة  [2] دواء  [3] شجر النخيل  [4] تمر

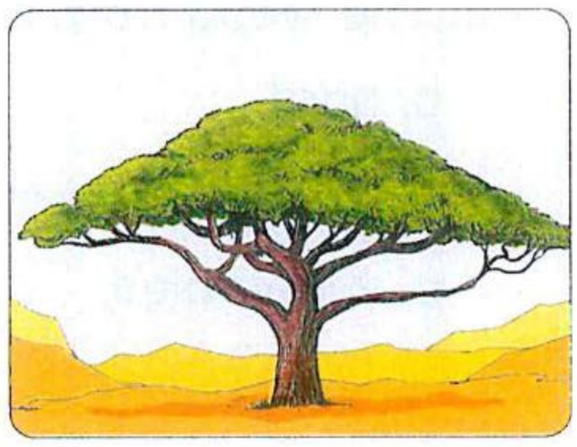
Olive trees grow here as well. People eat **olives**[5], cook with olives, and make olive oil. Olives are very good for you. The **wood**[6] from the olive tree is hard, and we can make useful things from it such as bowls and spoons.

تنمو أشجار الزيتون هنا أيضًا. يأكل الناس الزيتون ويطبخون بالزيتون ويصنعون زيت الزيتون. الزيتون مفيد جدًا لك. الخشب من شجرة الزيتون صلب، ويمكننا أن نصنع منه أشياء مفيدة مثل الأوعية والملاعق.



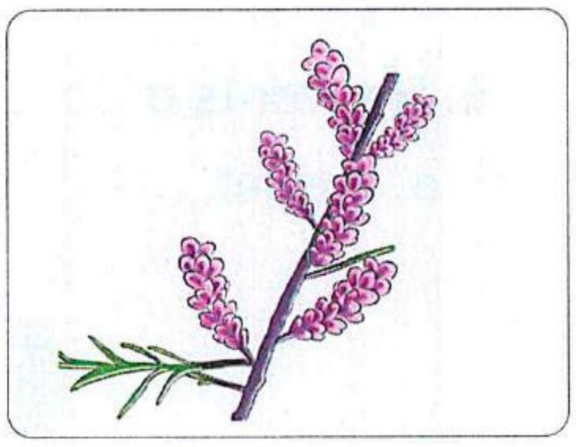
Acacia trees are old and very special. They provide shelter for people and animals. They protect the oasis from sandstorms.

- أشجار السنط قديمة و مميزة جدًا. إنها توفر المأوى للناس والحيوانات. وتحمى الواحة من العواصف الرملية.



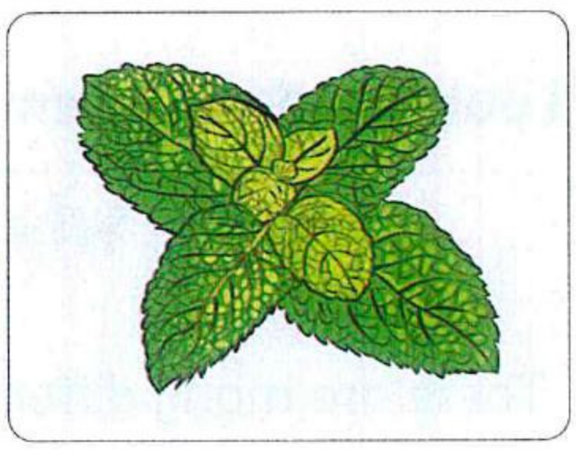
Tamarisk trees also protect the oasis from **sandstorms**[7]. They are smaller than acacia trees and they have pretty pink flowers.

- تحمى أشجار الطرفاء الواحة أيضًا من العواصف الرملية. إنها أصغر من أشجار السنط ولديها أزهار وردية جميلة.



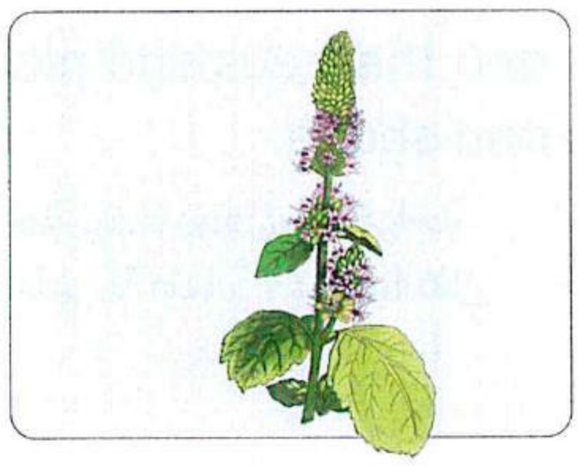
People can grow spearmint in an oasis. This is a herb. It can be a medicine, or you can put it in food or drink.

- يمكن للناس أن يزرعوا النعناع فى الواحة. فهو عشب يمكن استخدامه كدواء أو يمكنك وضعه فى الطعام أو الشراب.



Basil is another herb. It is very good for you. It has lots of vitamins and **minerals**[8] in it, and you can make medicine from its oil. It's **delicious**[9] in food, too!

- الريحان عشب آخر مفيد جدًا لك. يحتوى على الكثير من الفيتامينات والمعادن، ويمكنك صنع الدواء من زيته. إنه لذيذ فى الطعام أيضًا !



[5] زيتون [6] خشب [7] عواصف رملية [8] معادن [9] لذيذ

**Choose the correct answer.**

Learn 1. ..... grow tall date palm trees.
a. Doctors b. Vets c. Farmers

Practice 2. Acacia trees protect the oasis from .....
a. sandstorms b. droughts c. fires

3. ..... can be a medicine, or you can put it in food.
a. Tamarisk b. Spearmint c. Dates

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# III Language

## The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

### Usage الاستخدام

- We use the present perfect tense for unfinished actions and when we talk about past experiences.

- نستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتحدث عن أحداث غير منتهية وعندما نتحدث عن خبرات ماضية.

### Formation التكوين

#### 1 Affirmative statements الجمل المثبتة

| He / She / It | + | has | + | p.p. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|---|

- She has visited an oasis.

| I/We/You/They | + | have | + | p.p. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|---|

- I have climbed a tree.

#### 2 Negative statements الجمل المنفية

| He / She / It | + | hasn't | + | p.p. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|---|

- He hasn't tried swimming in a lake.

| I/We/You/They | + | haven't | + | p.p. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|---|

- They haven't visited an oasis.

[ have = 've ] [ has = 's ]

[ have not = haven't ] [ has not = hasn't ]

- لاحظ الاختصارات :

- She has never climbed a tree.
- I have never eaten dates.

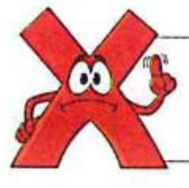
- تستخدم [never] للنفى بمعنى [أبدًا].

#### 3 Yes / No question السؤال بمعنى هل ... ؟

| Have / Has | + | I , we , you , they / he , she , it | + | ever | + | p.p. [التصريف الثالث] ? |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Have | | you | | ever | | seen a spring ? |



Yes, I have.



No, I haven't.

**لاحظ :** نستخدم (ever) فى السؤال بمعنى [من قبل / سبق لك].

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Present مضارع | Past ماضى | Past Participle (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل | Present مضارع | Past ماضى | Past Participle (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| climb | climbed | climbed | make | made | made |
| visit | visited | visited | drink | drank | drunk |
| see | saw | seen | be | was/were | been |
| eat | ate | eaten | go | went | gone |
| take | took | taken | sleep | slept | slept |
| try | tried | tried | get | got | got |
| swim | swam | swum | write | wrote | written |

## Pop Quiz on Language

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

**1.** Mona has ..... an oasis. [Cairo - Ain Shams 2025]

a. visit b. visited c. visits

**2.** Omar and Tamer ..... climbed a tree. [Sohag - Tahta 2025]

a. have b. has c. do

**3.** She ..... never slept in a tent.

a. is b. has c. does

**4.** I have ..... the kitchen.

a. clean b. cleaned c. cleaning

**5.** No, I ..... gone to school.

a. hasn't b. don't c. haven't

**6.** ..... he got a pen ? - Yes, he has.

a. Have b. Has c. Do

**7.** I have never ..... an oasis.

a. see b. seen c. sees

**8.** Have you ..... visited Siwa ?

a. never b. ever c. every

**9.** She has ..... her mom.

a. helped b. helps c. help

**10.** Has she ..... in the sea ?

a. swim b. swum c. swam

**11.** My parents ..... tried camping.

a. has b. do c. have

**12.** We ..... watched a film.

a. has b. are c. have

https://t.me/G5Y5

# General Exercises On Lessons 2 & 3

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**A.** shade – dates – spoon – oasis – grow

There are many different plants and trees at an oasis. They make the [1] ..... a special place. The desert is hot, and the trees and plants give people food, medicine and [2] ..... . Farmers [3] ..... tall date palm trees. They can sell [4] ..... in Egypt and all over the world. We can put dates in food or eat them whole.

[Qalyubia 2025]

**B.** good – bowls – animals – olives – wood

There are many olive trees growing at an oasis. People eat [1] ..... , cook with them, and make olive oil. Olives are very [2] ..... for us. The [3] ..... from the olive tree is hard, and we can make useful things from it such as [4] ..... and spoons.

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

There are many different plants and trees at an oasis. Farmers grow tall date palm trees. They can sell dates in Egypt and all over the world. Acacia trees are old and very special. They provide shelter for people and animals. They protect the oasis from sandstorms. Tamarisk trees are smaller than acacia trees and they have pretty pink flowers. People can grow spearmint in an oasis. This is a herb. It can be a medicine, or you can put it in food or drink. Basil is a herb. It has lots of vitamins and minerals in it, and you can make medicine from its oil.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :**

1. There are different plants in a/an ..... .
   a. oasis  b. river  c. lake
2. ..... has lots of vitamins and minerals.
   a. Basil  b. Tamarisk  c. Acacia

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. What do tamarisk trees have?

   .....

4. How can people use spearmint?

   .....

5. Where can farmers sell dates?

   .....

6. What do acacia trees provide?

   .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

**A. 1.** My father has ..... a laptop. [Qena - Deshna 2025]

a. buy b. bought c. buys

**2.** ..... you ever climbed a mountain ?

a. Have b. Has c. Is

**3.** It's a great movie. I have ..... it many times.

a. see b. saw c. seen

**4.** She hasn't ..... to London since 2016.

a. be b. been c. being

**B. 1.** Have you ever seen a lion ? - No, I ..... .

a. hasn't b. haven't c. aren't

**2.** I have ..... eaten fish.

a. never b. ever c. for

**3.** ..... you ever seen a spring ?

a. Do b. Have c. Are

**4.** Have you ..... traveled to Aswan ?

a. never b. ever c. every

## 4 Read, order and write.

**A. 1.** pretty – have – Tamarisk trees – pink – flowers.

.....

**2.** tall – trees – grow - Farmers – date palm.

.....

**B. 1.** Oasis – you – visited – ever – Siwa – Have ?

.....

**2.** vitamins – has – minerals - Basil – lots of – and.

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Acacia trees"**

**Guiding elements :**

- old
- shelter
- protect

.....

.....

.....

.....

LESSONS 4&5

- Life skills and values
- Reading



# I Vocabulary




## Key vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| water cycle | دورة المياه | salt water | مياه مالحة |
| condensation | عملية التكثيف | fresh water | مياه عذبة |
| evaporation | عملية التبخر | ocean | محيط |
| precipitation | سقوط [هطول] الأمطار | experiment | تجربة |

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| beaker | دورق / كأس | heat | حرارة | process | عملية |
| hills | تلال | empty | فارغ | liquid | سائل |
| runoff | جريان الماء | air | هواء | wind | رياح |
| stages | مراحل | drops | قطرات | | |
| clouds | سحب | mountains | جبال | | |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| evaporate | يتبخر | evaporated |
| flow | يتدفق | flowed |
| heat | يسخن | heated |
| join | ينضم | joined |

**Irregular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| rise | يرتفع | rose |
| fall | يسقط | fell |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| • come back | يعود | • run down | يجرى إلى أسفل |
| • rise up into | يرتفع إلى | • types of | أنواع من |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Rivers, seas, and oceans | fresh - salt | There are two types of liquid water-fresh water and salt water. |
| | rivers - lakes | Rivers and lakes have fresh water. |
| | seas - oceans | Seas and oceans have salt water. |
| | rain - moving | Rivers don't have salt water because the rain keeps fresh water moving through them. |

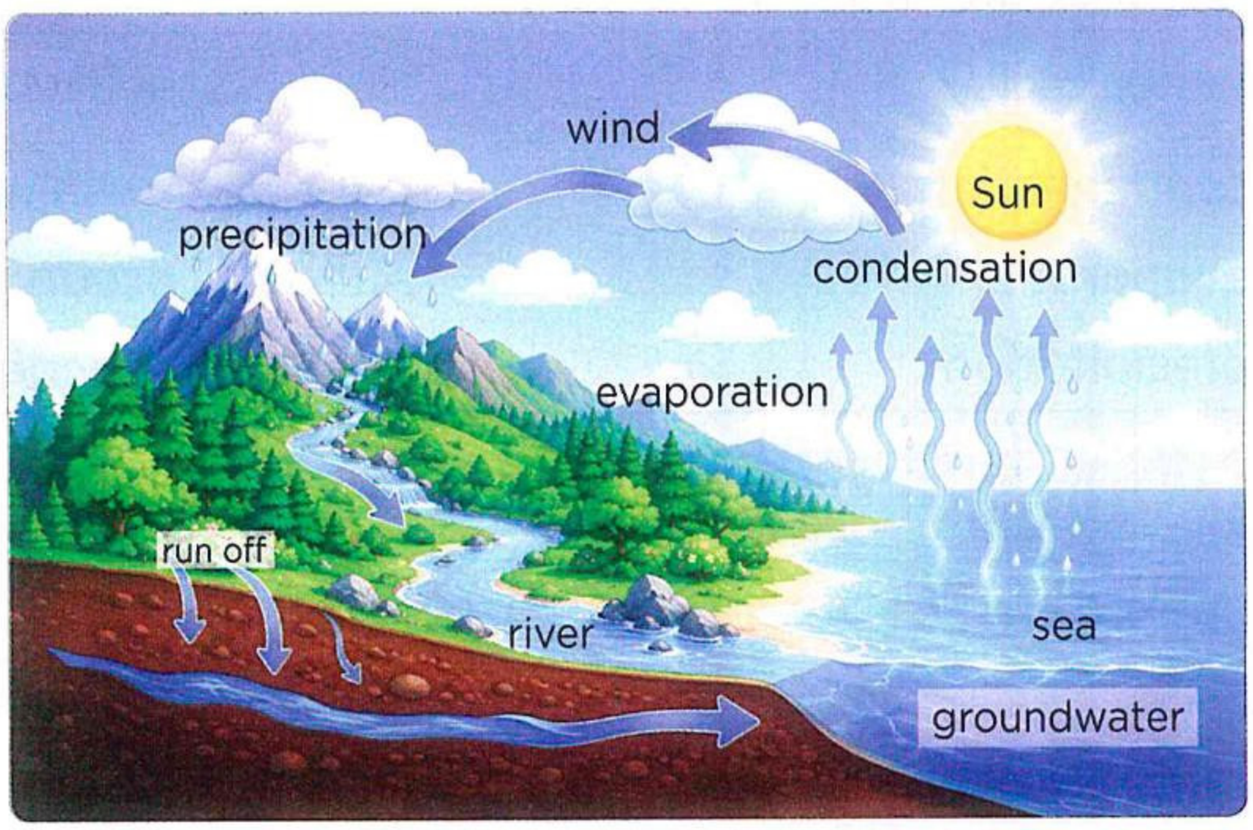
## II Listening and Reading

▶ **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

### The Water Cycle دورة المياه

Where does water come from ? Water travels from the land to the sea, in a process called the **Water Cycle**.

من أين تأتى المياه؟ ينتقل الماء من الأرض إلى البحر فى عملية تسمى دورة المياه.




**These are the stages:**

هذه هى المراحل:

**Evaporation :** Heat from the sun makes very small drops of water in the sea, lakes, and rivers. These then rise up into the air.

**عمليـة التبخـر :** تؤدى حرارة الشـمس إلى تكون قطرات صغـيرة جدًا من الماء فى البحـار والبحيرات والأنهـار، ثم ترتفع هذه القطرات إلى أعلى فى الهواء.

**Condensation :** As the air rises, it starts to cool. This makes the very small drops of water into larger drops. These join together to make clouds.

**التكثيف :** عندما يرتفع الهواء، يبدأ فى التبريد. هذا يجعل قطرات الماء الصغيرة جدًا تكبر. فتتحد هذه القطرات معًا لتكون سحب.

**Precipitation :** Wind moves the clouds in the sky. The clouds get bigger and heavier. Precipitation is when water falls from the clouds as rain, or snow.

**هطول الأمطار :** الرياح تحرك السحب فى السماء. السحب تصبح أكبر وأثقل. الهطول هو عندما يسقط الماء من السحب كأمطار أو ثلج.

When rain falls on high ground, it runs down mountains and hills as rivers. Rivers run to the sea, and the cycle starts again with evaporation.

عندما تهطل الأمطار على أرض مرتفعة، فإنها تنساب عبر الجبال والتلال كالأنهار. تنساب الأنهار إلى البحر، وتبدأ دورة المياه مجددًا بالتبخر.

Some water soaks into the ground. It flows into rivers and lakes that are under the ground. These can come back onto the ground as a spring. The water evaporates, and the cycle starts again.

تتسرب بعض المياه إلى الأرض. تتدفق هذه المياه إلى الأنهار والبحيرات الموجودة تحت الأرض. يمكن أن تعود إلى سطح الأرض كينبوع. تتبخر المياه وتبدأ دورة المياه مرة أخرى.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

https://t.me/G5_Y5

▶ **Look, read and identify.** انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

## Rivers, Seas, and Oceans

There are two types of liquid water – **fresh water**[1] and **salt water**[2]. Rivers and lakes have fresh water in them. The water comes from **precipitation**[3] and springs. Seas and oceans have salt water in them, because rain washes **minerals**[4] from the land and from rocks. These minerals go into the sea in **runoff** [5] water. Rivers don't have salt water because the rain keeps fresh water moving through them.





[1] مياه عذبة
[2] مياه مالحة
[3] هطول الأمطار
[4] معادن
[5] جريان الماء

هناك نوعين من المياه السائلة - المياه العذبة والمياه المالحة. الأنهار والبحيرات بهم مياه عذبه. تأتى المياه من هطول الأمطار ومن الينابيع. تحتوى البحار والمحيطات على مياه مالحة، لأن المطر يغسل المعادن من الأرض ومن الصخور. تذهب هذه المعادن إلى البحر فى عملية جريان الماء. لا تحتوى الأنهار على مياه مالحة لأن المطر يحافظ على تدفق المياه العذبة عبر الانهار.

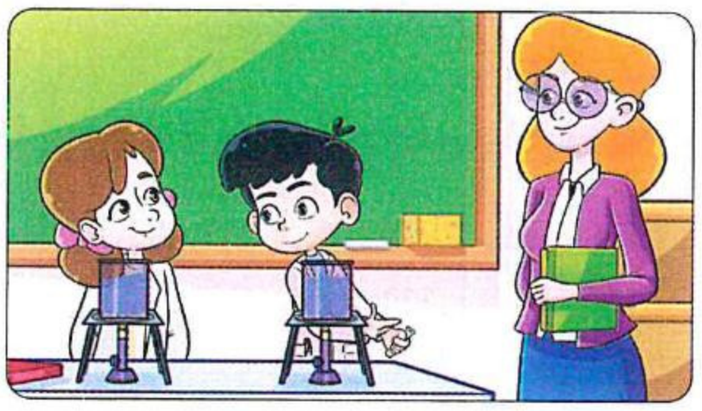
▶ **Look, read and learn.** انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

## What can the children see in the experiments ?

ماذا يمكن للأطفال أن يروا فى التجارب ؟

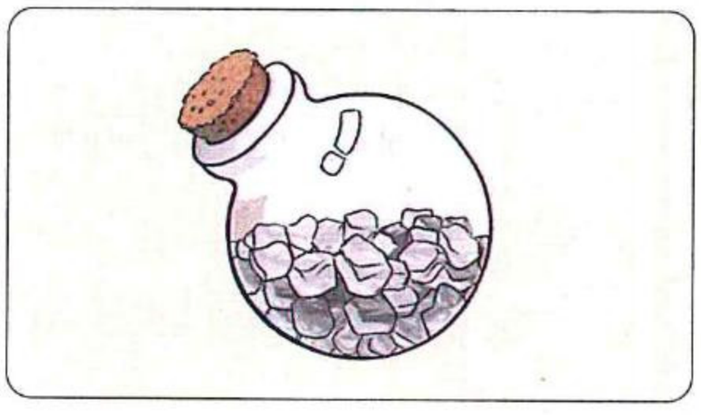
**1** We've done an experiment in our science class. We put salt water in one beaker, and fresh water in another beaker. We heated the water in the beakers. Look what has happened !

لقد أجرينا تجربة فى حصة العلوم. وضعنا الماء المالح فى دورق والماء العذب فى دورق آخر. قمنا بتسخين الماء فى الكؤوس. انظر ماذا حدث !



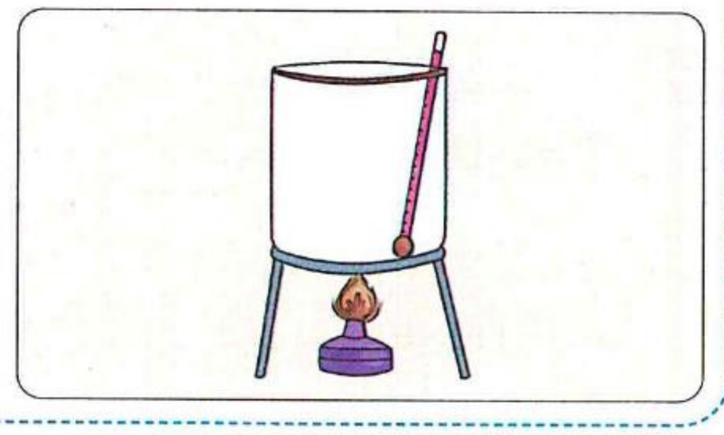
**2** The water has evaporated and we can see the salt.

لقد تبخرت المياه ويمكننا رؤية الملح.



**3** The water has evaporated. The beaker is empty.

تبخر الماء والدورق فارغًا.



# General Exercises On Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

river – beaker – heated – experiment - evaporated

I am Ali. My favorite subject is science. We've done an [1] ..... in our science class. We put salt water in one [2] ..... , and fresh water in another beaker. We [3] ..... the water in the beakers. In the first beaker, the water has [4] ..... and we can see the salt. In the second beaker, the water has evaporated. The beaker is empty.

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

There are two types of liquid water – fresh water and salt water. Rivers and lakes have fresh water in them. The water comes from precipitation and springs. Seas and oceans have salt water in them, because rain washes minerals from the land and from rocks. These minerals go into the sea in runoff water. Rivers don't have salt water because the rain keeps fresh water moving through them.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

1. ..... have salt water.

a. Rivers b. Oceans c. Lakes

2. There are ..... types of liquid water.

a. two b. three c. four

### B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where can you find fresh water ?

.....

4. Why do seas and oceans have salt water ?

.....

5. Where does fresh water in rivers and lakes come from ?

.....

6. What are the different types of water ?

.....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Have you ever ..... a panda ? [Cairo - East Nasr City 2025]

a. see b. sees c. seen

2. I have ..... new friends this year.

a. makes b. made c. make

3. My brother ..... never seen this film.

a. have  b. has  c. are

4. Has she ..... video games ?

a. play  b. plays  c. played

## 4 Read, order and write.

اقرأ، رتب واكتب.

A. 1. come – does – water – Where – from ?

.....

2. the sky – in – moves – Wind – the clouds.

.....

B. 1. can – What – see – the experiment – children – the – in ?

.....

2. two – water – There – types of – are – liquid.

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Types of water"**

**Guiding elements :**

• salt  • fresh  • rain

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

LESSON 6

# Learn Sounds with Busy Bee!

## Phonics

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

**Look and listen.** انظر واستمع.

er → /ə/

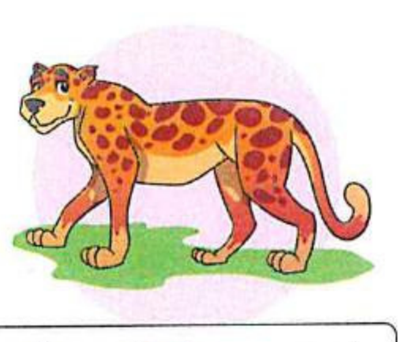


water مياه

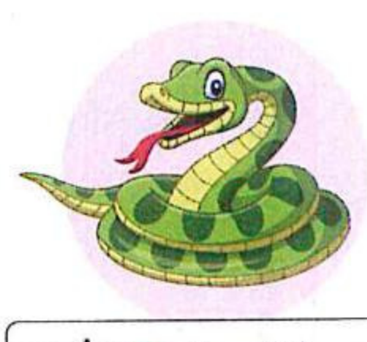


shelter مأوى

a → /ə/



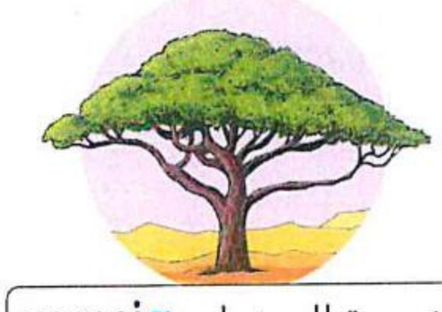
cheetah فهد



cobra أفعى الكوبرا



river نهر



acacia شجرة السنط

ar → /ə/



polar قطب

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## Pop Quiz on Phonics

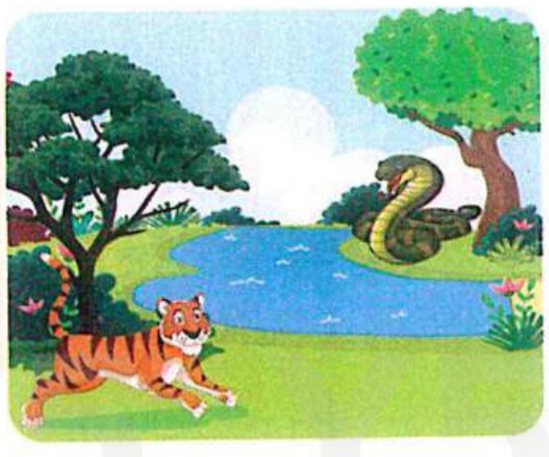
05 min

**1 Listen and write the missing sounds.**

1. cobr _
2. wat _ _
3. pol _ _
4. shelt _ _

**2 Look, read and complete.** انظر، اقرأ واكمل.

The cheet _ _ is taking shelt _ _ under an acacia tree. It's looking at the cob _ _ near the wat _ _



https://t.me/GS_13

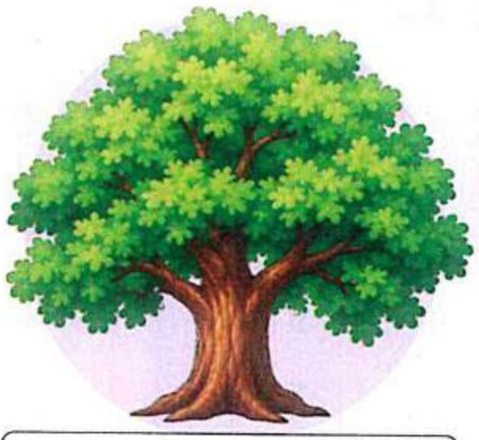
LESSON 7

# Story : The Oak and the Reed

## I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

### Key vocabulary



oak شجرة بلوط



reed قصب



trunk جذع شجرة



wind رياح

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| thick | سميك | storm | عاصفة | straight | بشكل مستقيم |
| suddenly | فجأة | crack | انكسار / تشقق | alive | على قيد الحياة |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Irregular**

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bend | ينحني | bent | stand | يقف | stood |
| break | يكسر / ينكسر | broke | begin | يبدأ | began |
| fall | يسقط | fell | blow | تهب | blew |

### Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| stay safe | يبقى آمنًا | blow harder | تهب بقوة كبيرة |
| bend low | ينحنى لاسفل | grow stronger | يصبح أقوى |

### Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة علي نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| The oak and the reed | oak - river | A strong oak tree and a small reed grew near a quiet river. |
| | never - wind | The oak tree never bent, but the reed bent when the wind blew. |
| | storm | A big storm came and the wind blew harder and harder. |
| | break - ground | The oak tree broke and fell on the ground. |
| | stand straight | The reed stood straight after the storm. |

## II Listening and Reading




▶ **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

### The Oak and the Reed

There was a tall **oak tree**[1] near a quiet river. It had a thick **trunk**[2] and it looked strong. A small reed grew next to the river. It was thin and soft.

The oak tree said, "I am strong. I never **bend**[3]. The wind can't move me."

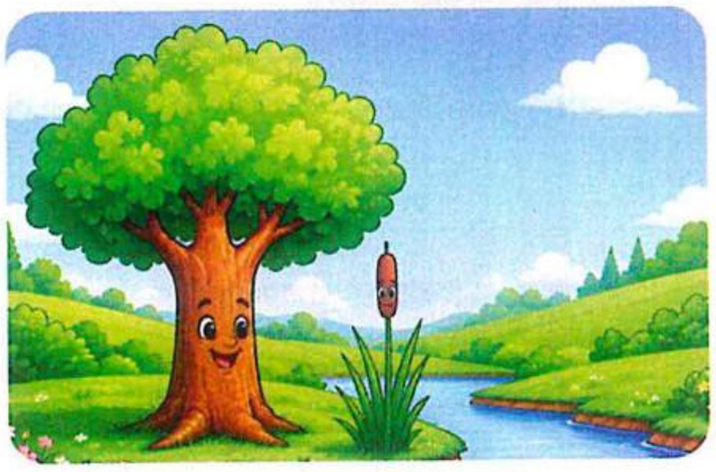
The reed replied, "I bend when the wind **blows**[4]. And I stay safe."

One day, it began to rain and soon there was a big **storm**[5]. The wind blew harder and harder. The strong oak tree didn't bend. The reed bent low with the wind.

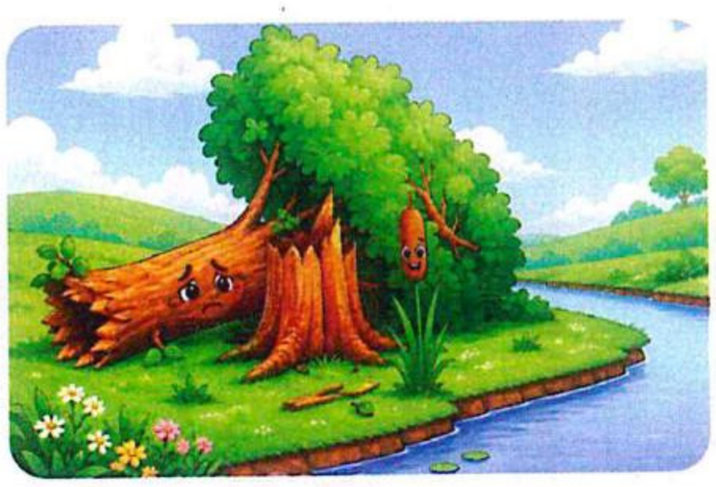
The storm grew stronger. **Suddenly**[6], there was a loud **crack**[7]! The oak tree broke and fell on the ground.

After the storm, the small reed slowly stood straight. "I bent with the wind," she said" and I am **alive**[8].









كان هناك شجرة بلوط طويلة تنمو بالقرب من نهر هادئ. لها جذع سميك، ولذلك بدت قوية. وبالقرب من النهر تنمو قصبة صغيرة، وكانت رفيعة وناعمة. قالت شجرة البلوط: "أنا قوية، ولا أنحني أبدًا. فالرياح لا تستطيع أن تحركني." أجابت القصبة: "أنا أنحني عندما تهب الرياح، وأبقى آمنة." في أحد الأيام، بدأ المطر يهطل، وسرعان ما هبت عاصفة قوية. واشتدت الرياح أكثر فأكثر. ولم تنحنِ شجرة البلوط القوية، بينما انحنت القصبة لاسفل مع الرياح. ازدادت العاصفة قوة. وفجأة، سمع صوت فرقعة عالٍ. لقد كسرت شجرة البلوط وسقطت على الأرض. بعد انتهاء العاصفة، اعتدلت القصبة الصغيرة ببطء وقالت: "لقد انحنيت مع الرياح، ولذلك ما زلت على قيد الحياة."

[1] شجرة بلوط [2] جذع شجرة [3] ينحنى [4] تهب [5] عاصفة [6] فجأة [7] انكسار [8] على قيد الحياة



**The Moral of the story**

It's good to change sometimes.
من الجيد أن تتغير فى بعض الأحيان.

**Choose the correct answer.**

Learn 1. The oak tree had a thick ..... .
a. leaf b. flower c. trunk

Practice 2. The oak tree broke and fell on the ..... .
a. ground b. lake c. river

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# General Exercises

On Lesson 7

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. shelt _ _ | 2. acaci _ | 3. pol _ _ | 4. cheet _ h

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

blew - thick - storm - reed - bent

A tall oak tree and a small reed grew near a quiet river. The oak tree had a [1] ..... trunk. It never [2] ..... . The small [3] ..... was soft and thin. It bent when the wind [4] ..... One day, there was a storm and the oak tree broke and fell on the ground.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Have you ..... Paris ?
   a. visit  b. visited  c. visits

2. The children have ..... all the cake.
   a. eat  b. eats  c. eaten

3. Have you ..... traveled by boat ?
   a. ever  b. every  c. never

4. He ..... not cleaned his room yet.
   a. has  b. have  c. are

## 4 Read, order and write.

A. 1. tree - The oak - strong – looked.

.....

2. bent - The reed – wind - with - the.

.....

B. 1. reed – stood – The small - straight

.....

2. fell - the ground – on - The oak tree.

.....

https://t.me/G5 Y5

LESSON 8

# Skills

## I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

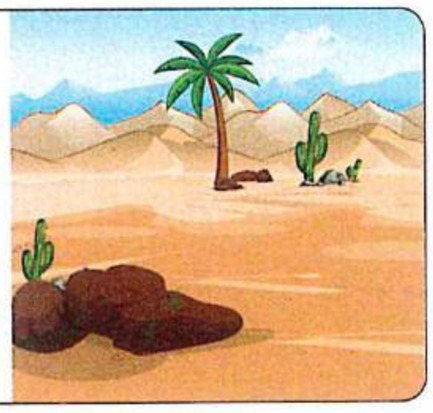



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tropical zone | المنطقة الاستوائية | polar zone | المنطقة القطبية |
| temperate zone | المنطقة المعتدلة | lead to | يؤدى إلى |

## II Listening and Reading

▶ **Look, read and identify.** انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

1 It doesn't often rain in the desert.



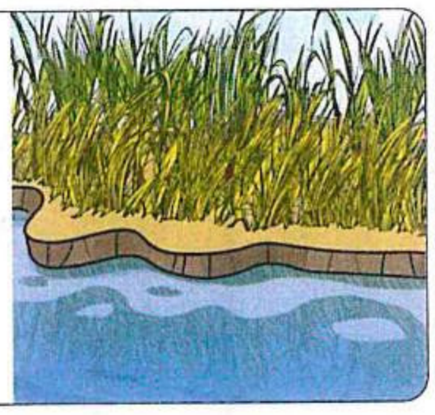
2 There is a lot of rain in fall and winter, but there is less in spring and summer. It's a temperate zone.



3 The water in polar zone is ice.



4 There is water on the ground. It's a wetland.



5 There is a lot of rain in tropical zone for most of the year.



https://t.me/G5_15

# General Exercises

On Lesson 8

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى **نهاية الكتاب**

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. pol _ _ | 2. riv _ _ | 3. cobr _ | 4. shelt _ _

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

polar – desert – rain – zone – farther

Different places on Earth have different climates. In the temperate zone, there is a lot of rain in fall and winter. There is less (1) ..... in spring and summer. In the tropical (2) ....., there is a lot of rain for most of the year. The water in the (3) ..... zone is ice. It doesn't often rain in the (4) ..... .

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. She ..... finished her homework already.
   a. has  b. have  c. are

2. We have ..... that movie three times.
   a. see  b. seen  c. sees

3. My brother has ..... five books this month.
   a. reads  b. read  c. to read

4. They have ..... eaten Indian food before.
   a. never  b. ever  c. every

## 4 Read, order and write.

A. 1. in – zone – ice – The water – is – polar.

.....

2. a lot – winter – There – of – in – is – rain.

.....

B. 1. water – the ground – on – There's .

.....

2. doesn't – rain – in the desert – It – often.

.....

LESSON 9

# CLIL : Science

▸ **Look, read and identify.** انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

## Rainfall around the world

Different countries around the world have different amounts of rain.
We measure this in millimeters (mm) per year.



| | Rainfall (mm per year) |
|---|---|
| Egypt | 51 mm/year |
| Atacama Desert, Chile | 12 mm/year |
| Colombia | 3,240 mm/year |
| Australia | 534 mm/year |
| The United Kingdom | 1,220 mm/year |

▸ **Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

How much rainfall do these countries have a year ?

ما كمية الأمطار التى تسقط كل سنة فى هذه الدول؟

| Countries | Rainfall (mm per year) |
|---|---|
| New Zealand | 1,732 mm/year |
| Sudan | 250 mm / year |
| Bangladesh | 2,666 mm/year |
| Spain | 636 mm/year |
| Saudi Arabia | 59 mm/year |
| Brazil | 1,761 mm/year |

**Notice** 1 centimeter (cm) is equal to 10 millimeters (mm).

لاحظ أن : ١ سنتيمتر يساوى ١٠ ملليمتر.

- الدول المختلفة حول العالم لديها كميات مختلفة من الأمطار. نحن نقيسها بالملليمتر كل سنة.

# Skills 1 How to write about certain topics




كيفية كتابة الفقرات الإنشائية ← اتباع الخطوات التالية يساعدك على تكوين فقرة إنشائية :

١. تكوين حصيلة من المفردات اللغوية. ٢. إتقان تكوين الجمل. ٣. بعد اتباع الخطوات السابقة يمكنك كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

**Siwa Oasis**

| Step 1 Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية: | Step 2 Sentences<br>متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية: | Step 3 Writing<br>متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية أكتب فقرة إنشائية: |
|---|---|---|
| **Write the meaning :**<br>..... واحة سيوة<br>..... شيق / ممتع<br>..... صحراء<br>..... نبات<br>..... ينمو | **Reorder the words :**<br>1. Oasis - a - interesting - **Siwa** - very - is - place.<br>.....<br>2. is - desert - **Siwa** - in - Oasis - the.<br>.....<br>3. can - plants - **People** - trees - grow - and.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"Siwa Oasis"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |

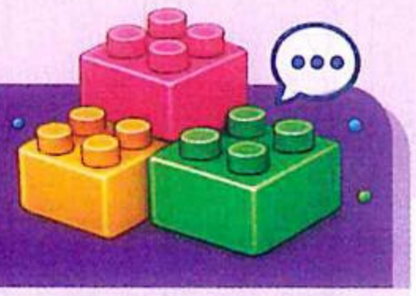
**Different plants**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ..... شجرة السنط<br>..... شجرة الطرفاء<br>..... دواء<br>..... عاصفة رملية<br>..... نعناع | 4. trees - people - **Acacia** - shelter - provide - for.<br>.....<br>5. trees - **Tamarisk** - the oasis - protect - sandstorms - from.<br>.....<br>6. give - medicine - **Plants** - food - people - and.<br>.....<br>7. can - food - spearmint - in - **We** - put.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"Different plants"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |

**Types of water**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ..... سائل<br>..... مياه عذبة<br>..... مياه مالحة<br>..... محيط<br>..... نهر | 8. are - water - liquid - **There** - types - two - of.<br>.....<br>9. and - have - **Rivers** - lakes - water - fresh.<br>.....<br>10. oceans - water - **Seas** - have - and - salt.<br>.....<br>11. keeps - water - **The rain** - fresh - the river - in.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"Types of water"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |

# 2 Sentence Building



الهدف من هذا الجزء تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

## ١ الجملة الخبريـة

**1 Subject Detective**

مين صاحب الفعل؟

**ابحث عن الفاعل**

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. Farmers
   فاعل الجملة الاولى
2. The oak tree
   فاعل الجملة الثالثة



الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

1. grow - trees - palm - **Farmers** - date - tall.
2. olives - **People** - with - cook.
3. tree - trunk - a - **The oak** - had - thick.
4. ice - is - **The water** - polar - in - zone.

| | 1 فاعـل | 2 فعـل | 3 باقـى الجملـة. |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | | grow | |
| 2. | | | with olives. |
| 3. | | | |
| 4. | The water | | |

**2 Verb Hunter**

بيعمل إيه؟

**ابحث عن الفعل**

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. cook
   فعل الجملة الثانية
2. is
   فعل الجملة الرابعة



الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

## ٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

**3 Helper Team**

مين بيساعدنا؟

**الأفعال المساعدة**

**Can** تستخدم مع:
I, you, we, they, he, she, it

**Have** تستخدم مع:
you, we, they



الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

1. plants - we - **What** - can - at - see - an oasis ?
2. you - climbed - **Have** - ever - mountain - a ?
3. is - made - oasis - **How** - an ?
4. farmers - **Where** - dates - sell - can ?

| | 1 كلمة استفهام | 2 فعل مساعد | 3 فاعـل | 4 فعل | 5 باقى السؤال ؟ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | What plants | | | | |
| 2. | | | | | |
| 3. | | | | | |
| 4. | | | | | |

**4 The Wh-Team**

نسأل ازاى؟

**أدوات الاستفهام**

- Where [أين]: للسؤال عن المكان.
- What [ما/ماذا]: للسؤال عن شيئ.



أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائمًا في بداية السؤال.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# 3 Important Topics



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [١٨ جملة].

## 1 Siwa Oasis

Siwa Oasis is a very interesting place in the desert[1]. People have lived there for thousands of years[2]. People can grow trees and plants, and look after animals[3].

## 2 Different plants and trees at an oasis

There are many different plants and trees at an oasis[4]. The trees and plants give people food, medicine, and shade[5]. Olive trees and date palm trees grow at an oasis[6].

## 3 Types of liquid water

Salt water and fresh water are two types of liquid water[7]. Rivers and lakes have fresh water in them[8]. Seas and oceans have salt water in them[9].

## 4 The water cycle

Water travels from the land to the sea, in a process called the water cycle[10]. Heat from the sun makes very small drops of water[11]. These drops rise up into the air[12]. Water starts to cool and make very small drops of water into larger drops[13]. Then water falls from the clouds as rain[14].

## 5 Different climates

It doesn't often rain in the desert [15]. In the temperate zone, there is a lot of rain in fall and winter [16]. There is less rain in spring and summer [17]. The water in the polar zone is ice [18].

**From Sentences to Topics**

- Start with a capital letter.
- Use the correct tense.
- Put the words in the correct order.
- End with a full stop.





# Review through the Exam on Unit 5

**مراجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتدريبات**

## 25 Vocabulary

أهم 25 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| desert | صحراء | basil | ريحان | ocean | محيط |
| spring | ينبوع | herb | عشب | oak | شجرة البلوط |
| soak | يغمر / يبلل | fresh water | مياه عذبة | reed | قصب |
| Siwa Oasis | واحة سيوة | salt water | مياه مالحة | trunk | جذع شجرة |
| shade | ظل | water cycle | دورة المياه | tropical zone | المنطقة الاستوائية |
| acacia tree | شجرة السنط | condensation | عملية التكثيف | temperate zone | المنطقة المعتدلة |
| tamarisk | شجرة الطرفاء | evaporation | عملية التبخر | experiment | تجربة |
| sandstorm | عاصفة رملية | precipitation | سقوط الأمطار | | |
| spearmint | نعناع | thick | سميك | | |

## 10 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعًا فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان

1. The desert[1] is hot and dry.
2. Siwa Oasis[2] is an interesting place in the desert.
3. Plants give people food, medicine, and shade[3].
4. Acacia trees[4] provide shelter for people and animals.
5. Tamarisk trees[5] protect the oasis from sandstorms.
6. Spearmint[6] is a herb.
7. Basil[7] has lots of vitamins and minerals.
8. Rivers and lakes have fresh water[8].
9. Seas and oceans have salt water[9].
10. There is a lot of rain in tropical zone[10] for most of the year.

[1] الفيوم - إبشواى [2] كتاب الطالب [3] الجيزه - الهرم [4] القاهرة - الزاوية [5] كتاب الطالب
[6] دمياط - عزبة البرج [7] المنوفية - تلا [8] الاسكندرية - برج العرب [9] الغربية - غرب طنطا [10] كتاب التدريبات

https://t.me/GS_45

## Phonics through the Exam

الصوتيات الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز اى امتحان].

/ə/



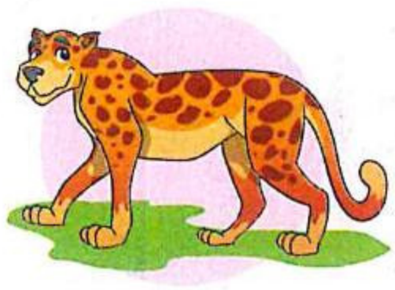
water



cobra



river



cheetah

## Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

## The Present Perfect Tense

### 1 Affirmative statements

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| He / She / It | + | has ['s] | + | p.p. التصريف الثالث |
| I/We/You/They | + | have ['ve] | + | p.p. التصريف الثالث |

### 2 Negative statements

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| He / She / It | + | hasn't | + | p.p. التصريف الثالث |
| I/We/You/They | + | haven't | + | p.p. التصريف الثالث |

### 3 Yes / No question السؤال بمعنى هل ... ؟

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Have<br>Has | + | I , we , you , they<br>he , she , it | + | ever | + | p.p. [التصريف الثالث] ? |

## Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعًا
فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان

1. She has visited an oasis.
2. I have climbed a tree.
3. He hasn't tried swimming in a lake.
4. Have you ever seen a spring ?
5. Has he ever climbed a mountain ?
   - No, he hasn't.
6. I have cleaned the kitchen.
7. Noha hasn't taken her medicine.
8. I have eaten two sandwiches.
9. He has visited the museum.
10. Have you ever visited an oasis ?

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| [1] كتاب الطالب | [2] دمياط - الروضه | [3] الغربية - قطور | [4] كتاب الطالب | [5] القاهرة - عابدين |
| [6] القاهرة - المرج | [7] الشرقية - الصالحية | [8] الجيزه - اطفيح | [9] كتاب التدريبات | [10] الاسكندرية - الجمرك |

# Sample Test 9

**On Unit 5**



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع
**فى نهاية الكتاب**

**اختبار المعاصر**

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. acaci _ | 2. cobr _ | 3. cheet _ h | 4. wat _ _

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

vitamins – medicine – fresh – good – food

Basil is a herb. It is very [1] ..... for people. It has lots of [2] ..... and minerals in it. We can make [3] ..... from its oil. It's delicious in [4] ..... , too.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Water travels from the land to the sea, in a process called the water cycle. Heat from the sun makes very small drops of water in the sea, lakes, and rivers. These then rise up into the air.

As the air rises, it starts to cool. This makes the very small drops of water into larger drops. These drops join together to make clouds. Wind moves the clouds in the sky. The clouds get bigger and heavier. Precipitation is when water falls from the clouds as rain, or snow. When rain falls on high ground, it runs down mountains and hills as rivers.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:**

1. Water travels from the land to the ..... , in a process called the water cycle.
   a. sea  b. desert  c. forest
2. Rain runs down mountains and hills as ..... .
   a. camps  b. caves  c. rivers

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. What is precipitation ?

.....

4. What happens when the air rises ?

.....

5. What moves the clouds in the sky ?

.....

6. What do larger drops of water make ?

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## 4 The Reader

### A. Read and match.

| [A] | | [B] |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Fares put on a | • | ☐ a. the fish. |
| 2. Fares fed | • | ☐ b. mask and snorkeled. |

### B. Read and write [Yes] or [No].

1. Fares enjoyed watching the fish. [.....]
2. Fares's family packed their things for a day at the park. [.....]

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Have you ..... visited an oasis ?
   a. never b. ever c. usually
2. She hasn't ..... her homework yet.
   a. finished b. finish c. finishes
3. He has already ..... the museum.
   a. visit b. visits c. visited
4. They ..... already eaten the dinner.
   a. have b. has c. is

## 6 Read, order and write.

1. washes – Rain – from - minerals - the land.

.....

2. and - are – Acacia trees – special - old.

.....

## 7 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Different climates"**

**Guiding elements :**

- rain
- desert
- winter

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Sample Test 10 On Unit 5



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات
**فى نهاية الكتاب**

اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. wat _ _ | 2. cobr _ | 3. acaci _ | 4. riv _ _

[Beni Suef - El Fashn - El Wasta / Monufia - Birket El Sabaa - Sadat 2025]

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box. [Minya - Beni mazar 2026]

oceans - salt - precipitation - hot - lakes

There are two types of liquid water- fresh water and [1] ..... water. Rivers and [2] ..... have fresh water in them. The water comes from [3] ..... and springs. Seas and [4] ..... have salt water in them.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

An oasis is an interesting place in the desert. The desert is hot and dry, but in an oasis there is water. This makes the oasis a special place. Trees and plants give people food, medicine, and shade. The oasis is made when rain falls to the ground and soaks into the earth. It makes rivers and lakes under the ground. Then, water comes up to the surface in a spring. There are many different trees and plants at an oasis. Farmers grow tall date palm trees. They sell dates and make baskets from the leaves of date palm trees. People can visit Siwa Oasis, see monuments and swim in the spring.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

1. The desert is hot and ..... .
   a. rainy  b. dry  c. cold
2. ..... makes rivers and lakes under the ground.
   a. Rain  b. Heat  c. Wind

### B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why is an oasis a special place ?

   .....

4. How do trees and plants help people in the oasis ?

   .....

5. What can people make from the leaves of date palm trees ?

   .....

6. What can people see when they visit Siwa Oasis ? [Giza - South Giza 2026]

   .....

## 4 The Reader

### A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares could see lots of [Giza - South Giza 2025] | ☐ a. a fish tank. |
| 2. Fares's dad bought him [Minya – Beni Mazar 2025] | ☐ b. fish under the water. |

### B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares learned the names of the different types of fish. [Cairo – Heliopolis 2025] ☐
2. Dad and Dalia had a surprise for Fares. [Cairo - Ain Shams 2025] ☐

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. She ..... never eaten olives. [Minya - Beni Mazar 2025]

a. have b. hasn't c. has

2. I have never ..... cola. [Cairo - Badr 2026]

a. drink b. drank c. drunk

3. The monkey has ..... bananas. [Giza - 6th of October 2025]

a. eat b. eaten c. ate

4. Has Omar visited the Pyramids ? - No, he ..... . [Ismailia – Qassasin 2025]

a. have b. haven't c. hasn't

## 6 Read, order and write.

1. They – never – have – a – mountain – climbed. [Monufia - Monuf 2025]

.....

2. in – have – We – an experiment – done – class – science. [Aswan -Nasr El Noba 2025]

.....

## 7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Water cycle"**

**Guiding elements :**

- heat
- rise up
- clouds

.....

.....

.....

.....

[Sohag – Maragha 2026]



**تنويه**

- علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
- علامة AB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التدريبات

UNIT

6

# What is a flood ?

## ما هو الفيضان ؟

### Unit Six Objectives

**Vocabulary**

- barrier, canal, drain, aqueducts, desalination, waterwheel, collapse, ruin, cooperative

- حاجز ، قناة مائية، مصرف مائى، قنوات نقل المياه، تحلية المياه، ساقية، ينهار، يدمر/يحطم، متعاون

**Language**

- There is too much water.
- There isn't enough water.

- يوجد الكثير من الماء.
- لا يوجد كمية كافية من الماء.

**Reading and stories**

- An interview with an emergency responder
- A text about water engineering
- Story : The Empty Pot

- مقابلة مع أحد مستجيبى الطوارئ [رجال الإسعاف أو الإنقاذ]
- نص عن هندسة المياه
- قصة «الإناء الفارغ»

**Phonics**

- - ous : dangerous, generous, nervous

- خطير، كريم/معطاء ، متوتر/ عصبى

https://t.me/G5_YE

LESSONS 1&2

- Vocabulary
- Language use

# I Vocabulary

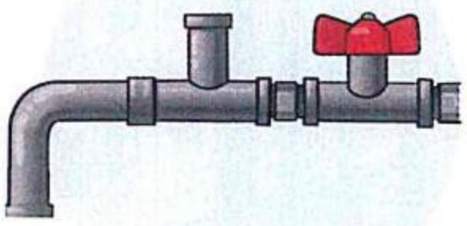
## Key vocabulary







sandbag كيس الرمل



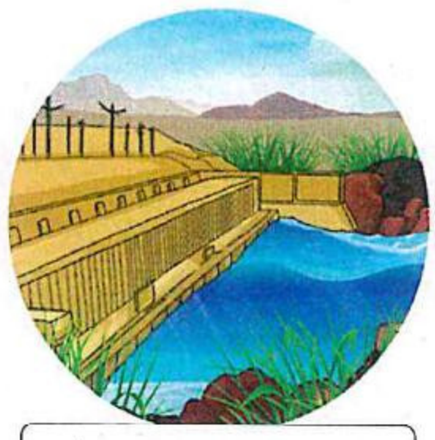
pipe ماسورة / أنبوبة



barrier حاجز



drain بالوعة/مصرف مائى



dam سد



canal قناة مائية

## Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| airport | مطار | thunderstorm | عاصفة رعدية | keep out | يُبعد [شئ] |
| lightning | برق | port | ميناء | surface | سطح |
| street | شارع | building | مبنى | take water out | يسحب المياه |
| pump | مضخة | flood | فيضان/يفيض | put up | يضع |




## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary




- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. In floods, we put up a ..... to stop water.
   a. port  b. pipe  c. barrier
2. Water flows through ..... in our homes.
   a. sand  b. sandbags  c. pipes
3. Water in the streets goes down a ..... .
   a. port  b. drain  c. sandbag

## II Listening and Reading

### ☆ Look, listen and read.

انظر، استمع واقرأ.




In 2020, there was a lot of rain, as well as **thunderstorms**[1] and **lightning**[2]. The airport in Luxor and the ports in Alexandria and Sharm El-Sheikh closed.

فى عام ٢٠٢٠، كان هناك الكثير من الأمطار، فضلًا عن العواصف الرعدية والبرق. وتم إغلاق مطار الأقصر وموانئ الإسكندرية وشرم الشيخ.

Yes, that's right. A lot of **rain**[3] fell in a very short time. There was too much water, and the streets and **buildings**[4] in Cairo and other places **flooded**[5].

نعم، هذا صحيح. هطلت أمطار غزيرة فى وقت قصير جدًا. كان هناك الكثير من المياه وغمرت الشوارع والمبانى فى القاهرة وأماكن أخرى.

[1] عواصف رعدية
[2] برق
[3] مطر
[4] مبانى
[5] غمرت بالمياه

## Listen, read and learn.

استمع، اقرأ وتعلم.

1 People put sandbags in front of houses and buildings to keep water out.

يضع الناس أكياس الرمل أمام المنازل والمبانى لإبعاد المياه.




2 A dam stops the flow of water in a river.

السد يوقف تدفق المياه فى النهر.



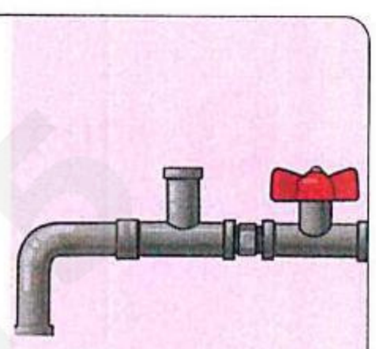
3 Water on the surface of streets can go down a drain.

يمكن أن تنزل/تنحدر المياه الموجودة على سطح الشوارع إلى البالوعة.



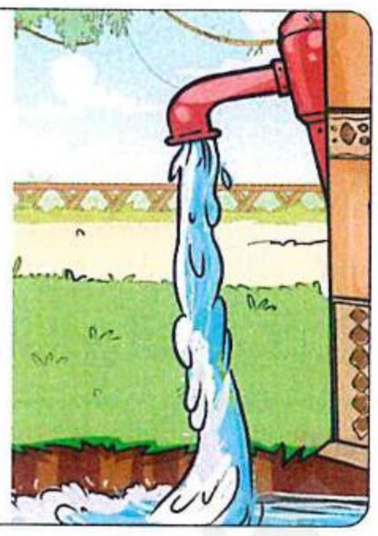
4 Water moves in pipes under the ground or above the ground.

يتحرك الماء فى المواسير تحت الأرض أو فوقها.



5 You can use a pump to take water out of a building in a flood.

يمكنك استخدام مضخة لسحب المياه من مبنى فى حالة الفيضان.



6 A canal is a river that people build, so they can move water to where they need it.

القناة هو نهر يبنيه الناس، حتى يتمكنوا من نقل المياه إلى حيث يحتاجون إليها.



7 In a flood, people can put up a barrier to stop water in the street.

فى حالة حدوث فيضان، يمكن للناس وضع حاجز لإيقاف المياه فى الشارع.



## III Language

### 1 Countable & Uncountable nouns

١. الأسماء التى تعد والتى لا تعد

**Countable nouns**

- الأسماء التى [تعد] لها [مفرد وجمع].
- الاسم المفرد الذى [يُعد] يسبق بأداة نكرة [a/an].

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| an apple | تفاحة | apples |
| a car | سيارة | cars |
| a tree | شجرة | trees |

**Uncountable nouns**

- الأسماء التى لا تعد [ليس لها جمع] وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- الاسم الذى [لا يُعد] لا يُسبق بأداة نكرة [a/an].

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| water | ماء | paper | ورق |
| sugar | سكر | salt | ملح |
| milk | لبن | cheese | جبن |

https://t.me/g5yr

## 2 too much

٢. كثيرًا جدًا [تستخدم مع الأسماء التى لا تعد]



**There is + too much +** • اسم [لا يعد]

There is too much water.

• There is too much water.



## 3 too many

٣. كثيرًا جدًا [تستخدم مع الأسماء التى تُعد]



**There are + too many +** • اسم جمع [يعد]

There are too many cars.

• There are too many cars.



## 4 [not] enough

٤. بما يكفى [تأتى مع الأسماء التى [تُعد] والتى [لا تُعد]]



**There isn't + enough +** • اسم مفرد لا يعد

There isn't enough salt.

• There isn't enough water.





**There aren't + enough +** • اسم جمع

There aren't enough pencils.

• There aren't enough trees.



**Notice**

1. We use "There is / isn't " with : • singular countable nouns
   • uncountable nouns.

- نستخدم "يوجد / لا يوجد There is / isn't" مع الاسماء المفرد والاسماء التى لا تعد.

2. We use "There are / aren't" with plural countable nouns

- نستخدم "يوجد/لا يوجد There are / aren't" مع الاسماء الجمع.

## Pop Quiz on Language

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. There ..... too much water on the floor.
   a. is  b. are  c. were
2. There is too ..... sugar in the cookies.
   a. much  b. many  c. any
3. There ..... enough trees.
   a. isn't  b. aren't  c. is
4. There ..... too much salt.
   a. are  b. is  c. aren't
5. There are too ..... buses in the station.
   a. any  b. much  c. many
6. There ..... too much smoke here.
   a. is  b. are  c. aren't
7. There are too ..... books.
   a. enough  b. many  c. much
8. There isn't ..... rain.
   a. much  b. often  c. many
9. There ..... many people in the supermarket.
   a. isn't  b. are  c. is
10. There are too ..... crayons.
    a. much  b. many  c. any
11. There ..... enough water.
    a. are  b. aren't  c. isn't
12. There is ..... big ship in the port.
    a. many  b. enough  c. a
13. There is ..... for the whole family.
    a. food much  b. enough food  c. food enough
14. There aren't ..... cups for the children.
    a. enough  b. a  c. much

https://t.me/GEYS

# General Exercises On Lessons 1 & 2

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

ports – fell – buildings – put up – lightning

In 2020, there was a lot of rain, as well as thunderstorms and [1] ..... .
The airport in Luxor and the [2] ..... in Alexandria and Sharm El-Sheikh closed.
A lot of rain [3] ..... in a very short time. There was too much water, and the streets and [4] ..... in Cairo and other places flooded.

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

In a flood, people can put up a barrier to stop water in the street. Water on the surface of streets can go down a drain. Water moves in pipes under the ground or above the ground. People build dams to stop the flow of water in a river. A canal is a river that people build, so they can move water to where they need it.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. People can put up a ..... to stop water in the street.
   a. airport  b. barrier  c. port
2. ..... moves in pipes under the ground.
   a. Sunlight  b. Sand  c. Water

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where can water on the surface of streets go ?
   .....
4. Why do people build dams ?
   .....
5. What is a canal ?
   .....
6. Why do people build canals ?
   .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

A. 1. There are too ..... cars on the road. [Menofia - Shibin 2025]
   a. many  b. much  c. enough
2. There is too ..... food on my plate.
   a. many  b. much  c. a lot

3. There ..... enough presents for all kids.

a. isn't b. is c. aren't

4. There ..... too much sand in the desert.

a. is b. are c. aren't

B. 1. There ..... too many pens on the desk.

a. is b. are c. do

2. There isn't ..... sugar in the tea.

a. a lot b. many c. enough

3. There is too ..... food on the table.

a. enough b. much c. many

4. There ..... many apples in the fridge.

a. are b. is c. isn't

## 4 Read, order and write.

A. 1. was - There - a lot - rain - of. [Kafr El-Sheikh - El-Hamoul 2025]

.....

2. stops - of water - A dam - the flow.

.....

B. 1. aren't - enough - There - trees.

.....

2. Luxor - closed - The airport - in.

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Floods"**

**Guiding elements :**

• rain • fell • flooded

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

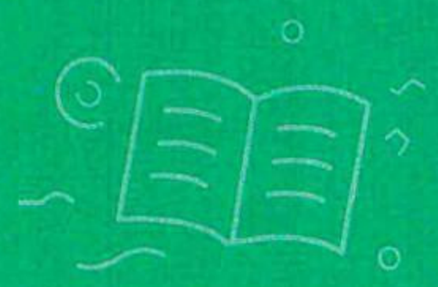
.....

.....

.....

LESSONS 3&4

- Vocabulary
- Life skills and values



## I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

### Key vocabulary



rainfall هطول أمطار



do first aid
يقوم بإسعافات أولية



stuck عالِق



emergency responder
مسئول الطوارئ



scary مخيف



volunteer متطوع / يتطوع

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| collapse | ينهار | ruin | يتلف / يدمر | remove | يزيل |
| predict | يتنبأ | warn | يحذر | protect | يحمى |

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| interviewer | محاور | bridge | كوبرى | scientist | عالم |
| community | مجتمع | risk | خطر / مخاطرة | heavy | ثقيل / غزير |
| pleased | مسرور | effect | تأثير | technology | التكنولوچيا |
| injured | مصاب | firefighter | رجل المطافئ | warning | تحذير |
| engineer | مهندس | travel around | يتجول | focus on | يركز على |
| cell phones | هواتف محمولة | | | | |

## Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

| Word الكلمة | Definition التعريف |
|---|---|
| ruin يتلف/يدمر | to damage or destroy something أن يدمر أو يخرب شيء |
| collapse ينهار | to fall down أن يسقط |
| protect يحمى | to keep something safe أن يحافظ على شيء ما آمن |
| predict يتنبأ | to say what might happen in the future أن يقول ما يمكن أن يحدث فى المستقبل |
| warn يحذر | to tell people that something bad will happen, so they can prepare أن يخبر الناس أن شيئًا سيئًا سيحدث حتى يمكن أن يستعدوا |
| rescue ينقذ | take someone out of a dangerous place يخرج شخص ما من مكان خطير |
| scary مخيف | frightening مخيف |
| heavy غزير | a lot of [rainfall] الكثير من [مياه الأمطار] |
| sick / injured مريض / مصاب | people who need help أشخاص تحتاج للمساعدة |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Floods | floods – problems | When there are floods, there can be big problems. |
| | ruin | Flood water can ruin homes, shops, and offices. |
| | bridge – collapse | Flood can make bridges and homes collapse. |
| | predict – start | Scientists can predict when floods will start. |
| | warn - sandbags | Scientists can warn people to use sandbags to keep their homes safe. |
| | rains – risk | When it rains a lot in a short time, there is a risk of flooding. |
| An emergency responder | volunteer – emergency | An emergency responder volunteers to help the community when there is an emergency. |
| | first aid | An emergency responder can get to a place quickly, do first aid, and rescue people. |
| | stuck | An emergency responder can go to different houses and help people who are stuck in their homes. |

## II Listening and Reading




### Look and read. انظر واقرأ.



When there are **floods**[1], there can be big **problems**[2].Flood water can ruin homes, shops, and offices.
It can make bridges and homes **collapse**[3]. It's important for engineers to find ways to protect everyone from floods.
**Scientists**[4] can study the weather and predict when floods will start. They can warn people to use sandbags to keep their homes safe. They can send these **warnings**[5] on cell phones, so everyone gets them quickly.

We can also use new technology such as use pumps to remove the water. We can keep drains **in good condition**[6] so water can move away quickly.
When it rains a lot in a short time, there is a risk of flooding. If we are prepared for this, we can stop the dangerous effects of flooding.

[1] فيضانات
[2] مشاكل
[3] ينهار
[4] علماء
[5] تحذيرات
[6] فى حالة جيدة

عندما تكون هناك فيضانات، يمكن أن تكون هناك مشاكل كبيرة. ويمكن أن تدمر مياه الفيضانات المنازل والمتاجر والمكاتب. يمكن أن تتسبب فى انهيار الجسور والمنازل. فمن المهم إيجاد طرق لحماية الجميع من الفيضانات من قبل المهندسين. يستطيع العلماء دراسة الطقس والتنبؤ ببدأ الفيضانات. يمكنهم تحذير الناس لاستخدام أكياس الرمل للحفاظ على منازلهم آمنة. يمكنهم إرسال هذه التحذيرات على الهواتف المحمولة، حتى يحصل عليها الجميع بسرعة. يمكننا ايضًا استخدام تكنولوچيا جديدة مثل استخدم مضخات لإزالة المياه. يمكننا الحفاظ على المصارف فى حالة جيدة حتى يمكن أن تتدفق المياه إليها بسرعة. عندما تمطر كثيرًا فى وقت قصير، فهناك خطر حدوث فيضانات. إذا كنا مستعدين لذلك، يمكننا تقليل الآثار الخطيرة للفيضانات.

## Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Lara is an **emergency responder**[1]. When there is a flood, she helps people.

لارا هى مسئولة الطوارئ. عندما يكون هناك فيضان، تقوم لارا بمساعدة الناس.



[1] مسئول الطوارئ
[2] يتطوع
[3] مجتمع
[4] إسعافات أولية
[5] يركز على



Can you describe what an emergency responder is ?

هل يمكنك وصف ما هو مسئول الطوارئ ؟



Yes, of course. I **volunteer**[2] to help my **community**[3] when there is an emergency. We aren't the police, or firefighters, but we are trained to help them do their jobs. We can get to a place quickly, do **first aid**[4], and rescue people from floods.

نعم، بالطبع. أنا أتطوع لمساعدة مجتمعى عندما تكون هناك حالة طوارئ. نحن لسنا من رجال الشرطة أو رجال الإطفاء، لكننا مدربون على مساعدتهم فى أداء وظائفهم. يمكننا الوصول إلى مكان ما بسرعة وتقديم الإسعافات الأولية وإنقاذ الناس من الفيضانات.



Do you enjoy being an emergency responder ?

هل تستمتعين بكونك مسئولة للطوارئ ؟



Yes, I do. I like helping people and we do lots of different things.

نعم. أحب مساعدة الناس ونقوم بالعديد من الأشياء المختلفة.



Is it a scary thing to do ?

هل هو شئ مخيف أن تقومين به ؟



Well, sometimes it is, but then I think that other people will be scared as well, so I **focus on**[5] how I can help them.

حسنًا، فى بعض الأحيان يكون الأمر كذلك، ولكن بعد ذلك أعتقد أن الآخرين سيكونون خائفين أيضًا، لذلك أركز على كيف يمكننى مساعدتهم.



What do you do when there is a flood ?

ماذا تفعلون عندما يكون هناك فيضان ؟

https://t.me/G3_Y5



We know it might be dangerous when there is very heavy rainfall. So, my team are ready to help people quickly. Our job is to help people who are sick or injured.

نحن نعلم أنه قد يكون خطيرًا عندما تهطل الأمطار بغزارة. لذلك فريقى يكون مستعد لمساعدة الناس بسرعة. وظيفتنا هى مساعدة المرضى أو المصابين.



How do you travel around the city ?

كيف تسافرون حول المدينة ؟



We have small boats, so we can go to different houses and help people who are stuck in their homes.

لدينا قوارب صغيرة، لذا يمكننا الذهاب إلى منازل مختلفة ومساعدة الأشخاص العالقين فى منازلهم.



Are people pleased to see you ?

هل الناس سعداء برؤيتك ؟



Yes, they are! That's one of the things I love about volunteering - you can make people very happy!

نعم، إنهم سعداء! إنها أحد الأشياء التى أحبها فى التطوع - يمكنك أن تجعل الناس سعداء جدًا !



Thank you, Lara.

شكرًا لك ، يا لارا.

**Choose the correct answer :**

Learn **1.** Lara is a/an .....

a. emergency responder  b. doctor  c. engineer

Practice **2.** Lara volunteers to help her .....

a. school  b. community  c. friends

https://t.me/G5Y5

# General Exercises On Lessons 3 & 4

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى **نهاية الكتاب**

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

volunteer – trained – responder – people - first aid

I'm Yara. I'm an emergency [1] ..... . I [2] ..... to help my community when there is an emergency. We aren't the police, or firefighters, but we are [3] ..... to help them do their jobs. We can get to a place quickly, do [4] ....., and rescue people from floods. I like helping people and do lots of different things.

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

When there are floods, there can be big problems. Flood water can ruin homes, shops, and offices. It can make bridges and homes collapse. It's important for engineers to find ways to protect everyone from floods. Scientists can study the weather and predict when floods will start. They can warn people to use sandbags to keep their homes safe. They can send these warnings on cell phones, so everyone gets them quickly.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. A ..... can make bridges and homes collapse.

a. storm  b. fire  c. flood

2. ..... can send warnings for people on cell phones.

a. Scientists  b. Vets  c. Doctors

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can flood water ruin ?

.....

4. Why do people use sandbags ?

.....

5. Why is it important for scientists to study the weather ?

.....

6. Why should engineers do ?

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. She eats too ..... sugar. [Minia - Bani Mazar 2025]

a. much b. many c. any

2. There ..... many chairs in this room.

a. am b. is c. are

3. There are too ..... students in the class.

a. many b. much c. any

4. There aren't ..... pens on the table.

a. much b. little c. any

## 4 Read, order and write.

A. 1. travel - the city - How - you - do - around ?

.....

2. helping - I - people - like. [Dakahlia - East Mansoura 2025]

.....

B. 1. rescue - We - floods – from – people.

.....

2. can – first - She - aid – do.

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Emergency responders"**

**Guiding elements :**

- volunteer
- community
- help people

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5 Y5

LESSON 5

# Life Skills and Values

## I Vocabulary




### Key vocabulary

| Adjectives | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| funny | مرح | polite | مهذب |
| calm | هادئ | cooperative | متعاون |
| generous | كريم / معطاء | caring | مُهتم بالآخرين |
| brave | شجاع | responsible | مسئول |
| sociable | اجتماعى | loyal | مخلص |
| sensible | عاقل/حكيم | mean | لئيم / بخيل |

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| jokes | نكات | nicely | بلطف |
| secret | سر | situation | موقف |
| communicator | شخص يجيد التواصل | share | يشارك |
| present | هدية | | |

### Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| • work in a team | يعمل فى فريق | • look after | يعتنى بـ |
| • think about | يفكر فى | • tell jokes | يقول النكات |
| • get excited | يشعر بالحماس | • behave well | يتصرف بشكل جيد |

## Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

| Topic | Guiding words | Sentences |
|---|---|---|
| Describing People | jokes – laugh | Sara tells a lot of jokes and makes people laugh. |
| | funny - sociable | Sara is funny and sociable. |
| | communicator | Fares is a good communicator. |
| | brave - sociable | Fares is brave and sociable. |
| | presents | Nesma likes giving people presents. |
| | calm – generous | Nesma is calm and generous. |
| | polite - cooperative | Wael is polite and cooperative. |
| | nicely - behave | Wael speaks nicely to everyone and behaves well. |
| | sensible | Adam is sensible and can look after other people. |
| | responsible - caring | Adam is responsible and caring. |

## Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

05 min

تدريب تلقائى

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. She isn't scared of anything. She is ..... .
   a. funny  b. brave  c. lazy
2. She has a lot of friends. She is ..... .
   a. sociable  b. mean  c. soft
3. My sister likes giving people presents. She is ..... .
   a. mean  b. generous  c. thick
4. ..... photos make me laugh.
   a. Wise  b. Funny  c. Mean
5. Ali is ..... . He never gets angry.
   a. caring  b. mean  c. calm
6. They are ..... so we respect them.
   a. mean  b. bad  c. polite

https://e...me/G5 Y5

## II Reading

**Read and identify.** اقرأ وتعرف.

**1**



Sara tells a lot of jokes and makes people laugh, and she's a good friend. She sometimes tells her friend's secrets to other people. She's funny and sociable.

سارة تروى الكثير من النكات وتجعل الناس يضحكون، هى صديقة جيدة. أحيانًا تخبر أسرار صديقتها لأشخاص آخرين. هى مرحة واجتماعية

funny and sociable

**2**

Fares often thinks about saving others. He likes sharing things. He likes people and he's a good communicator. He's brave and sociable.

غالبًا ما يفكر فارس فى إنقاذ الآخرين. يحب مشاركة الأشياء. فارس يحب الناس ولديه مهارات تواصل جيدة. هو شجاع واجتماعى.



brave and sociable

**3**



Nesma doesn't worry or get excited about things. She likes helping other people and she is a good friend. She likes giving people presents. She's calm and generous.

نسمة لا تقلق ولا تتحمس للأشياء. تحب مساعدة الآخرين وهى صديقة جيدة. تحب إعطاء الناس الهدايا. هى هادئة وكريمة.

calm and generous

**4**

Wael works very well in a team. He speaks nicely to everyone and behaves well. He works very hard. He's polite and cooperative.

وائل يعمل بشكل جيد جدًا فى فريق. يتحدث بلطف مع الجميع ويتصرف بشكل جيد. إنه يعمل بجد. هو مهذب ومتعاون.



polite and cooperative

**5**



Adam is sensible and can look after other people. He is kind and he isn't scared in dangerous situations. He's responsible and caring.

آدم عاقل ويمكنه الاعتناء بالآخرين. هو طيب ولا يخاف فى المواقف الخطيرة. هو مسئول ومهتم بالآخرين.

responsible and caring

# General Exercises On Lesson 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

funny – look after – caring – share – jokes

My name is Soha. I love telling a lot of [1] ..... and making people laugh. I'm very [2] ..... . My friend Lara is sensible and can [3] ..... other people. She is responsible and [4] ..... .

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I'm Fatma. I have two friends, Nesma and Dina. My friend Nesma likes helping other people and she is a good friend. She's calm and generous. My friend Dina works very well in a team. She speaks nicely to everyone and behaves well. She works very hard. She is polite and cooperative.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Nesma is Fatma's ..... .
   a. sister  b. aunt  c. friend
2. Dina is polite and ..... .
   a. lazy  b. cooperative  c. mean

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many friends does Fatma have ?

   .....

4. What does Nesma like doing ?

   .....

5. How does Dina speak to others ?

   .....

6. Who is calm and generous ?

   .....

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. I put too ..... balls in the basket.
   a. much  b. many  c. any
2. There is too ..... salt in my soup.
   a. many  b. much  c. often

https://t.me/G5_Y5

3. There isn't ..... milk in the kitchen.

a. often  b. many  c. enough

4. There ..... too many books in the library.

a. is  b. are  c. isn't

## 4 Read, order and write.

A. 1. brave - sociable - He - and - is.

.....

2. helping - people - She - other - likes.

.....

B. 1. works - He - hard - very.

.....

2. likes - things - My - sharing - friend.

.....

## 5 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Your friend"

**Guiding elements :**

- sharing
- communicator
- sociable

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

LESSON 6

# Learn Sounds with Busy Bee !

## Phonics

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

Listen and repeat. استمع ورددد.

**ous → /əs/**



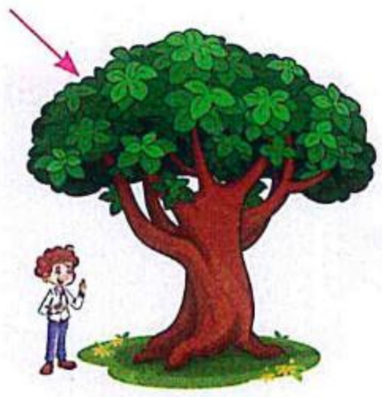
dangerous خطير



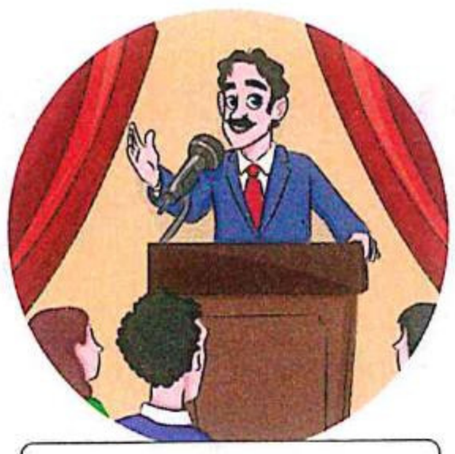
generous گريم



nervous متوتر/ عصبى



enormous ضخم



famous مشهور

## Pop Quiz on Phonics

05 min

**1** Listen and write the missing sounds.

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. danger _ _ _
2. enorm _ _ _
3. nerv _ _ _
4. fam _ _ _

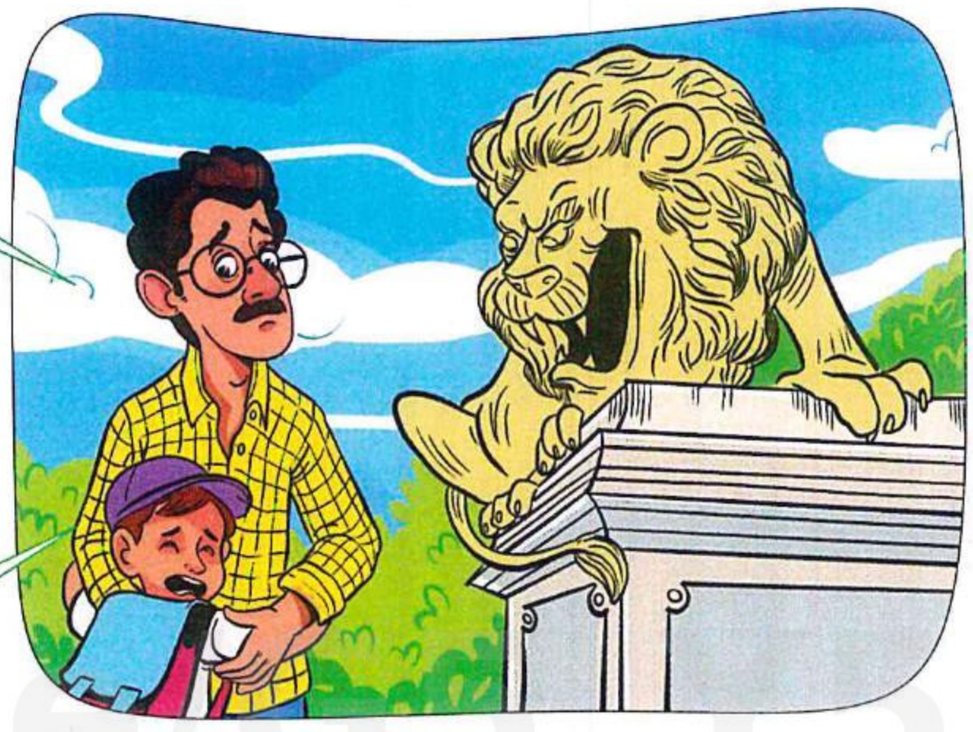
**2** Look, read and circle /əs/ sound.

The famous statue is enormous !

التمثال المشهور ضخم !

I'm nervous. Is it dangerous ?

أنا متوتر. هل هذا خطير ؟



https://t.me/gs_ps

LESSON 7

# Story: The Empty Pot

## I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

### Key vocabulary



emperor امبراطور



palace قصر



seed بذرة

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| country | دولة | king | ملك | ruler | حاكم |
| come back | يعود | honest | أمين / صادق | truth | الحقيقة |
| empty | فارغ | pot | إناء | carefully | بحذر / بحرص |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| plant | يزرع | planted |
| water | يروى/ يسقى | watered |
| change | يغير | changed |

**Irregular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| choose | يختار | chose |
| come | يأتى | came |
| grow | ينمو | grew |

### Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

| Word الكلمة | Definition التعريف |
|---|---|
| emperor إمبراطور | a ruler of a large country حاكم لدولة كبرى |
| seed بذرة | a small part of a plant that grows a new plant. جزء صغير من النبات ينمو لينتج نباتًا جديدًا. |
| honest صادق/أمين | someone who tells the truth شخص يقول الحقيقة |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## II Listening and Reading

**Pop Quiz**
تدرب
على قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع
05 min

**Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

### The Empty Pot



A long time ago in **China**[1], there was a kind **emperor**[2].

He wanted to choose a new king, so he gave every child in the country a **seed**[3].

"Plant your seed and come back in three months," he said. "I will choose the child with the best plant."



A boy named Ping planted his seed **carefully**[4].

He watered it every day but it didn't grow.

Ping was sad. He tried again and again, but his pot stayed **empty**[5].

Three months later, the children came to the **palace**[6] with big, beautiful plants.



Ping showed his empty pot to the emperor. The emperor smiled. "Those were old and bad seeds. The other children **changed**[7] their seeds. Only you were **honest**[8], Ping."

The emperor chose Ping as the new king.

منذ زمن بعيد في الصين، كان هناك إمبراطور طيب. أراد أن يختار ملكا جديدًا، لذلك أعطى كل طفل في البلاد بذرة .

قال: "ازرعوا البذرة وعودوا بعد ثلاثة أشهر، وسأختار الطفل صاحب أفضل نبتة." زرع ولد يُدعى «Ping» بذرته بعناية. وكان يسقيها كل يوم، لكنها لم تنبت. شعر Ping بالحزن. حاول مرة بعد مرة، لكن الإناء ظل فارغًا.

وبعد ثلاثة أشهر، جاء الأطفال إلى القصر وهم يحملون نباتات كبيرة وجميلة .

أحضر «Ping» إنائه الفارغ إلى الإمبراطور. ابتسم الإمبراطور وقال: "تلك كانت بذورًا قديمة وفاسدة، أما الأطفال الآخرون فقد استبدلوا بذورهم. أنت الوحيد الصادق والأمين يا «Ping» . وهكذا اختار الإمبراطور «Ping» ليكون الملك الجديد.

[1] دولة الصين
[2] امبراطور
[3] بذرة
[4] بحذر / بحرص
[5] فارغ
[6] قصر
[7] يغير
[8] صادق / أمين



**The Moral of the story**

Always be honest.
كن صادقًا دائمًا.

**Answer the following question :**

Learn 1. What did the emperor want to do?
He wanted to choose a new king.

Practice 2. When did the children come to the palace ?
.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# General Exercises On Lesson 7

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

spring - emperor - honest - seed - empty

A long time ago in China, there was a kind [1] ..... . He wanted to choose a king. He gave every child a [2] ..... . The seeds were old and bad. The children changed their seeds. Ping showed his [3] ..... pot to the emperor. Ping was [4] ..... so he became the new king.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. There aren't ..... chairs for everyone.
   a. too  b. much  c. enough
2. There ..... many apples on the table.
   a. is  b. are  c. has
3. There ..... too much oil in the pan.
   a. is  b. are  c. has
4. We saw ..... tourists at the museum. (Fayoum - East Fayoum 2025)
   a. many  b. much  c. any

## 3 Read, order and write.

A. 1. in China - There - emperor - was - a kind.

.....

2. the – The children – seeds - planted.

.....

B. 1. day – He – every – the seed – watered.

.....

2. honest - Ping - was.

.....

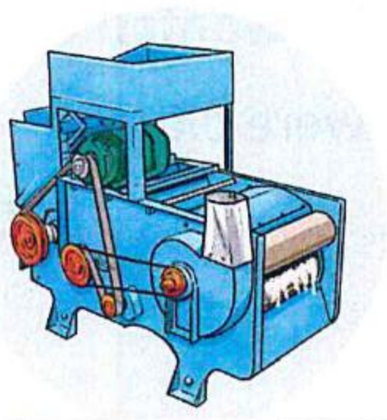
LESSON 8

# CLIL : Social Studies

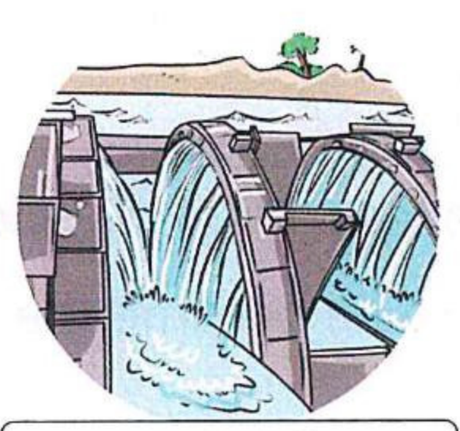
## I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

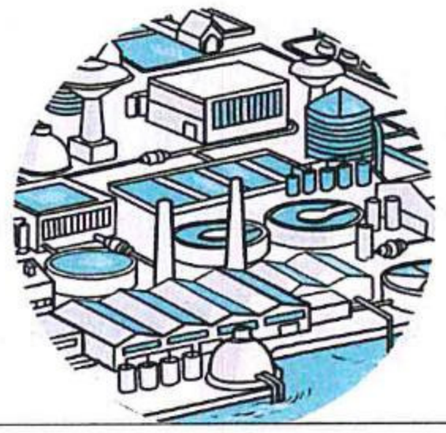
### Key vocabulary



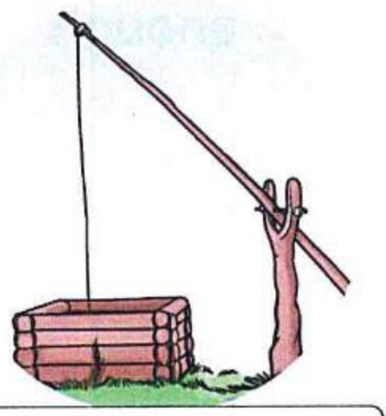
machine آلة/ماكينة



waterwheel ساقية



desalination تحلية المياه المالحة



shadoof شادوف



aqueduct قناة مائية



High Dam السد العالى

### Extra vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tower | برج | irrigation | الرى |
| bucket | دلو | hydroelectric power | طاقة كهرومائية |
| energy | طاقة | electricity | كهرباء |
| turbine | توربين [آلة تدور بفعل الماء أو الهواء] | wells | آبار |

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

**Regular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| provide | يمد/يزود | provided |
| control | يتحكم | controlled |
| move | يُحرك | moved |
| develop | يطور | developed |

**Irregular**

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| run | تجرى/تتدفق | ran |
| build | يبنى | built |
| cost | يتكلف | cost |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# II Listening and Reading

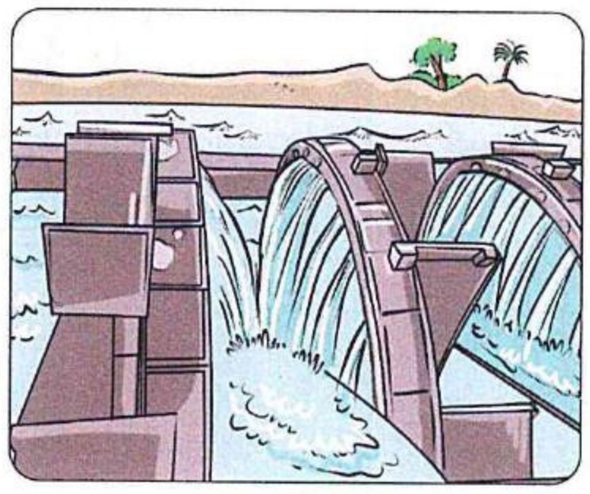
## Look, read and identify.

انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

## Water Engineering هندسة المياه

### In the past ..... فى الماضى

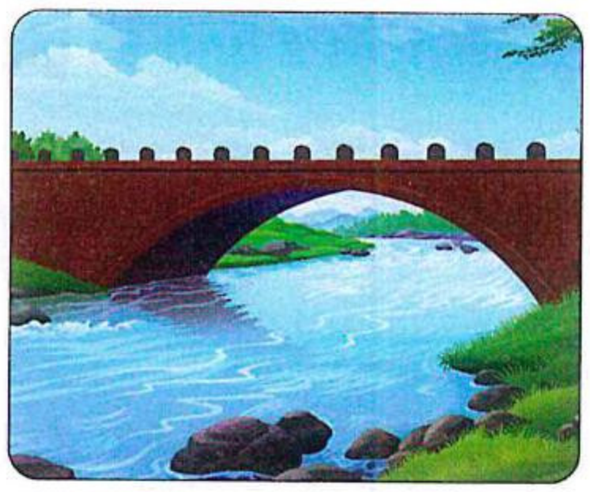
**Waterwheels**[1] used the energy of running water to move **machines**[2]. The oldest picture of a waterwheel is from Egypt over 2,500 years ago! People have used waterwheels to help with **irrigation**[3] and drinking water for a long time. They are very important today, too. Fayoum has more than 200 waterwheels.



a waterwheel

استخدمت السواقى طاقة المياه الجارية لتحريك الآلات. أقدم صورة لساقية مياه من مصر منذ أكثر من ٢٥٠٠ عام! لقد استخدم الناس الساقية لتساعد فى الرى وشرب المياه لفترة طويلة. إنها مهمة جدًا اليوم أيضًا. يوجد فى الفيوم أكثر من ٢٠٠ ساقية مياه.

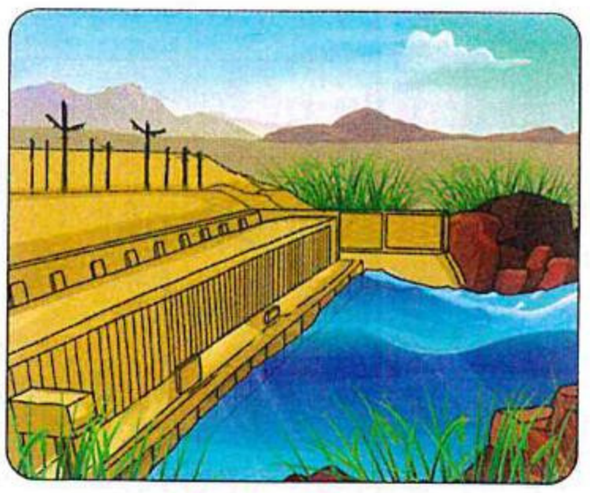
People built **aqueducts**[4] in the past to move water from wells or rivers into cities. The aqueduct of Cairo took water from the Nile to the **Citadel**[5] of Cairo. The water ran from a well into a canal on top of a wall. Later, people built a tall tower with a well inside it.



an aqueduct

بنى الناس القنوات المائية فى الماضى لنقل المياه من الآبار أو الأنهار إلى المدن. كانت قناة القاهرة المائية تأخذ المياه من النيل إلى القلعة بالقاهرة. كانت المياه تتدفق من بئر إلى قناة على قمة الجدار. بعد ذلك بنى الناس برجًا طويلًا بداخله بئر.

The **High Dam**[6] is famous because it is one of the largest dams in the world. When the Nile **flooded**[7] in the past, too much water went onto the land. Now, the dam can control the water and stop flooding. This helps to provide Egypt with enough water. The moving water turns a turbine to make hydroelectric power, so the dam gives us **electricity**[8], too.



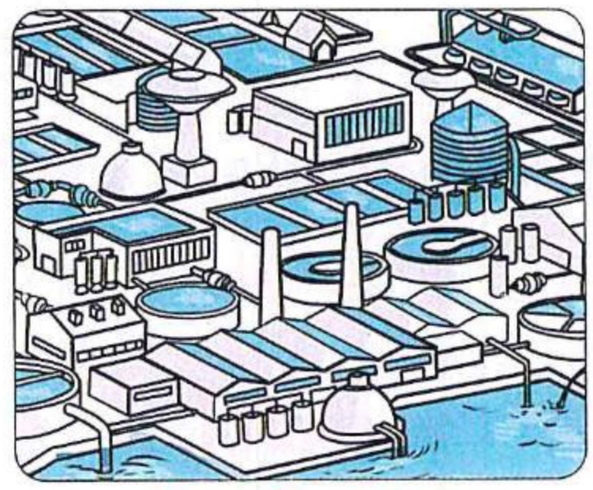
High Dam

يشتهر السد العالى بكونه من أكبر السدود فى العالم. عندما كان يفيض النيل فى الماضى، كانت تغمر الكثير من المياه الأرض. الآن، يمكن للسد التحكم فى المياه ووقف الفيضانات. هذا يساعد على تزويد مصر بما يكفى من المياه. المياه الجارية تدير التوربينات لتوليد الطاقة الكهرومائية، لذلك يمدنا السد بالكهرباء أيضًا.

[1] سواقى
[2] آلات
[3] الرى
[4] قنوات مائية
[5] قلعة
[6] السد العالى
[7] يفيض
[8] كهرباء

**Desalination**[9] means taking the salt out of sea water to get fresh water. It is useful in countries which don't have a lot of water. It can be expensive and use a lot of energy, but engineers are developing new technologies that use less energy and cost less money.

تحلية المياه تعنى إخراج الملح من مياه البحر للحصول على المياه العذبة. إنه مفيد فى البلدان التى ليس لديها الكثير من المياه. قد تكون باهظة الثمن وتستهلك قدرًا كبيرًا من الطاقة، لكن المهندسين يطورون تقنيات جديدة تستخدم طاقة أقل وتكلفة أقل.



desalination

[9] تحلية مياه البحر

# III Writing Skill

## Writing paragraphs

**Sentence 1 :** a general, simple sentence. It says what the topic is about.

الجملة الأولى : جملة عامة بسيطة، توضع ما يتحدث عنه الموضوع.

**Sentences 2 and 3 :** give more information about the topic.

الجملتين الثانية والثالثة : تعطى معلومات أكثر عن الموضوع.

**Sentence 4 :** end sentence. It presents a summary or an opinion.

الجملة الرابعة : هى الجملة الختامية، إنها توضح الملخص أو رأى.

## Fact file

is a collection of information about a particular subject or product.

ملف الحقائق هو عبارة عن مجموعة من المعلومات عن موضوع أو منتج معين.

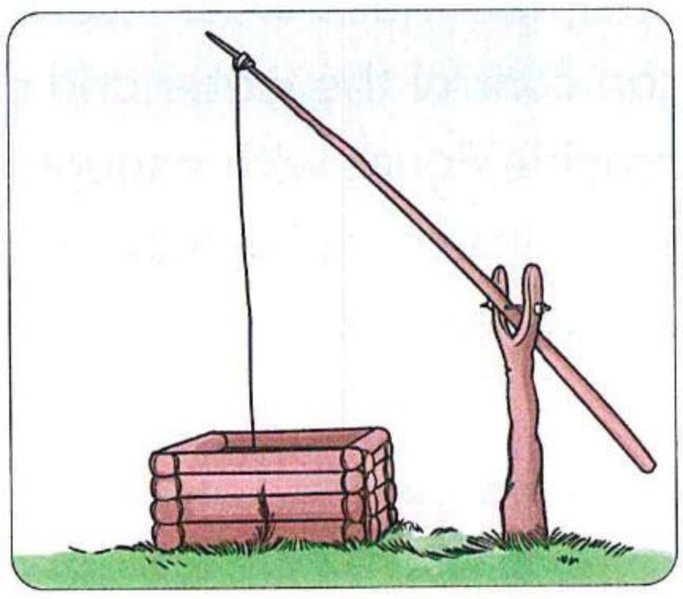
**Example of fact file**

**Name :** A shadoof

**New or old ?** old

**Where is it used ?** At an oasis in the desert

**How does it work ?** **A bucket**[1] goes into a well and **brings up**[2] water.



**The paragraph**

A shadoof is a type of irrigation. Farmers use it at an oasis in the desert to help bring water on the land. It helps them water the plants. The bucket goes into a well to bring up water.

[1] دلو

[2] يجلب / يرفع

تعتبر آلة الشادوف نوع من آلات الرى. يستخدمها الفلاحون فى الواحة فى الصحراء لتساعدهم فى جلب الماء على الأرض. وتساعدهم فى رى النباتات. ينزل الدلو إلى البئر لإحضار المياه.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# General Exercises On Lesson 8

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

engineers – money – water – fresh – salt

Desalination means taking the salt out of sea water to get [1] ..... water. It is useful in countries which don't have a lot of [2] ..... . It can be expensive and use a lot of energy, but [3] ..... are developing new technologies that use less energy and cost less [4] ..... .

## 2 Read, order and write.

A. 1. used – What – waterwheels – are – for ?

.....

2. expensive – Desalination – be – can.

.....

B. 1. Dam – the water – control – The High – can.

.....

2. machine – does – work - How - that ?

.....

## 3 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"The High Dam"**

**Guiding elements :**

- famous
- control
- stop

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Skills 1 How to write about certain topics

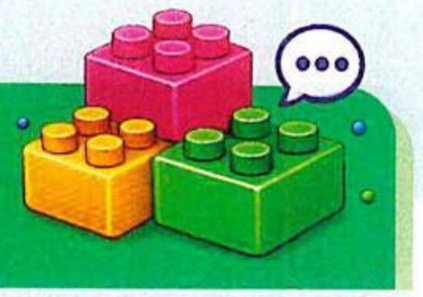



كيفية كتابة الفقرات الإنشائية ← اتباع الخطوات التالية يساعدك على تكوين فقرة إنشائية :

١. تكوين حصيلة من المفردات اللغوية. ٢. إتقان تكوين الجمل. ٣. بعد اتباع الخطوات السابقة يمكنك كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

| | Step 1 Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية: | Step 2 Sentences<br>متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية: | Step 3 Writing<br>متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية أكتب فقرة إنشائية: |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Floods** | **Write the meaning :**<br>..... يتلف / يدمر<br>..... ينهار<br>..... كوبرى<br>..... حاجز<br>..... كيس الرمل | **Reorder the words :**<br>1. water - ruin - **Flood** - homes - can.<br>.....<br>2. make - collapse - **Floods** - can - bridges.<br>.....<br>3. can - **People** - to stop - put - water - a barrier - up.<br>.....<br>4. sandbags - **People** - in front - put - of - houses.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"Floods"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| **Emergency responders** | ..... يتطوع<br>..... اسعافات أوليه<br>..... ينقذ<br>..... مجتمع<br>..... بسرعة | 5. responders - **Emergency** - the community - help.<br>.....<br>6. can - **They** - aid - first - do.<br>.....<br>7. rescue - floods - **They** - people - from.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"Emergency responders"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| **Your friend** | ..... مرح<br>..... يضحك<br>..... يشارك<br>..... شخص يجيد التواصل<br>..... اجتماعى | 8. funny - is - friend - **My**.<br>.....<br>9. makes - **He** - laugh - people.<br>.....<br>10. things - **He** - sharing - likes.<br>.....<br>11. a good - **He** - communicator - is.<br>..... | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>**"Your friend"**<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |

# 2 Sentence Building



الهدف من هذا الجزء تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

## ١ الجملة الخبرية

**1 Subject Detective**

مين صاحب الفعل؟

ابحث عن الفاعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. Flood water
   فاعل الجملة الثانية
2. Adam
   فاعل الجملة الرابعة



الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

1. is - that - **A canal** - a river - build - people.
2. water - ruin - **Flood** - can - homes.
3. to - community - **I** - my - help - volunteer.
4. responsible - **Adam** - caring - is - and.

| | ١ فاعل | ٢ فعل | ٣ باقي الجملة. |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | A canal | | |
| 2. | | can | |
| 3. | | | |
| 4. | | | |

**2 Verb Hunter**

بيعمل إيه؟

ابحث عن الفعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. is
   فعل الجملة الأولى
2. volunteer
   فعل الجملة الثالثة



الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

## ٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

**3 Helper Team**

مين بيساعدنا؟

الأفعال المساعدة

**Do / Did**

تستخدم مع:

I, you, we, they

**Does/ Did**

تستخدم مع:

he, she, it



الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

1. do - travel - **How** - the city – you - around ?
2. do - dams - **Why** - build - people ?
3. did – emperor – **What** – the – to do – want ?
4. shadoof – **How** – a – work – does ?

| | ١ كلمة استفهام | ٢ فعل مساعد | ٣ فاعل | ٤ فعل | ٥ باقي السؤال ؟ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | | do | | | |
| 2. | | | | | |
| 3. | | | | | |
| 4. | How | | | | |

**4 The Wh-Team**

نسأل ازاى؟

أدوات الاستفهام

- Why [لماذا]: للسؤال عن السبب.
- What [ما / ماذا]: للسؤال عن شيء.



أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائمًا في بداية السؤال.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# 3 Important Topics



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [١٥ جملة].

## 1 Floods

When there are floods, there can be big problems[1]. Flood water can ruin homes, shops, and offices[2]. It can make bridges and homes collapse[3]. Scientists can study the weather and predict when floods will start[4]. They can warn people to use sandbags to keep their homes safe[5].

## 2 Emergency responders

An emergency responder helps people[6]. They volunteer to help their community when there is an emergency[7]. They can do first aid[8]. They can rescue people from floods[9]. Their job is to help people who are sick or injured[10]. They have small boats so they can go to different houses and help people who are stuck in their homes[11].

## 3 The High Dam

The High Dam is one of the largest dams in the world[12]. The dam can control the water and stop flooding[13]. This helps to provide Egypt with enough water[14]. The moving water turns a turbine to make hydroelectric power, so the dam gives us electricity, too[15].

### From Sentences to Topics

- Start with a capital letter.
- Use the correct tense.
- Put the words in the correct order.
- End with a full stop.





# Review through the Exam on Unit 6

**مراجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتدريبات**

## 25 Vocabulary

أهم 25 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| emperor | إمبراطور | collapse | ينهار | dam | سد |
| palace | قصر | predict | يتنبأ | drain | بالوعة / مصرف مائى |
| empty | فارغ | cooperative | متعاون | pipe | ماسورة/ أنبوبة |
| truth | الحقيقة | jokes | نكات | sandbag | كيس الرمل |
| ruler | حاكم | sensible | عاقل/حكيم | barrier | حاجز |
| waterwheel | ساقية | High Dam | السد العالى | canal | قناة مائية |
| aqueduct | قناة مائية | rainfall | هطول أمطار | stuck | عالق |
| bucket | دلو | volunteer | متطوع/يتطوع | emergency responder | مسئول الطوارئ |
| | | scary | مخيف | | |

## 10 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعًا فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان

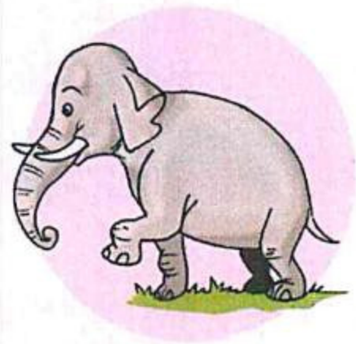
1. A dam[1] stops the flow of water in a river.
2. Water on the surface of streets can go down a drain[2].
3. Water moves in pipes[3] under the ground.
4. People put sandbags[4] in front of houses to keep water out.
5. Floods can make bridges collapse[5].
6. Scientists can predict[6] when floods will start.
7. He is polite and cooperative[7].
8. She tells a lot of jokes[8] and makes people laugh.
9. He is sensible[9] and can look after people.
10. The High Dam[10] can control the water and stop flooding.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| [1] القاهرة - عين شمس | [2] كتاب الطالب | [3] البحيرة - الدلنجات | [4] الجيزة - الدقى | [5] القليوبية - بنها |
| [6] المنوفية - تلا | [7] بورسعيد - بورفؤاد | [8] كتاب التدريبات | [9] كفر الشيخ - قلين | [10] الغربية - شرق المحلة |

## Phonics through the Exam

الصوتيات الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز اى امتحان].

/əs/


enormous


famous


nervous


dangerous

## Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

### Countable & Uncountable nouns

الأسماء التى تعد والتى لا تعد

#### Uncountable nouns

- الأسماء التى لا تعد [ليس لها جمع] وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- الاسم الذى [لا يُعد] لا يُسبق بأداة نكرة [a/an].

#### Countable nouns

- الأسماء التى [تعد] لها [مفرد وجمع].
- الاسم المفرد الذى [يُعد] يسبق بأداة نكرة [a/an].

| | |
|---|---|
| too much + إسم لا يعد | • There is too much water. |
| too many + إسم جمع | • There are too many cars. |
| [not] enough + إسم جمع / لا يعد | • There isn't enough paper. |

## Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعًا
فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان

1. There is too much water.
2. There are too many cars.
3. There isn't enough water.
4. There aren't enough trees.
5. There are too many cars on the road.
6. There isn't enough sugar in the tea.
7. There is too much sand in the desert.
8. There is too much pollution in the street.
9. There are too many players in the club.
10. There are too many books.

[1] المنوفية - الشهداء | [2] البحيرة - حوش عيسى | [3] القاهرة - عين شمس | [4] كتاب التدريبات | [5] سوهاج - جهينة
[6] مرسى مطروح - مطروح | [7] قنا - نجع حمادى | [8] كفر الشيخ - الرياض | [9] كتاب الطالب | [10] الجيزة - الهرم

https://t.me/GS_45

# Sample Test 11 — On Unit 6

اختبار المعاصر



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع
**فى نهاية الكتاب**

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. enorm _ _ _ | 2. fam _ _ _ | 3. nerv _ _ _ | 4. danger _ _ _

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sandbags – put – build – water – flow

A canal is a river that people [1] ....., so they can move water to where they need it. People put [2] ..... in front of houses and buildings to keep [3] ..... out. A dam stops the [4] ..... of water in a river.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

The High Dam is in Aswan. It is famous because it is one of the largest dams in the world. When the Nile flooded in the past, too much water went onto the land. Now, the dam can control the water and stop flooding. This helps to provide Egypt with enough water. The moving water turns a turbine to make hydroelectric power, so the dam gives us electricity, too.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

1. The dam can control the water and stop ..... .

a. building  b. flooding  c. fire

2. The High Dam provides Egypt with enough ..... .

a. air  b. water  c. heat

### B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why is the High Dam famous ?

.....

4. What happened when the Nile flooded in the past ?

.....

5. Where is the High Dam ?

.....

6. How does the dam produce electricity ?

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

https://t.me/G5 Y5

## 4 The Reader

### A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares wanted to swim • | ☐ a. on the table. |
| 2. Fares's dad put a fish tank • | ☐ b. like a fish. |

### B. Read and write [YES] or [NO] :

1. Fares can't swim or breathe under the water. [.....]
2. Fares fed the fish and kept their water clean. [.....]

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. There ..... too many rulers on the desk.
   a. are  b. isn't  c. am
2. There is ..... water in the bottle.
   a. many  b. enough  c. ever
3. There are too ..... apples on the plate.
   a. often  b. much  c. many
4. There ..... enough milk in the fridge.
   a. am  b. are  c. is

## 6 Read, order and write.

1. speaks - to - He - nicely – everyone.

.....

2. to – down - To collapse – fall – means.

.....

## 7 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Desalination"**

**Guiding elements :**

• salt  • fresh water  • energy

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Sample Test 12 On Unit 6



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات والتسميع **فى نهاية الكتاب**

اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.

## 1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. enorm _ _ _ | 2. gener _ _ _ | 3. nerv _ _ _ | 4. danger _ _ _

[Monufia - Tala / Damietta - Damietta / Beheira - Itay El Barud 2025]

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

salt – irrigation – important – machines - waterwheel

Waterwheels used the energy of running water to move [1] ..... . The oldest picture of a [2] ..... is from Egypt over 2,500 years ago ! People have used waterwheels to help with [3] ..... and drinking water for a long time. They are very [4] ..... today, too. Fayoum has more than 200 waterwheels.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below. [Cairo - Ain Shams 2025]

There is a big zoo in my town with different kinds of animals. Children like monkeys because they are funny. Monkeys like the children because they feed them bananas and peanuts. The zoo has an aquarium with lots of fish. The dolphin is very cute, but the shark is dangerous. All visitors like the zoo very much and children enjoy their time in it.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :**

1. All ..... like the zoo very much.
   a. doctors  b. teachers  c. visitors
2. The zoo is ..... .
   a. big  b. small  c. short

**B. Answer the following questions :**

3. Why do children like monkeys?

.....

4. Where is the zoo?

.....

5. What does the zoo have?

.....

6. What can you see in the aquarium?

.....

[Cairo - Eastern Nasr City 2026]

## 4 The Reader

### A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares enjoyed [Port Said - North 2025] | ☐ a. after two months. |
| 2. Fares was better [Giza - Oseem 2025] | ☐ b. watching the fish. |

### B. Read and write T [True] or F [False].

1. At the beach, Mom had another surprise. [Beni Suef – Wasta 2025] ☐
2. Fares couldn't see any fish under the water. [Sohag – Maragha 2025] ☐

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. There is too ..... pollution in the street. [Qalyubia 2025]

a. many b. much c. any

2. There is too ..... players in the club. [Giza - 6th of October 2026]

a. many b. much c. any

3. There isn't ..... water. [Damietta - Ezbet El Borg 2025]

a. enough b. too c. many

4. There ..... enough cheese in the kitchen. [Ismailia 2025]

a. is b. are c. aren't

## 6 Read, order and write.

1. is – and - He - caring – responsible. [Beni Suef - Sumusta 2025]

.....

2. moves - under - Water - the ground - in pipes. [Cairo - Marg 2026]

.....

## 7 Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"Waterwheels"**

**Guiding elements :**

- energy
- water
- irrigation

.....

.....

.....

.....

[Beheira - Damanhour 2026]



# Non-Fiction Reader

## Hospitals المستشفيات

### Vocabulary



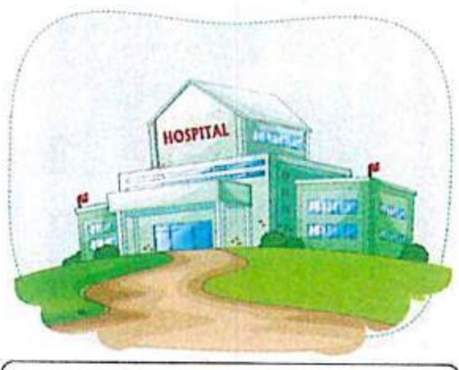
medicine دواء



operation عملية جراحية



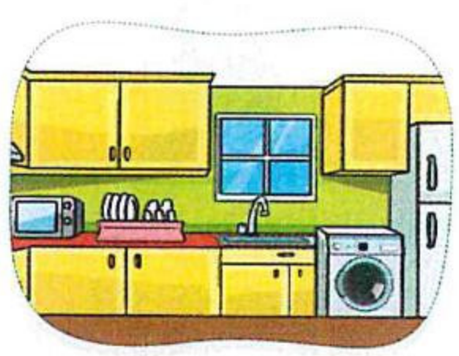
clean نظيف




hospital مستشفى



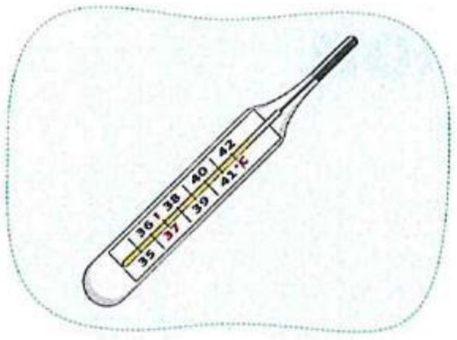
sick مريض



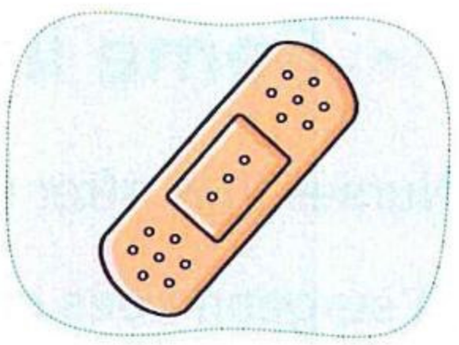
kitchen مطبخ



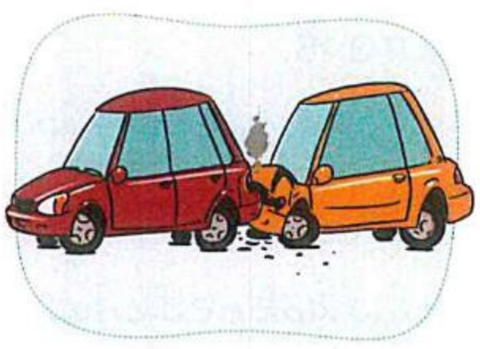
X-ray أشعة سينية



thermometer
ترمومتر [لقياس الحرارة]



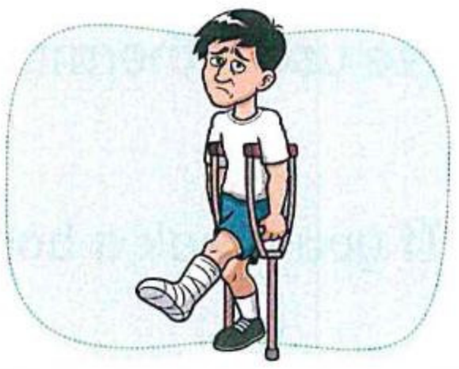
bandage ضمادة طبية



accident حادثة



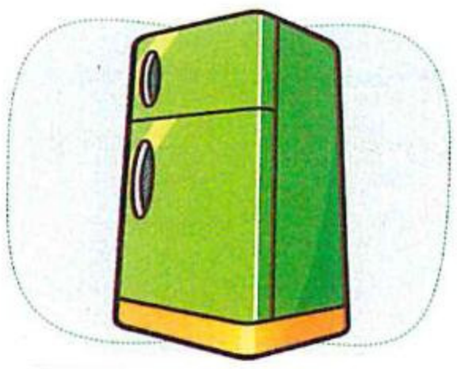
injure يجرح



cast ضمادة من الجبس



skateboard لوح تزلج

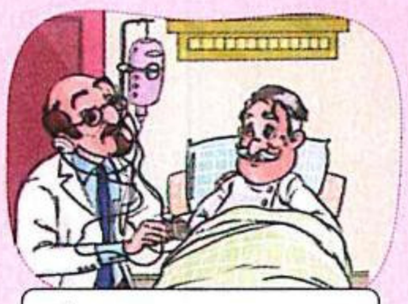


machine آلة



hurt يجرح / يؤلم

# Workers at a hospital



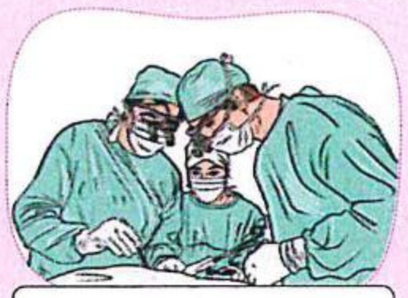
doctor طبيب



cleaner عامل نظافة



nurse ممرضة



surgeon جرّاح



carer موظف رعاية



nursing assistant
مساعد تمريض



receptionist موظف استقبال



cook طباخ

## Some information

**1.** Nurses look after sick people.

الممرضات يعتنون بالمرضى.

**2.** A surgeon does an operation.

يقوم الجراح بعملية جراحية.

**3.** It's important to have cleaners at the hospital.

من المهم وجود عمال نظافة فى المستشفى.

**4.** We use a thermometer to find out what our body temperature is.

نستخدم الترمومتر لقياس درجة حرارة جسمنا.

**5.** If you break a bone, you can have a cast.

إذا انكسرت لك عظمة، تستطيع أن تركب جبيرة من الجبس.

**6.** If you injure a muscle, a nurse can put a bandage on it.

إذا أصيبت لك عضلة، يمكن للممرضة وضع ضمادة طبية عليها.

▶ **Look and read.**

انظر واقرأ.

## Who works in a hospital ?




Doctors find out why you are sick. They know what medicine you need to take and what you need to do to get better.

Nurses look after you. They give you the right medicine and help you get better.

If you are very sick, sometimes you need an operation. A surgeon does an operation.

A hospital has to be very clean all the time, so it is important to have cleaners.

The receptionist organizes the appointments. They know what time you need to see the doctor.

A carer looks after someone who is sick for a long time. People sometimes need extra help to do things.

A nursing assistant helps you move around the hospital if you can't walk on your own.

People need healthy food in hospitals, so the cooks in the kitchens are important too.

**"من يعمل فى المستشفى ؟"**

الأطباء يعرفون سبب مرضك. إنهم يعرفون الدواء الذى تحتاج إلى تناوله وما عليك القيام به لتتحسن. الممرضات تعتنى بك. يعطونك الدواء المناسب ويساعدونك على التحسن. إذا كنت مريضًا جدًا، فأنت بحاجة أحيانًا إلى إجراء عملية جراحية. يمكن للجراح أن يقوم بإجراء عملية جراحية. يجب أن تكون المستشفى نظيفة جدًا طوال الوقت، لذلك من المهم أن يكون لديهم عمال نظافة.

موظف الاستقبال ينظم المواعيد. إنهم يعرفون الوقت الذى تحتاجه لرؤية الطبيب.

يعتنى موظف الرعاية بشخص مريض لفترة طويلة. يحتاج الناس أحيانًا إلى مساعدة إضافية للقيام بالأشياء. يمكن أن يساعدك مساعد التمريض فى التنقل فى المستشفى إذا كنت لا تستطيع المشى بمفردك. يحتاج الناس إلى طعام صحى فى المستشفيات، لذا فإن الطهاة فى المطابخ مهمون أيضًا.

https://t.me/G5 Y3

https://t.me/G5_Y5

▶ **Listen, read and identify.** استمع، اقرأ وتعرف.

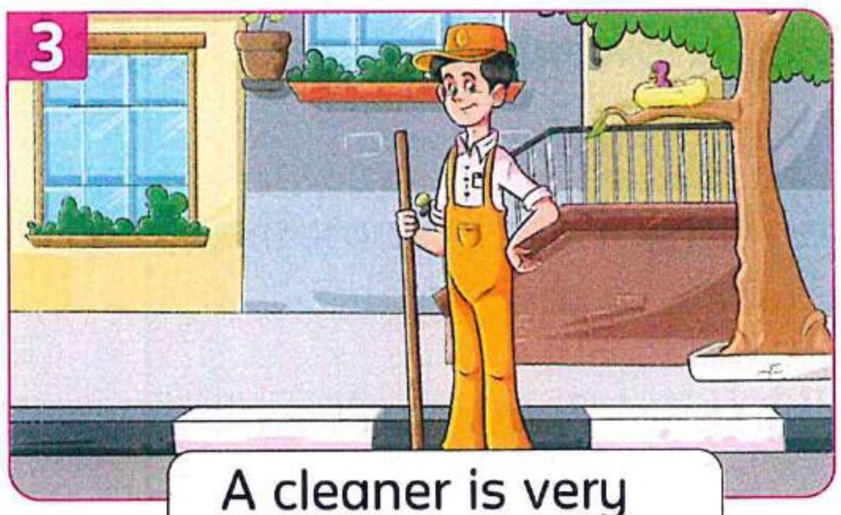
# People at the hospital




A doctor can find out why you are sick.



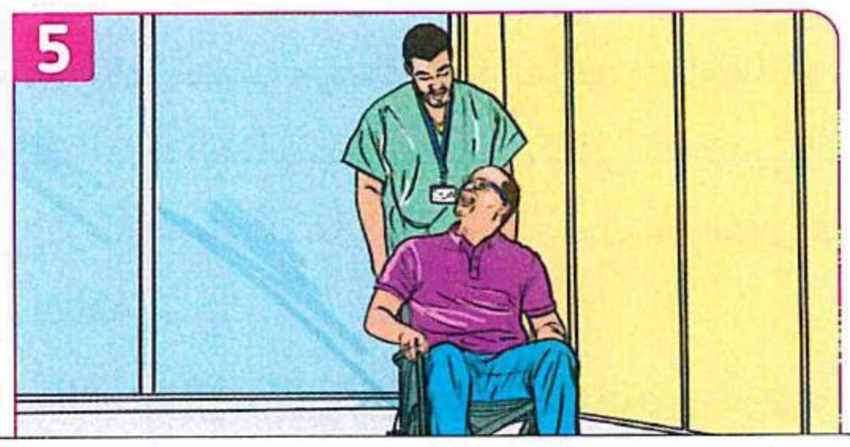

A nurse can give you medicine.



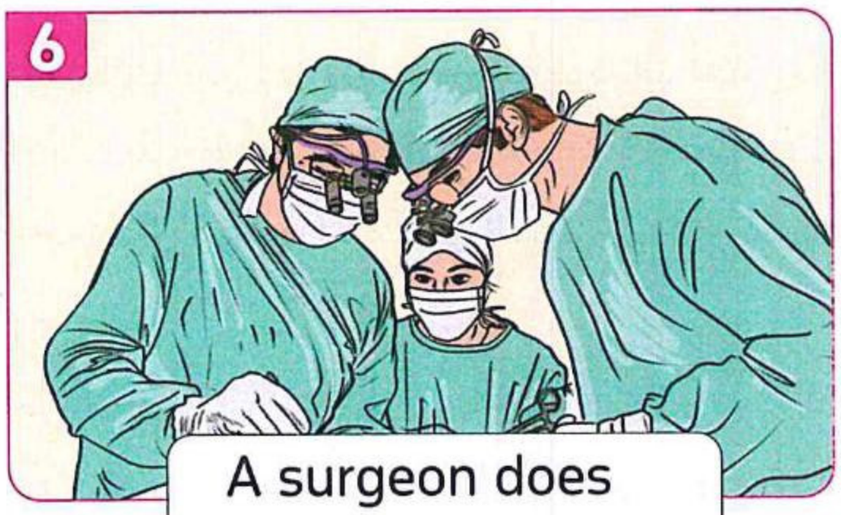

A cleaner is very important !



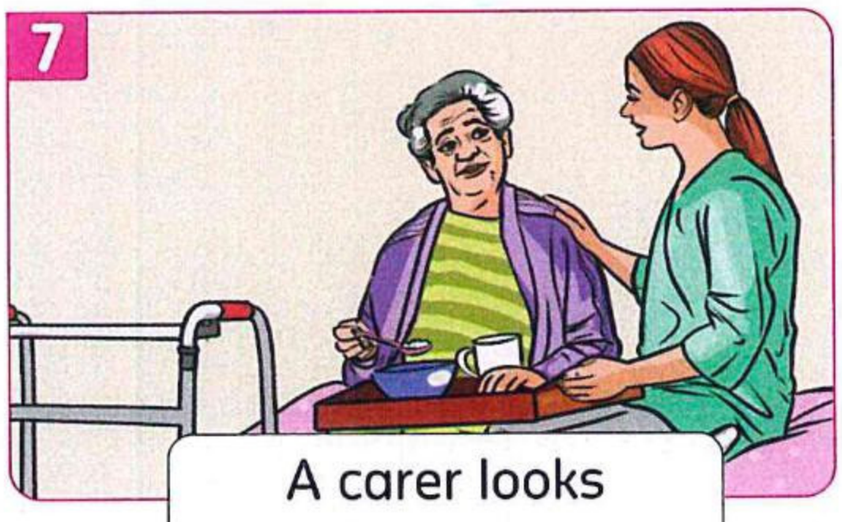

A receptionist organizes your appointment.



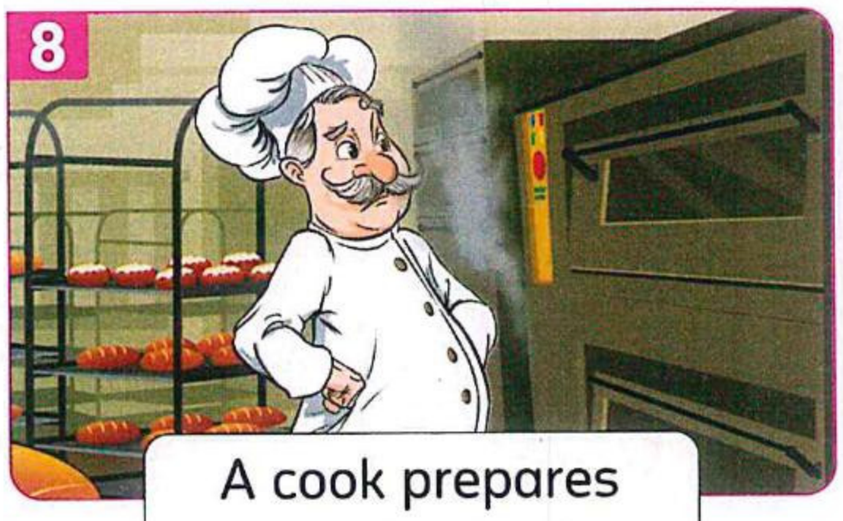

A nursing assistant can help a patient move around the hospital.




A surgeon does an operation.




A carer looks after people.




A cook prepares healthy food.

▶ **Look and read.**

انظر واقرأ.

# What happens when you go to hospital ?

A doctor or nurse sometimes takes your temperature. If you are ill, you can be too hot or too cold. They use a thermometer to find out what your body temperature is.

يقوم الطبيب أو الممرضة أحيانًا بقياس درجة حرارتك. إذا كنت مريضًا، فقد تكون درجة حرارتك مرتفعة أو شديدة البرودة. يستخدمون مقياس حرارة لمعرفة درجة حرارة جسمك.





A doctor or nurse can measure your blood pressure, too. This shows how well your heart is pumping blood around your arteries.

يمكن للطبيب أو الممرضة قياس ضغط الدم أيضًا. يوضح هذا مدى جودة ضخ قلبك للدم حول الشرايين.

You can have an X-ray to look at your bones.

يمكنك إجراء أشعة سينية لتنظر إلى عظامك.





If you have an accident and break a bone, you can have a cast put on your arm or leg. You have to wear it for about six weeks!

إذا تعرضت لحادث وكسرت عظمة، فيمكنك وضع جبيرة على ذراعك أو ساقك. عليك أن ترتديه لمدة ستة أسابيع!

If you injure a muscle, a nurse can put a bandage on.
This supports your arm or leg so your muscle can get better.

إذا أصيبت إحدى العضلات، يمكن للممرضة وضع ضمادة طبية عليها. هذا يدعم ذراعك أو ساقك حتى تتحسن عضلاتك.



# General Exercises on Non-Fiction Reader



## 1 A. Read and match.

| [A] | | [B] |
|---|---|---|
| 1. The receptionist organizes | ● | ☐ a. very clean all the time. |
| 2. A hospital has to be | ● | ☐ b. appointments. |

### B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Doctors can find out why you are sick. ☐
2. People don't need healthy food in hospitals. ☐

## 2 A. Read and match.

| [A] | | [B] |
|---|---|---|
| 1. If you injure a muscle, | ● | ☐ a. your blood pressure. |
| 2. A nurse can measure | ● | ☐ b. a nurse can put a bandage on. |

### B. Read and write (Yes) or (No).

1. Doctors use a thermometer to find out what your body temperature is. [.....]
2. The nursing assistant helps you move around the hospital. [.....]

## 3 A. Read and match.

| [A] | | [B] |
|---|---|---|
| 1. A surgeon | ● | ☐ a. someone who is sick. |
| 2. A carer looks after | ● | ☐ b. does an operation. |

### B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The cooks in the kitchens in hospitals aren't important. ☐
2. Nurses give us the right medicine to get better. ☐

https://t.me/G5_Y5

Fiction Reader

# Fares and the Fish

فارس والسمكة

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# Story Map خريطة القصة

## The characters الشخصيات



Fares



Adam



Wael



Dalia



Mom



Dad

## The setting المكان



the pool
حمام سباحة



the park
الحديقة




the hospital
المستشفى



home
المنزل

## Story plot حبكة القصة



### Beginning

- Fares loved swimming and he went swimming every day.
- He wanted to be an athlete.



### Middle

- Fares saw his friends in the park and they were on their skateboards.
- Fares stood on the skateboard and went very fast.
- He fell and his leg was broken.



### End

- At the end, his leg got better.
- He went to the sea, snorkelled and swam again.

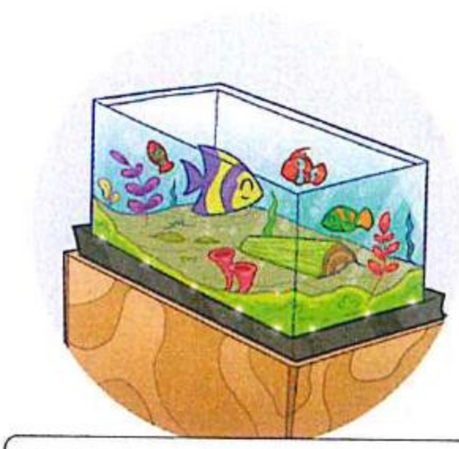
https://t.me/G5_Y5

# Picture Dictionary

## القاموس المصور



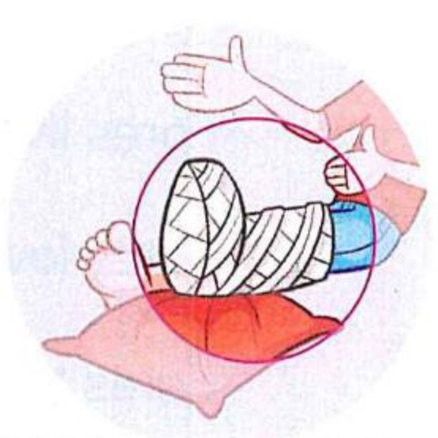
mask قناع



fish tank حوض سمك



ramp منحدر



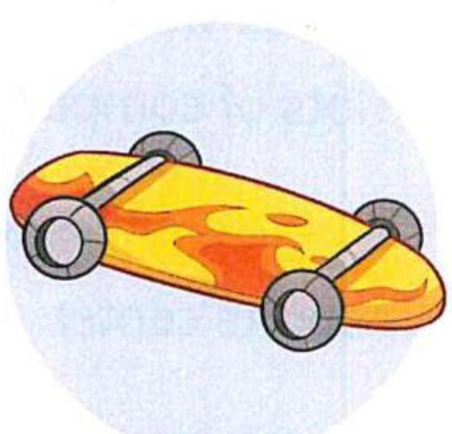
cast جبيرة من الجبس




ambulance
سيارة الاسعاف



snorkel
أنبوب للتنفس تحت الماء



skateboard
لوح التزلج

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| athlete | لاعب رياضى | knee pads | واقيات للركبة | helmet | خوذة |
| pool | حمام سباحة/مسبح | surprise | مفاجأة | put on | يرتدي |
| competition | مسابقة/منافسة | cycle | يركب الدراجة | movie | فيلم |
| lie down | يستلقى | came back | عاد | keep - kept | يحفظ - حفظ |
| borrow | يستعير | early | مبكرًا | underwater | تحت الماء |
| comic | كوميدى | too fast | بسرعة شديدة | rude | وقح |
| beautiful | جميل | count | يعد | train | يتدرب |
| feel-felt | يشعر / شَعر | feed - fed | يطعم - أطعم | Be careful! | احترس! |
| apologize | يعتذر | so do I | وأنا أيضًا | slipped | انزلق |
| rest | يستريح | stupid | غبى/مؤسف | pushed | دفع |
| pack | يحزم الأمتعة | sports center | مركز رياضى | worried | قلق |
| garage | جراج | X-ray | أشعة سينية | type | نوع |
| broken | مكسور | went out | خرج | soon | قريباً |
| children | أطفال | close to | بالقرب من | breathe | يتنفس |
| swimming | السباحة | go away | يذهب بعيدًا | | |

# Main points on "The Beginning"



- Fares lived with his family in Hurghada.
- Fares loved swimming.
- Fares trained in the pool for an hour every day.
- Fares wanted to be an athlete and to win lots of competitions.
- Fares and his family lived close to the sports center.
- Fares saw his friends in the park.
- Fares's friends were on their skateboards.
- Adam was really good at skateboarding.





# 1 The beginning
## بداية القصة

**Fares wanted to be an athlete.** كان يريد فارس أن يصبح لاعبًا رياضيًا.

Fares lived in Hurghada with his family. He loved swimming. He went swimming every day and trained in the pool for an hour. He wanted to be an athlete and to win lots of competitions.

عاش فارس فى الغردقة مع عائلته. كان يحب السباحة. كان يذهب للسباحه كل يوم ويتدرب فى حمام السباحة لمدة ساعة. أراد أن يكون لاعبًا رياضيًا وان يفوز بالكثير من المسابقات.



**Fares lived close to the sports center.**

كان يعيش فارس بالقرب من المركز الرياضى فى المدرسة.




Fares and his family lived close to the sports center. Sometimes he walked to the pool with his mom or dad.

عاش فارس وعائلته بالقرب من المركز الرياضى. أحيانًا كان يمشى إلى المسبح مع أمه أو أبيه.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

**Fares cycled to the pool.** كان فارس يركب الدراجة إلى المسبح.




Sometimes he cycled to the pool. فى بعض الأحيان كان يركب الدراجة إلى المسبح.

**Fares felt happy.** كان فارس يشعر بالسعادة .



One day, Fares got his bike out of the garage so he could cycle to the sports center.

"Have you got your cycle helmet, Fares ?" asked his mom.

"Yes Mom, of course," said Fares, putting on his helmet. "See you soon!"

Fares cycled through the park. It was a sunny morning and he felt happy."

ذات يوم، احضر فارس دراجته من الجراج حتى يستطيع قيادة الدراجة إلى المركز الرياضى. سألته والدته : "هل أخذت خوذتك يا فارس؟" و قال فارس مرتدياً خوذته : "نعم يا أمى، بالطبع" "أراكِ قريبًا!" تجول فارس بالدراجة فى الحديقة. كان صباحًا مشمس وقد شعر بالسعادة.

## Fares with his friends. فارس مع أصدقائه.

In the park, Fares saw his friends. They were on their skateboards. "Be careful, Adam," said Fares. "Why aren't you wearing a helmet or knee pads?"

"I don't need to," said Adam. "I'm really good at skateboarding."
"I haven't tried skateboarding before," said Fares. "It looks fun!" "Do you want to try?" asked Adam. "Yes, please!" said Fares.



فى الحديقة رأى فارس أصدقاؤه على ألواح التزلج الخاصة بهم. قال فارس : "كُن حذرًا يا آدم. لماذا لا ترتدى خوذة أو واقيًا للركبة ؟"
قال آدم : "لست بحاجة إلى ذلك. أنا جيد حقًا فى التزلج على الألواح التزلجية"

قال فارس : "لم أجرب التزلج من قبل. يبدو الأمر ممتعًا!" سأله آدم : "هل تريد أن تجرب ؟" قال فارس : "نعم من فضلك!"

## Fares tried skateboarding. فارس يجرب التزلج.



Fares stood at the top of the ramp. "How high is it?" he asked Adam. "I don't know," said Adam. "It isn't very high! It's easy !"

وقف فارس على قمة المنحدر وسأل آدم "كم يبلـغ ارتفاعه؟ " قال آدم : " لا أعرف إنه ليس مرتفعًا جدًا. إنه سهل !"

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# Questions & Answers on the Beginning

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح اعدت خصيصًا لتمكين الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

## 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

| | True |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares loved swimming. | T |
| 2. Adam is Fares's friend. | T |
| 3. The top of the ramp is very high. | T |
| 4. Fares's friends were on their skateboards. | T |
| 5. Fares sometimes walked to the pool with his mom or dad. | T |
| 6. Fares put on his helmet to cycle. | T |

تم وضع سبب الإجابة للتدريب فقط.

## 2 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

| | False | Correction |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Fares lived in Cairo. | F | Hurghada |
| 2. Fares got his ball out of the garage. | F | bike |
| 3. Fares walked through the park. | F | cycled |
| 4. Adam is bad at skateboarding. | F | good |
| 5. Fares saw his cousins in the park. | F | friends |
| 6. Fares lived far from the sports center. | F | close to |

## 3 Read and match.

| [A] | [B] | Answer |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Fares wanted to be • | ☐ **a.** for an hour. | 1. e |
| 2. Fares trained in the pool • | ☐ **b.** a helmet or knee pads. | 2. a |
| 3. Fares saw his friends • | ☐ **c.** very high. | 3. d |
| 4. Adam wasn't wearing • | ☐ **d.** in the park. | 4. b |
| | ☐ **e.** an athlete. | |

https://t.me/G5Y5

# General Exercises on "The beginning"

## 1 A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares lived in • | ☐ **a.** every day. |
| 2. Fares went swimming • | ☐ **b.** Hurghada. |

### B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares lived with his grandparents. ☐
2. Fares loved swimming. ☐

## 2 A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares trained in • | ☐ **a.** lots of competitions. |
| 2. Fares wanted to win • | ☐ **b.** the pool for an hour. |

### B. Read and write (Yes) or (No).

1. Fares wanted to be an athlete. [.....]
2. Fares and his family lived far from the sports center. [.....]

## 3 A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares cycled • | ☐ **a.** in the park. |
| 2. Fares saw his friends • | ☐ **b.** to the pool. |

### B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares walked to the pool with his sister. ☐
2. Fares got his bike out of the garage. ☐

## 4 A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Adam is good at • | ☐ **a.** on their skateboards. |
| 2. Fares's friends were • | ☐ **b.** skateboarding. |

### B. Read and write (Yes) or (No).

1. Fares hasn't tried skateboarding before. [.....]
2. Fares loved climbing mountains. [.....]

# Main points on "The Middle"



- Fares stood on the skateboard and pushed with his feet.

- Fares went down the ramp, but he was too fast.

- Fares slipped and fell.

- Adam called Fares's mom and the ambulance.

- Fares had an X-ray at the hospital.

- Fares's leg was broken.

- Fares had to wear a cast for about six weeks.

- Fares was angry and sad.

- Fares was rude to his family.

- Fares watched a movie with his family.

- Fares wanted to swim, but he couldn't.

https://t.me/e55

# 2 The Middle
## منتصف القصة

### Fares's accident. حادثة فارس.

Fares stood on the skateboard and pushed with his feet. He went quickly down the ramp- but he was too fast! Fares slipped and fell.

وقف فارس على لوح التزلج ودفع بقدميه. نزل المنحدر بسرعة لكنه كان شديد السرعة ! انزلق فارس وسقط.



### Fares hurt his leg. فارس يؤذى قدمه.



"Are you OK?" asked Adam. He was worried. "No," said Fares. "My leg hurts." "Can you move it?" asked Adam. "No, I can't" said Fares.

سأل آدم : "هل أنت بخير؟" كان قلقًا.

قال فارس : "لا، ساقى تؤلمنى".

سأله آدم : "هل يمكنك تحريكها؟"

قال فارس : "لا، لا أستطيع."

## Adam called an ambulance. آدم يتصل بالإسعاف.

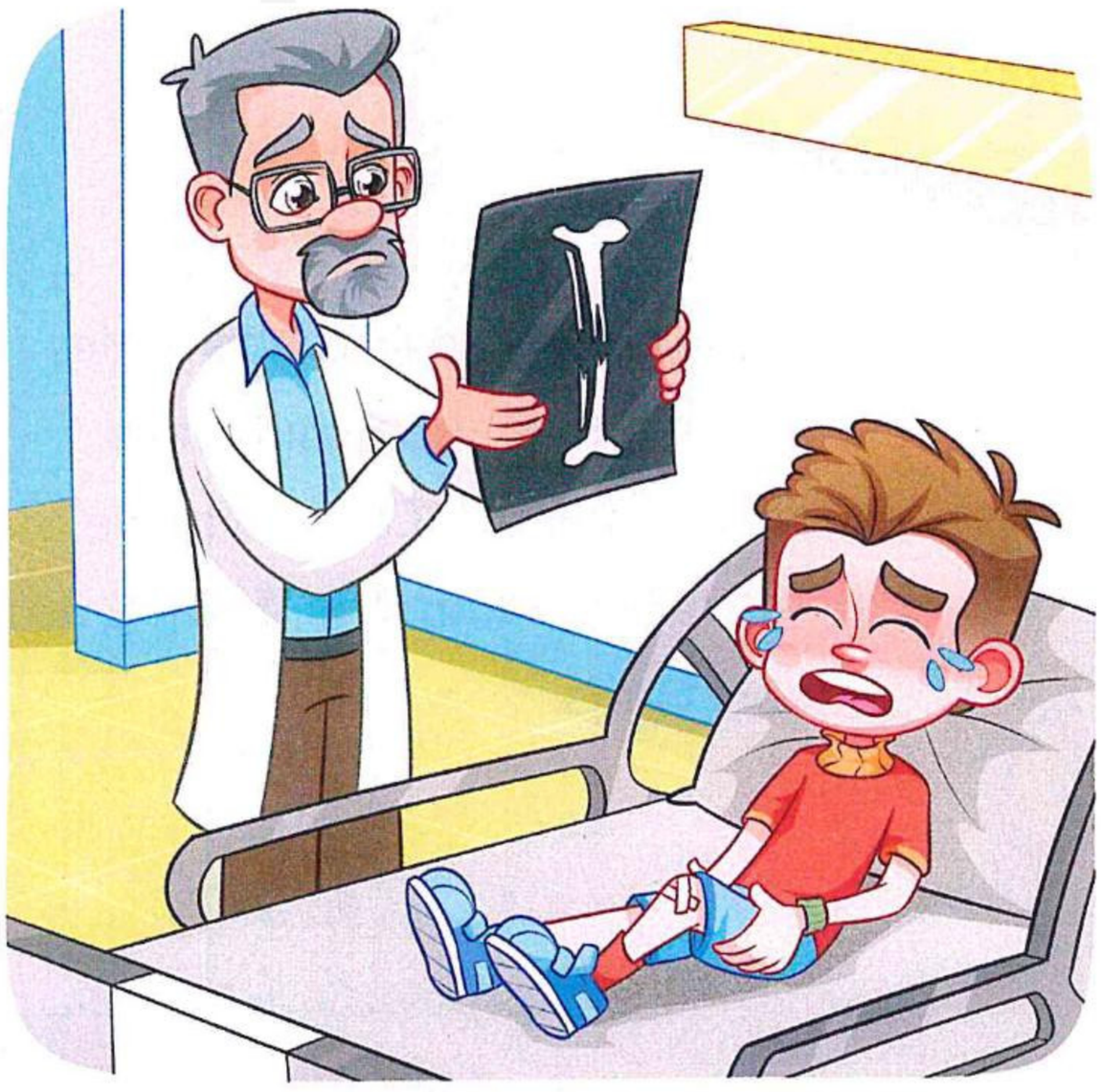
"It might be broken," said Adam. "I'm going to call your mom, and then I'm going to call an ambulance."

"Oh no," said Fares. "I won't be able to swim !

قال آدم : "يمكن أن تكون مكسورة. سوف أتصل بوالدتك ثم سأتصل بالإسعاف" قال فارس "أوه ، لا! لن أكون قادراً على السباحة!"



## Fares at the hospital. فارس فى المستشفى.



At the hospital, Fares had an X-ray.

"I'm sorry," said the doctor. "Your leg is broken. Look at this."

Fares saw his bone on the photo.

"You will have to wear a cast for about six weeks," said the doctor.

Fares was very sad.

فى المستشفى، أجرى فارس أشعة سينية. قال الطبيب : "للأسف ساقك مكسورة. انظر إلى هذا."
رأى فارس عظمة ساقه فى الصورة. قال الطبيب : "سوف تضطر إلى ارتداء جبيرة لمدة ستة أسابيع". كان فارس حزينًا جداً.

https://t.me/GS_YS

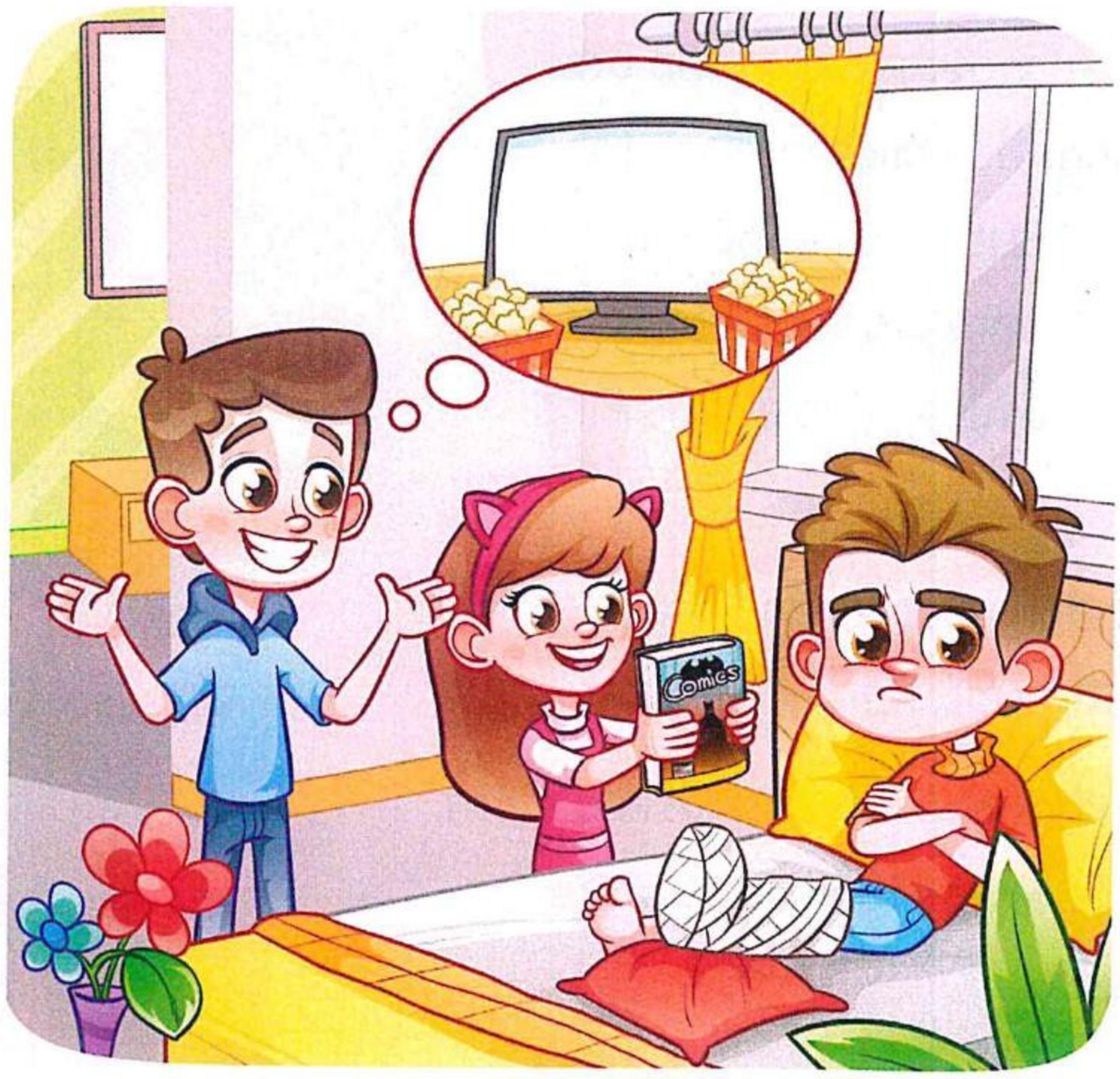
## Fares was angry and sad. فارس كان غاضبًا وحزينًا.

At home, Fares lay down on his bed. He was angry and sad, and his leg hurt.

"Do you want to come and watch TV, Fares ?" asked his little brother Wael. "No," said Fares.

"Do you want to borrow my comic, Fares?" asked his sister Dalia.

"No," said Fares . "Go away."




فى المنزل، استلقى فارس على سريره وهو غاضبًا وحزينًا. وساقه تؤلمه.

سأله أخوه الصغير وائل "هل تريد أن تأتى وتشاهد التليفزيون يا فارس؟" قال فارس "لا".

سألته أخته داليا "هل تريد أن تستعير الكتاب الكوميدى الخاص بى يا فارس ؟" قال فارس "لا اذهبى بعيدًا."

## Fares apologized. فارس يعتذر.



Later that evening, Fares apologized to his family. "I'm sorry. I was rude," he said. "I know you are trying to help me. I'm angry and sad because I had a stupid accident, and now I can't swim."

"Don't worry, Fares," said Mom. "We understand. Let's watch a movie together."

"Thank you," said Fares.

فى وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء، اعتذر فارس لعائلته.

قال : "أنا آسف لأننى كنت وقحًا. أعلم أنكم تحاولون مساعدتى. أنا غاضب وحزين لأننى تعرضت لحادث مؤسف والآن لا يمكننى السباحة". قالت الأم : "لا تقلق يا فارس نحن نتفهم . هيا نشاهد فيلم معًا". قال فارس "شكرًا لكم".

https://t.me/G5Y5

## Fares's mom and dad were worried. كانت والدة فارس ووالده قلقين.

They watched a movie and then the children went to bed. But Fares's mom and dad were worried. Fares was usually happy and kind.

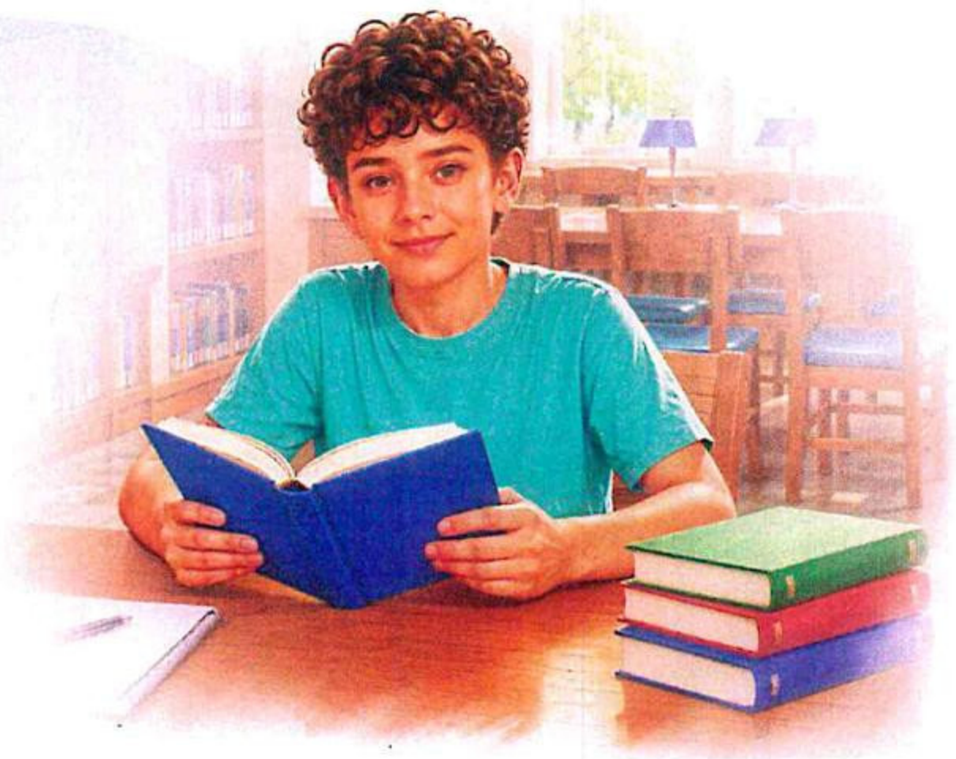
"I don't like seeing Fares so sad," said Dad.

"What can we do?" asked Mom.

"He wants to swim, but he can't."



لقد شاهدوا فيلمًا وبعد ذلك ذهب الأطفال إلى النوم. لكن والدة فارس ووالده كانوا قلقين. كان فارس سعيدًا ولطيفًا. قال الأب "لا أحب أن أرى فارس حزينًا هكذا" سألت الأم "ماذا نستطيع أن نفعل؟ إنه يريد السباحة لكنه لا يستطيع".



# A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# Questions & Answers on The middle

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح اعدت خصيصًا لتمكين الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

## 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

| | True |
|---|---|
| 1. Adam was worried about Fares. | T |
| 2. Fares couldn't move after he slipped. | T |
| 3. Fares went to the hospital. | T |
| 4. Fares lay down on his bed at home. | T |
| 5. Dalia asked Fares to borrow her comic book. | T |
| 6. Fares was rude with his family. | T |

تم وضع سبب الإجابة للتدريب فقط.

## 2 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

| | False | Correction |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Fares's arm hurts. | F | leg |
| 2. Adam called Fares's dad. | F | mom |
| 3. Fares has to wear a helmet for about six weeks. | F | cast |
| 4. Dalia is Fares's mother. | F | sister |
| 5. Fares had an X-ray at the park. | F | hospital |
| 6. Fares was usually happy and unkind. | F | kind |

## 3 Read and match.

| [A] | [B] | Answers |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Fares's leg is ● | ☐ a. accident. | 1. e |
| 2. Fares had a stupid ● | ☐ b. a movie. | 2. a |
| 3. Fares wanted to swim, but ● | ☐ c. slipped and fell. | 3. d |
| 4. Fares's family watched ● | ☐ d. he couldn't | 4. b |
| | ☐ e. broken. | |

# General Exercises on "The middle"

## 1 A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares's leg • | ☐ a. down the ramp. |
| 2. Fares went quickly • | ☐ b. hurts. |

### B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares stood on the skateboard. ☐
2. Fares slipped and fell. ☐

## 2 A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares had • | ☐ a. an ambulance. |
| 2. Adam phoned • | ☐ b. an X-ray. |

### B. Read and write (Yes) or (No).

1. Adam was worried about Fares. [.....]
2. Fares's leg is broken. [.....]

## 3 A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares will wear • | ☐ a. very sad. |
| 2. Fares was • | ☐ b. a cast for about six weeks. |

### B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares saw his bone on the photo. ☐
2. Fares lay down on his bed at home. ☐

## 4 A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares's family watched • | ☐ a. stupid accident. |
| 2. Fares had a • | ☐ b. a movie together. |

### B. Read and write (Yes) or (No).

1. Wael is Fares's friend. [.....]
2. Fares apologized to his family. [.....]

# Main points on "The End"



- Dad and Dalia had a surprise for Fares.

- Dad and Dalia took the boxes into the kitchen.

- Fares's dad carried a large fish tank into Fares's room.

- Fares could see lots of beautiful fish.

- Fares enjoyed watching the fish.

- Fares learned the names of the different types of fish.

- Fares fed the fish and kept their water clean.

- Fares was better after two months.

- Fares didn't have to wear the cast.

- Fares and his family packed their things for a day at the beach.

- Fares went into the sea and wanted to swim like a fish.

# 3 | The End
## نهاية القصة

### A surprise for Fares. مفاجأة لفارس.

The next day, Dad and Dalia went out early. When they came back, they had lots of boxes.

They took the boxes into the kitchen.

"What are you doing?" asked Mom.

"It's a surprise," said Dalia.

فى اليوم التالى، خرج الأب وداليا مبكرًا. عندما عادوا إلى المنزل كان معهم الكثير من الصناديق.

أخذوا الصناديق إلى المطبخ. سألت الأم "ماذا تفعلوا؟" قالت داليا "إنها مفاجأة".



### A beautiful fish tank. حوض سمك جميل.



Later, Dad went to see Fares.
"Fares, look at this," he said.

He carried a large fish tank into the room and put it on the table at the end of the bed. Fares looked. He could see lots of beautiful fish.

فى وقت لاحق، ذهب الأب لرؤية فارس. قال الأب :
"فارس، انظر إلى هذا".

حمل الأب حوض سمك كبير إلى الغرفة ووضعه على المنضدة فى نهاية السرير. نظر فارس. استطاع رؤية الكثير من الأسماك الجميلة.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## Fares is happy now. الآن فارس سعيدًا.

"They're beautiful !" he said.
"Thank you !" "How many fish
can you see?" asked Wael.
"I can see lots of fish! There are
too many to count! I love them!"
Fares was very happy.



قال فارس، "إنها جميلة. شكرًا لكم!" ، سأل
وائل، "كم سمكة يمكنك رؤيتها ؟" "أستطيع
أن أرى الكثير من الأسماك! هناك الكثير جدًا
لدرجة يصعب عدها ! أنا أحبهم ! كان فارس
سعيدًا جدًا.

## Fares enjoys watching the fish. يستمتع فارس بمشاهدة الأسماك.



Fares enjoyed watching the fish.
He learned the names of the
different types of fish. He fed
them and kept their water clean.
Fares was happy and he rested.
Slowly, his leg got better. "Soon
I'll be able to swim, like you," he
said to his fish.

استمتع فارس بمشاهدة الأسماك. تعلم
أسماء الأنواع المختلفة من الأسماك. كان
يطعمها وحافظ على نظافة المياه الخاصة
بهم. كان فارس سعيدًا وقد استراح. تحسنت
ساقه ببطء. قال للأسماك الخاصة به "قريبًا
سأكون قادر على السباحة مثلكم."

https://t.me/GS_Y5

## Fares is better. تتحسن حالة فارس.

After two months, Fares was better. He didn't have to wear the cast, and he could walk and run.

"Let's go to the beach!" said his mom. The family packed their things for a day at the beach.

"I want to swim in the sea!" said Wael. "So do I!" said Fares.



بعد شهرين، كان فارس أفضل. لم يكن مضطرًا إلى ارتداء الجبيرة وكان بإمكانه المشى والركض. قالت الأم: "هيا نذهب إلى الشاطئ!" حزمت الأسرة أغراضهم لقضاء يوم واحد على الشاطئ. قال وائل : "أريد أن أسبح فى البحر!" قال فارس "وأنا أيضًا!".

## Fares can swim now. يستطيع فارس السباحة الآن.



At the beach, Dad had another surprise. "Put on this mask and snorkel, Fares," he said. "You can swim and breathe underwater." Fares went into the sea, and he looked under the water. He could see lots of fish !

"It's so beautiful. I want to swim like a fish!" he laughed.

على الشاطئ، كان لدى الأب مفاجأة أخرى. قال الأب "ارتدى هذا القناع وأنبوب التنفس يا فارس. يمكنك السباحة والتنفس تحت الماء". ذهب فارس إلى البحر ونظر تحت الماء. استطاع رؤية الكثير من الأسماك ! ضحك وقال "إنها جميلة جدًا. أريد أن أسبح مثل السمكة !".

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# Questions & Answers on "The End"

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح اعدت خصيصًا لتمكين الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

## 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

| | True |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares could swim and breathe under water. | T |
| 2. Fares could see beautiful fish in the fish tank. | T |
| 3. Fares fed the fish and kept their water clean. | T |
| 4. Fares wanted to swim in the sea. | T |
| 5. Fares learned the names of the different types of fish. | T |
| 6. There were too many fish to count in the fish tank. | T |

تم وضع سبب الإجابة للتدريب فقط.

## 2 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

| | No | Correction |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Dad and Dalia took the books into the kitchen. | F | boxes |
| 2. Dad carried a large whale tank. | F | fish |
| 3. Fares could see lots of ugly fish. | F | beautiful |
| 4. Fares and his family went to the park. | F | beach |
| 5. Wael wanted to swim like a fish. | F | Fares |
| 6. Fares was very sad to swim again. | F | happy |

## 3 Read and match.

| [A] | [B] | Answers |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Fares put on ● | ☐ a. swim in the sea. | 1. e |
| 2. Fares wanted to ● | ☐ b. a large fish tank. | 2. a |
| 3. Fares's leg ● | ☐ c. into the kitchen. | 3. d |
| 4. Fares's dad carried ● | ☐ d. got better. | 4. b |
| | ☐ e. his mask and snorkeled. | |

https://t.me/G5Y5

# Sample Tests on Story

## 1 El-Moasser exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

### Sample Test 1

**A. Read and match.**

| [A] | | [B] |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Fares could see | ● | ☐ **a.** swim in the sea. |
| 2. Fares wanted to | ● | ☐ **b.** lots of beautiful fish. |

**B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Dalia and her dad took the boxes into the kitchen. ☐
2. Fares's dad doesn't like seeing Fares sad. ☐

### Sample Test 2

**A. Read and match.**

| [A] | | [B] |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Fares cycled | ● | ☐ **a.** little brother. |
| 2. Wael is Fares's | ● | ☐ **b.** to the pool. |

**B. Read and write (Yes) or (No).**

1. Dalia had a surprise to Fares. [.....]
2. Fares learned the names of the different types of fish. [.....]

### Sample Test 3

**A. Read and match.**

| [A] | | [B] |
|---|---|---|
| 1. The doctor showed Fares | ● | ☐ **a.** close to the sports center. |
| 2. Fares and his family lived | ● | ☐ **b.** an X-ray. |

**B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

1. Wael and Fares wanted to swim in the sea. ☐
2. Fares's family went to the park. ☐

https://t.me/G5 Y5

## Sample Test 4

### A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares wanted to be ● | ☐ **a.** friend. |
| 2. Adam is Fares's ● | ☐ **b.** an athlete. |

### B. Read and write [Yes] or [No].

1. Fares wanted to swim like a fish. [.....]
2. Dalia went swimming every day. [.....]

## Sample Test 5

### A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Dad put a fish tank ● | ☐ **a.** on the table. |
| 2. The family packed their things ● | ☐ **b.** for a day at the beach. |

### B. Read and write T [True] or F [False].

1. Fares could see lots of fish. ☐
2. Fares could swim and breathe under water. ☐

## Sample Test 6

### A. Read and match.

| [A] | [B] |
|---|---|
| 1. Fares couldn't ● | ☐ **a.** a comic book. |
| 2. Dalia had ● | ☐ **b.** move his leg. |

### B. Read and write [Yes] or [No].

1. Fares always went to the sports center on foot. [.....]
2. Dalia and Wael were kind to Fares. [.....]

## 2 Previous Exams تدريبات من الامتحانات السابقة

### Sample Test 1

**A. Read and match.** [Fayoum 2025]

| [A] | | [B] |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Fares had to wear | ● | ☐ **a.** a cast on his leg. |
| 2. Dalia asked Fares to | ● | ☐ **b.** borrow her comic book. |

**B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).** [Minya – 2025]

1. Fares always wore his cycle helmet. ☐
2. Fares went to the sports center by car. ☐

### Sample Test 2

**A. Read and match.** [Damietta 2025]

| [A] | | [B] |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Fares lived close to | ● | ☐ **a.** a helmet or knee pads. |
| 2. Adam wasn't wearing | ● | ☐ **b.** the sports center. |

**B. Read and write (Yes) or (No).** [Dakahlia 2026]

1. Fares saw his face on the photo. [.....]
2. Fares enjoyed watching the fish. [.....]

### Sample Test 3

**A. Read and match.** [Cairo – Ain Shams 2025]

| [A] | | [B] |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Fares had to wear | ● | ☐ **a.** move his leg. |
| 2. Fares couldn't | ● | ☐ **b.** a cast on his leg. |

**B. Read and write T (True) or F (False).** [Alexandria - Gomrok 2025]

1. Fares walked to the pool with his friends. ☐
2. Fares trained in the pool for an hour. ☐

https://t.me/G5 Y5

https://t.me/G5 Y5

## Sample Test 4

### A. Read and match.

[Sharqia 2025]

| [A] | | [B] | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Adam called | ● | ☐ **a.** was broken. | |
| 2. Fares's leg | ● | ☐ **b.** the ambulance. | |

### B. Read and write [Yes] or [No].

[Aswan – Aswan 2025]

1. Fares wasn't sorry, he was rude. [.....]
2. Dalia is Fares's mother. [.....]

## Sample Test 5

### A. Read and match.

[Beheira – Abu El-Matamir 2026]

| [A] | | [B] | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Fares broke | ● | ☐ **a.** to his family. | |
| 2. Fares apologized | ● | ☐ **b.** his leg. | |

### B. Read and write T [True] or F [False].

[Cairo – Hadayek El-Quba 2025]

1. Fares wanted to be a doctor. ☐
2. The doctor showed Fares an x-ray. ☐

## Sample Test 6

### A. Read and match.

[Beheira – Abo Homos 2025]

| [A] | | [B] | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Fares saw his friends | ● | ☐ **a.** to the hospital. | |
| 2. Fares fell and went | ● | ☐ **b.** in the park. | |

### B. Read and write [Yes] or [No].

[Monufia - Sadat 2025]

1. Fares's leg was broken. [.....]
2. Adam wore a helmet and knee pads. [.....]

# El-Moasser Follow-up

كراسة المعاصر للتقييمات والواجب المنزلى.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

https://t.me/GSY5



# Contents

## El-Moasser Follow-up

محتويات كراسة المعاصر للتقييمات والواجب المنزلى

## Part 1 Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدات

## Part 2 El-Moasser Assessments

1 October Assessments



2 November Assessments



## Part 3 My Neat Handwriting

كراسة المعاصر لتنمية مهارة الكتابة

Part 1

# Dictation on Lessons

## إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

## UNIT 1

### Lessons 1&2

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | الرمى | ..... | السباحة |
| ..... | القفز | ..... | الجرى |
| race | ..... | medal | ..... |
| athlete | ..... | distance | ..... |

### Lessons 3,4 & 5

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | يساند صديق | ..... | يتدرب |
| ..... | يسجل [هدف] | ..... | يأتى فى المركز الثانى |
| runner | ..... | warm up | ..... |
| try harder | ..... | get fit | ..... |

### Lessons 6 & 7

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | يضغط على | ..... | قلعة |
| ..... | يعتذر | ..... | مدينة |
| spread rumors | ..... | make fun of | ..... |
| space | ..... | tell secrets | ..... |

### Lessons 8 & 9

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | مرمى / هدف | ..... | لاعب كرة قدم |
| ..... | ارنب برى | ..... | سلحفاة برية |
| finish line | ..... | team | ..... |
| swimmer | ..... | score | ..... |

https://t.me/G5YS

# UNIT 2

## Lesson 1

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | الاوردة | ..... | دم |
| ..... | مخ | ..... | قلب |
| lungs | ..... | skeleton | ..... |
| arteries | ..... | nutrients | ..... |

## Lessons 2 & 3

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | فك | ..... | جمجمة |
| ..... | ركبة | ..... | مرفق [كوع] |
| rib | ..... | organ | ..... |
| muscle | ..... | bone | ..... |

## Lessons 4, 5 & 6

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | جذر | ..... | غاضب |
| ..... | قدم | ..... | أداة |
| calm | ..... | stay up late | ..... |
| skip breakfast | ..... | mood | ..... |

## Lessons 7, 8 & 9

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | معدة | ..... | اسنان |
| ..... | لسان | ..... | الم فى المعدة |
| energy | ..... | digestion | ..... |
| sick | ..... | saliva | ..... |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# UNIT 3

## Lessons 1, 2 & 3

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | صداع | ..... | منتجات ألبان |
| ..... | اوعية دموية | ..... | مفاصل |
| minerals | ..... | cereal | ..... |
| fiber | ..... | hydrated | ..... |

## Lessons 4 & 5

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | يقيس | ..... | سعرات حرارية |
| ..... | نسبة مئوية | ..... | تغليف المواد الغذائية |
| chocolate brownie | ..... | dried fruit bar | ..... |
| serving | ..... | sodium | ..... |

## Lessons 6 & 7

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | محطة إطفاء | ..... | خيال |
| ..... | عصا / عود | ..... | بازلاء |
| nutrition | ..... | digestion | ..... |
| chips | ..... | garden | ..... |

## Lessons 8 & 9

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | زبيب | ..... | معلقة صغيرة |
| ..... | مرتبك | ..... | سكر |
| fruit yogurt | ..... | plain yogurt | ..... |
| damage | ..... | anxious | ..... |

# UNIT 4

## Lessons 1, 2 & 3

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | بومة | ..... | بطريق |
| ..... | كاميرا ويب | ..... | الفهد الصياد |
| sloth | ..... | macaw | ..... |
| wildlife park | ..... | sea lion | ..... |

## Lessons 4 & 5

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | ذئب | ..... | أرض رطبة |
| ..... | يصطاد | ..... | خيمة |
| rainforest | ..... | Arctic fox | ..... |
| swamp | ..... | camp | ..... |

## Lessons 6 & 7

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | الحقيقة | ..... | زوجة |
| ..... | شروط / ظروف | ..... | وهمى / خيال |
| sweet | ..... | crocodile | ..... |
| equator | ..... | climate | ..... |

## Lessons 8 & 9

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | حريق / نار | ..... | فيضان |
| ..... | جفاف | ..... | كوارث طبيعية |
| rubbish | ..... | crowded | ..... |
| nature | ..... | poster | ..... |

https://t.me/G5_Y5

# UNIT 5

## Lessons 1, 2 & 3

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | واحة | ..... | ينبوع |
| ..... | ريحان | ..... | عشب |
| soak | ..... | spearmint | ..... |
| acacia tree | ..... | surface | ..... |

## Lessons 4 & 5

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | محيط | ..... | دورة المياه |
| ..... | تجربة | ..... | مياة عذبة |
| condensation | ..... | evaporation | ..... |
| salt water | ..... | precipitation | ..... |

## Lessons 6 & 7

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | أفعى الكوبرا | ..... | مأوى |
| ..... | رياح | ..... | جذع شجرة |
| oak | ..... | reed | ..... |
| thick | ..... | crack | ..... |

## Lessons 8 & 9

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | فصل الربيع | ..... | فصل الصيف |
| ..... | المنطقة القطبية | ..... | المنطقة الاستوائية |
| lead to | ..... | fall | ..... |
| winter | ..... | temperate zone | ..... |

https://t.me/G5 Y5

# UNIT 6

## Lessons 1 & 2

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | قناة مائية | ..... | حاجز |
| ..... | ماسورة / أنبوبة | ..... | سد |
| sandbag | ..... | drain | ..... |
| airport | ..... | thunderstorm | ..... |

## Lessons 3 & 4

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | مسئول الطوارئ | ..... | عالق |
| ..... | متطوع / يتطوع | ..... | مخيف |
| rainfall | ..... | ruin | ..... |
| collapse | ..... | predict | ..... |

## Lessons 5 & 6

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | كريم | ..... | خطير |
| ..... | لئيم / بخيل | ..... | شجاع |
| situation | ..... | sociable | ..... |
| cooperative | ..... | loyal | ..... |

## Lessons 7 & 8

| A | | B | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | قصر | ..... | امبراطور |
| ..... | ساقية | ..... | قناة مائية |
| machine | ..... | seed | ..... |
| shadoof | ..... | High Dam | ..... |

Part 2

# Monthly Assessments through the Exam

## October Month




## 1 General Revision

مراجعة على منهج شهر أكتوبر من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتدريبات

### I Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| veins | الأوردة | spread rumors | ينشر شائعات | throwing | الرمى |
| arteries | الشرايين | apologize | يعتذر | race | سباق |
| skeleton | هيكل عظمى | tell secrets | يفشى أسرار | winner | فائز |
| jaw | فك | hare | أرنب برى | warm up | يقوم بعملية الإحماء |
| rib | ضلع | goal | مرمى / هدف | support a friend | يساند صديق |
| digestion | عملية الهضم | tortoise | سلحفاة برية | pressure | يضغط على |
| saliva | لعاب | elbow | كوع | muscles | عضلات |
| | | | | skull | جمجمة |

### II Language

#### ❶ Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

ا. الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

**statement**

**Subject** الفاعل + **will/won't** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة .

**Ex.** - We'll be happy. - It won't be easy to win.

#### ❷ Using "be going to" for future plans

**statement**

I → am ['m not]
He, She , It, اسم مفرد → is [isn't]
You , We, They, اسم جمع → are [aren't]

+ going to + inf. مصدر الفعل ..... .

**Ex.** He is going to ride a bike. - They are going to swim.

## 2 General Exercises

### Model 1

- **Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

swam - footballer - winning - smallest - record

The world record is something which is the fastest, biggest, oldest, or [1] ..... . The Egyptian [2] ..... Mohamed Salah scored the most goals of any African footballer in the UEFA Champions League. Egypt's national team has a world [3] ..... too. It is for [4] ..... the Africa Cup of Nations the most times.

### Model 2

- **Read the following text and answer the questions below.**

I am Omar. I am eight years old. I am in primary three. Today we're going to learn about the body. Miss Mona is going to tell us how the heart works. Our heart beats about 70 times a minute. Your heart moves blood around your body. Our brain controls everything that happens in our body. Our skeleton helps us move and makes us strong.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. Our ..... controls everything that happens in our body.

a. lung  b. brain  c. skeleton

2. Your heart moves ..... around your body.

a. blood  b. air  c. liquid

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. How old is Omar ?

.....

4. What are the children going to learn about today ?

.....

5. How many times does the heart beat a minute ?

.....

6. What does the skeleton do ?

.....

## Model 3

• **The Reader.**

**A. Read and match.**

| [A] | | [B] |
|---|---|---|
| **1.** Fares trained in the pool | • | ☐ **a.** the sports center. |
| **2.** Fares lived close to | • | ☐ **b.** for an hour. |

**B. Read and write [Yes] or [No].**

**1.** Fares lived in Aswan. [ ..... ]

**2.** Fares wanted to be an athlete. [ ..... ]

## Model 4

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

**1.** ..... they play football tomorrow ?

a. Have b. Are c. Will

**2.** I wake up early ..... go to school.

a. but b. so c. and

**3.** He stayed at home ..... he was sick.

a. because b. but c. or

**4.** They won't ..... their grandparents.

a. visits b. visit c. visiting

## Model 5

• **Read, order and write.**

**1.** am - the - watching - I - jump - long.

.....

**2.** athletes - quickly - are - The - running.

.....

## Model 6

• **Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.**

**"World records"**

**Guiding elements**

• fastest • broke • distance

.....

.....

.....

# Monthly Assessments through the Exam

## November Month




## 1 General Revision

**مراجعة على منهج شهر نوفمبر من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتدريبات**

### I Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| dairy | منتجات ألبان | hydrated | مشبع بالماء | strange | غريب |
| vitamins | فيتامينات | blood vessels | أوعية دموية | teaspoon | ملعقة صغيرة |
| nutrients | عناصر غذائية | joints | مفاصل | anxious | متوتر |
| confused | مرتبك | owl | بومة | sloth | حيوان الكسلان |
| calcium | كالسيوم | wildlife park | حديقة الحياة البرية | polar habitat | موطن قطبى |
| crayfish | جراد البحر | fire | حريق / نار | wetland | أرض رطبة |
| rainforest | غابة مطيرة | calories | سعرات حرارية | drought | جفاف |
| flood | فيضان | | | | |

### II Language

## Giving advice using "should & shouldn't"

**إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام «ينبغى أن / لا ينبغى أن»**

- **Statements**

**١. الجمل الخبرية**

**Subject** الفاعل **+ should / shouldn't + inf.** مصدر الفعل .....

## might & might not

### 1 Affirmative statements

**١. الجمل الخبرية المثبتة**

| Subj. الفاعل | + | might | + | inf. ... مصدر الفعل |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| It | | might | | eat grass. |

### 2 Negative statements

**٢. الجمل الخبرية المنفية**

| Subj. الفاعل | + | might not | + | inf. ... مصدر الفعل |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| It | | might not | | climb trees. |

https://t.me/g5Y5

## 2 General Exercises

### Model 1

• **Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

wetland - trees - warm - river - habitats

A habitat is a place with a kind of climate and landscape. There are different [1] ..... all over the world. A wetland is an example. A [2] ..... can be wet all the time. Wetlands can be near the sea or near a [3] ..... . A swamp is a wetland with lots of [4] ..... .

### Model 2

• **Read the following text and answer the questions below.**

It's important to get a balance of the right kinds of food. Our bodies need lots of different nutrients, including vitamins and minerals, to work well and be healthy. We need protein to help us grow and make our bodies strong. There is protein in meat, fish, and eggs. There is protein in dairy foods such as milk and cheese, too. Dairy foods also give us vitamins and a mineral called calcium. Calcium is good for our bones, heart, and muscles.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. It's important to get a balance of the ..... kinds of food.

a. unhealthy  b. bad  c. right

2. Dairy foods give us vitamins and a mineral called ..... .

a. calcium  b. fats  c. fiber

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What do our bodies need to work well and be healthy ?

.....

4. What foods have protein ?

.....

5. What do dairy foods give us ?

.....

6. What is calcium good for ?

.....

## Model 3

• **The Reader.**

**A. Read and match.**

| [A] | | [B] |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Fares had an X-ray | • | ☐ a. his family. |
| 2. Fares apologized to | • | ☐ b. at the hospital. |

**B. Read and write T [True] or F [False]**

1. Fares didn't want to borrow Dalia's comic. [ ..... ]
2. Fares was angry because he had a stupid accident. [ ..... ]

## Model 4

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.**

1. They should ..... helmets when riding bikes.
   a. wear  b. wears  c. wearing
2. You shouldn't ..... too much candy.
   a. eating  b. eats  c. eat
3. Should she ..... her room today ?
   a. cleans  b. clean  c. cleaning
4. They might ..... football after school.
   a. playing  b. plays  c. play

## Model 5

• **Read, order and write.**

1. is - plate - **What** - your - on ?

   .....

2. loved - chimpanzees - I - the - seeing.

   .....

## Model 6

• **Write a paragraph of about [20 words] 3 - 4 sentences using guiding elements.**

**"Animals"**

**Guiding elements**

• crayfish  • owls  • holes

.....

.....

.....

https://t.me/G5_Y5

Part 3



# My Neat Handwriting



لا تقتصر مهارة الكتابة علي استخدام **القلم** للكتابة في سطور فارغة
ولكن مهارة الكتابة هى **فن** التعبير عن **الأفكار**.

اجعل طفلك دائمًا يستمتع بمهارة الكتابة ولا تجعلها ثقلاً عليه.



## كيف تتعامل مع كراسة المعاصر لتنمية مهارة الكتابة مع كل وحدة على حده.



**اتبع الخطوات التالية**

الخطوة 1 تهيئة الطالب للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة باستخدام المفردات والوظائف اللغوية لكل وحدة.

الخطوة 2 التدرب على المفردات اللغويـة للوحدة.

الخطوة 3 التدرب على الوظائف اللغويـة للوحدة.

الخطوة 4 التدرب على كتابة جمل مرتبطة بالمفردات والـوظائـف اللغويـة التي تم دراستها.



## قيّم نفسك :

1. هل تتذكر المفردات اللغوية التي درستها في الوحدة ؟
2. هل تتذكر الوظائف اللغوية التي درستها في الوحدة ؟
3. هل لديك القدرة علي كتابة وقراءة الكلمات والجمل الخاصة بالوحدة ؟

UNIT 1

# I Important 8 words



كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

## ▶ Read, trace and write.

race

race

race

throwing

throwing

throwing

athlete

athlete

athlete

apologize

apologize

apologize

goal

goal

goal

hare

hare

hare

distance

distance

distance

swimmer

swimmer

swimmer

https://t.me/G5Y5

## II Important sentences

▶ **Read and trace.**

1. We are at the track.

We are at the track.

2. How far can he jump ?

How far can he jump ?

3. She is an athlete.

She is an athlete.

4. It's good to support your friend.

It's good to support your friend.

5. The hare ran very fast.

The hare ran very fast.

6. What is a world record ?

What is a world record ?

UNIT 2

# I Important 8 words



كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

▶ **Read, trace and write.**

veins

veins

veins

lungs

lungs

lungs

blood

blood

blood

skeleton

skeleton

skeleton

jaw

jaw

jaw

argument

argument

argument

digestion

digestion

digestion

tongue

tongue

tongue

https://t.me/G5Y5

## II Important sentences

▸ **Read and trace.**

1. Our skeleton helps us move.

Our skeleton helps us move.

2. Bones protect our soft organs.

Bones protect our soft organs.

3. My heart pumps blood around my body.

My heart pumps blood around my body.

4. We use muscles when we chew food.

We use muscles when we chew food.

5. How often do you drink water ?

How often do you drink water ?

6. I do exercise every day.

I do exercise every day.

UNIT 3

# I Important 8 words



كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

## ▶ Read, trace and write.

dairy

dairy

dairy

minerals

minerals

minerals

hydrated

hydrated

hydrated

joints

joints

joints

stick

stick

stick

teaspoon

teaspoon

teaspoon

nutrients

nutrients

nutrients

headache

headache

headache

https://t.me/G5Y5

https://t.me/G5_Y5

## II Important sentences

▶ **Read and trace.**

1. Carbohydrates give us energy.

Carbohydrates give us energy.

2. You should eat healthy food every day.

You should eat healthy food every day.

3. All living things need water.

All living things need water.

4. Calcium is good for our bones.

Calcium is good for our bones.

5. Sugar can be bad for our mood.

Sugar can be bad for our mood.

6. Plants get water from the soil.

Plants get water from the soil.

UNIT 4

# I Important 8 words

كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



## ▸ Read, trace and write.

crayfish

crayfish

crayfish

sloth

sloth

sloth

grassland

grassland

grassland

wetland

wetland

wetland

wife

wife

wife

equator

equator

equator

flood

flood

flood

drought

drought

drought

https://t.me/GSky

## II Important sentences

▶ **Read and trace.**

1. Foxes dig burrows in the ground.

Foxes dig burrows in the ground.

2. A swamp is a wetland with lots of trees.

A swamp is a wetland with lots of trees.

3. It's hot and wet in the rainforest.

It's hot and wet in the rainforest.

4. The sloth moves very slowly.

The sloth moves very slowly.

5. Lots of birds build nests in trees.

lots of birds build nests in trees.

6. Crayfish live in rivers.

Crayfish live in rivers.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

UNIT 5

# I Important 8 words



كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

## ▶ Read, trace and write.

spring

spring

spring

oasis

oasis

oasis

desert

desert

desert

tamarisk

tamarisk

tamarisk

herb

herb

herb

ocean

ocean

ocean

experiment

experiment

experiment

leaves

leaves

leaves

https://t.me/G5Y5

## II Important sentences

▶ **Read and trace.**

1. The desert is hot and dry.

The desert is hot and dry.

2. Farmers grow date palm trees.

Farmers grow date palm trees.

3. Acacia trees provide shelter for animals.

Acacia trees provide shelter for animals.

4. What plants can we see at an oasis ?

What plants can we see at an oasis ?

5. The water in polar zone is ice.

The water in polar zone is ice.

6. Rivers and lakes have fresh water.

Rivers and lakes have fresh water.

https://t.me/G5 Y5

UNIT 6

# I Important 8 words

كون قاموسك اللغوي بنفسك

المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



## ▸ Read, trace and write.

sandbag

sandbag

sandbag

pipe

pipe

pipe

barrier

barrier

barrier

dam

dam

dam

rainfall

rainfall

rainfall

sociable

sociable

sociable

emperor

emperor

emperor

palace

palace

palace

https://t.me/GSYS

## II Important sentences

▸ **Read and trace.**

1. A dam stops the flow of water in a river.

A dam stops the flow of water in a river.

2. An emergency responder volunteers to help the community.

An emergency responder volunteers to help the community.

3. Scientists can predict when floods will start.

Scientists can predict when floods will start.

4. How do you travel around the city ?

How do you travel around the city ?

5. She is polite and cooperative.

She is polite and cooperative.

6. He is brave and sociable.

He is brave and sociable.

https://t.me/G5_Y5



# Listening Texts



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بكتاب الشرح

## Unit 1

### Lesson 7
### Pop Quiz on Phonics

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. club
2. city
3. cake
4. coffee

### General Exercises on Lessons 7, 8 & 9

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. policeman
2. coffee
3. computer
4. mice

### Sample Test 1 on Unit 1

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. camel
2. carrot
3. fact
4. plastic

### Sample Test 2 on Unit 1

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. race
2. cookie
3. ice
4. citadel

## Unit 2

### Lesson 6
### Pop Quiz on phonics

Listen and write the missing sounds.

A. 1. book
2. cook
3. root
4. foot

B. 1. tool
2. wood
3. moon
4. good

### General Exercises on Lessons 7, 8 & 9

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. room
2. wood
3. food
4. book

### Sample Test 3 on Unit 2

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. cook
2. root
3. foot
4. moon

### Sample Test 4 on Unit 2

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. mood
2. food
3. book
4. room

## Unit 3

### Lesson 6
### Pop Quiz on Phonics

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. fiction
2. fire station
3. pollution
4. nutrition

### General Exercises on Lesson 7

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. digestion
2. fiction
3. nutrition
4. fire station

### General Exercises on Lessons 8 & 9

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. pollution
2. nutrition
3. fiction
4. digestion

### Sample Test 5 on Unit 3

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. digestion
2. nutrition
3. fire station
4. fiction

### Sample Test 6 on Unit 3

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. nutrition
2. digestion
3. pollution
4. fiction

## Unit 4

### Lesson 5
### Pop Quiz on Phonics

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. hunt
2. tent
3. wetland
4. camp

https://t.me/G5Y5

### General Exercises on Lesson 6

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. hunt
2. grassland
3. wetland
4. camp

### General Exercises on Lessons 8 & 9

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. wetland
2. camp
3. grassland
4. tent

### Sample Test 7 on Unit 4

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. swamp
2. tent
3. camp
4. grassland

### Sample Test 8 on Unit 4

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. hunt
2. tent
3. wetland
4. camp

## Unit 5

### Lesson 6
### Pop Quiz on Phonics

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. cobra
2. water
3. polar
4. shelter

### General Exercises on Lesson 7

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. shelter
2. acacia
3. polar
4. cheetah

### General Exercises on Lesson 8

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. polar
2. river
3. cobra
4. shelter

### Sample Test 9 on Unit 5

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. acacia
2. cobra
3. cheetah
4. water

### Sample Test 10 on Unit 5

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. water
2. cobra
3. acacia
4. river

## Unit 6

### Lesson 6
### Pop Quiz on Phonics

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. dangerous
2. enormous
3. nervous
4. famous

### Sample Test 11 on Unit 6

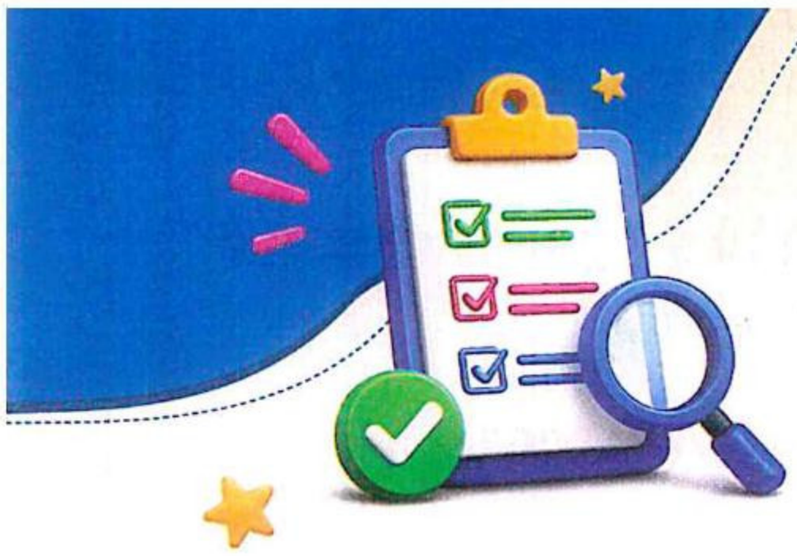
Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. enormous
2. famous
3. nervous
4. dangerous

### Sample Test 12 on Unit 6

Listen and write the missing sounds.

1. enormous
2. generous
3. nervous
4. dangerous



# Answers of Topics



إجابات موضوعات الكتاب

## Unit 1

### General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

"A sports event"

There is a big sports event. Lots of athletes are competing. There are competitions in running, jumping, and throwing.

### General Exercises on Lesson 3

"At the track"

I'm at the track. I can run very fast. I can run 100 meters in 15 seconds. I think I will get a medal.

### General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"A competition"

I have a big competition next month. I'm training very hard. I do a lot of exercise. I always eat healthy food.

### General Exercises on Lesson 6

"How to be a good friend"

To be a good friend, we should listen to our friend's ideas. We should apologize when we make them sad. We shouldn't make fun of our friends.

### General Exercises on Lessons 7, 8 & 9

"World records"

A world record is something which is the fastest, biggest, oldest, or smallest in the world. Egypt's national football team has a world record. It is for winning the Africa Cup of Nations the most times.

### Sample Test 1 on Unit 1

"Mohamed Salah"

Mohamed Salah is an Egyptian footballer. He set a world record. He scored a lot of goals.

### Sample Test 2 on Unit 1

"A running competition"

There is a running competition next week. Lots of athletes are competing. They exercise very hard to get a medal.

## Unit 2

### General Exercises on Lesson 1

"The heart"

The heart beats about 70 times a minute. The heart moves blood around our body. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to all parts of the body.

### General Exercises on Lessons 2 & 3

"The skeleton"

Our skeleton is all the bones that keep us strong and help us move. We need muscles to move our bones. Muscles are attached to bones and they lift and turn bones so we can walk, run and dance.

### General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"How to be healthy"

To stay healthy, I eat fruit and vegetables. I drink six or seven glasses of water every day. I usually drink fruit juice.

https://t.me/GTY5

### General Exercises on Lessons 7, 8 & 9

"Digestion"

We chew food in our mouths, using our teeth, tongue and jaw. We need saliva to help us do this. Then we swallow food and it goes to our stomach.

### Sample Test 3 on Unit 2

"Body organs"

Our brain controls everything that happens in our body. Our skeleton helps us move and makes us strong. We chew food with our teeth. Our stomach helps break down food.

### Sample Test 4 on Unit 2

"Healthy choices"

I am trying to make healthy choices. I drink a lot of water to be healthy. I get a lot of sleep every day. When I ride a bike, I wear a helmet.

## Unit 3

### General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

"Nutrients in food"

Fiber is in fruit and vegetables. Carbohydrates are in bread and rice. Fats are in olive oil and butter. Proteins are in meat, eggs and fish.

### General Exercises on Lesson 3

"The importance of water"

All living things need water. If we drink enough water, our brain works better. If we don't drink enough water, we feel tired.

### General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"Your favorite snack"

My favorite snack is dried fruit bar. It has 68 calories. It has 7 grams of sugar. It is healthy, so I like it.

### General Exercises on Lessons 8 & 9

"Sugar"

Sugar is bad for our teeth. Eating too much sugar damages our teeth. Sugar gives us energy, but it isn't a good kind. When we get energy from sugar, we lose it quickly.

### Sample Test 5 on Unit 3

"Dairy foods"

Dairy foods such as milk and cheese are important for us. Dairy foods give us calcium. Calcium is good for our bones. It is also good for our heart and muscles.

### Sample Test 6 on Unit 3

"Food"

It's important to get a balance of the right kinds of food. Our bodies need lots of different nutrients to work well and be healthy. We should eat lots of fruit and vegetables.

## Unit 4

### General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

"Animal behavior"

Animals live in habitats where they can get food and water, and live safely. Animals take shelter so they can stay warm. Lots of birds build nests in trees. Other birds such as owls live in holes in trees.

### General Exercises on Lesson 3

"Elephants"

Elephants are very big. They might eat grass. They don't eat meat. They

https://t.me/ebY5

don't live near the sea. They can swim in rivers very well.

### General Exercises on Lesson 4

"Different habitats"

A habitat is a place with a kind of climate and landscape. There are different habitats all over the world. In a polar habitat, there is snow and ice. In the rainforest, it is hot and wet. A wetland can be wet all the time.

### General Exercises on Lesson 6

"Your favorite story"

A monkey lived in a tree by a river. The monkey gave the crocodile some sweet fruit. The monkey and the crocodile became friends.

### General Exercises on Lessons 8 & 9

"Protecting animal habitats"

We should protect animal habitats. We shouldn't throw rubbish in the river. Rubbish pollutes the river. Birds and animals need clean water, food, and safe homes.

### Sample Test 7 on Unit 4

"Crayfish"

Crayfish live in rivers. They hide under rocks in the day time. They come out to find food at night.

### Sample Test 8 on Unit 4

"Wildlife park"

Last week, I went to the wildlife park. I saw the chimpanzees. I love seeing the chimpanzees. I enjoyed my day at the wildlife park.

## Unit 5

### General Exercises on Lesson 1

"Siwa Oasis"

Siwa Oasis is a very interesting place in the desert. People have lived there for thousands of years. In an oasis, there is water.

### General Exercises on Lessons 2 & 3

"Acacia trees"

Acacia trees are old and very special. They provide shelter for people and animals. They protect the oasis from sandstorms.

### General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"Types of water"

There are two types of liquid water - fresh water and salt water. Rivers and lakes have fresh water in them. Seas and oceans have salt water in them.

### Sample Test 9 on Unit 5

"Different climates"

It doesn't often rain in the desert. In the temperate zone, there is a lot of rain in fall and winter. There is less rain in spring and summer. The water in the polar zone is ice.

### Sample Test 10 on Unit 5

"Water cycle"

Water travels from the land to the sea, in a process called the water cycle. Heat from the sun makes very small drops of water. These drops rise up into the air. Water starts to cool and make very small drops of water into larger drops. Then water falls from the clouds as rain.

## Unit 6

### General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

"Floods"

A flood happens when a lot of rain fell in a very short time. There is too much water in the streets. People put sandbags in front of houses to keep water out.

### General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

"Emergency responders"

An emergency responder volunteers to help the community when there is an emergency. Emergency responders do first aid. They rescue people from floods.

### General Exercises on Lesson 5

"Your friend"

My friend often thinks about saving others. She likes sharing things. She is a very good communicator. She is brave and sociable.

### General Exercises on Lesson 8

"The High Dam"

The High Dam is one of the largest dams in the world. The dam can control the water and stop flooding. The dam helps to provide Egypt with enough water.

### Sample Test 11 on Unit 6

"Desalination"

Desalination means taking the salt out of sea water to get fresh water. It is useful in countries which don't have a lot of water. It can be expensive and use a lot of energy.

### Sample Test 12 on Unit 6

"Waterwheels"

In the past, waterwheels used the energy of running water to move machines. People have used waterwheels for irrigation. Fayoum has more than 200 waterwheels.

https://t.me/cb

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم ١٠٢-٥-٢-٦٦

This page was left intentionally blank for cut and stick activity

هذه الصفحة تُركت فارغة عمدًا لنشاط القص واللصق.

https://t.me/G5_Y5

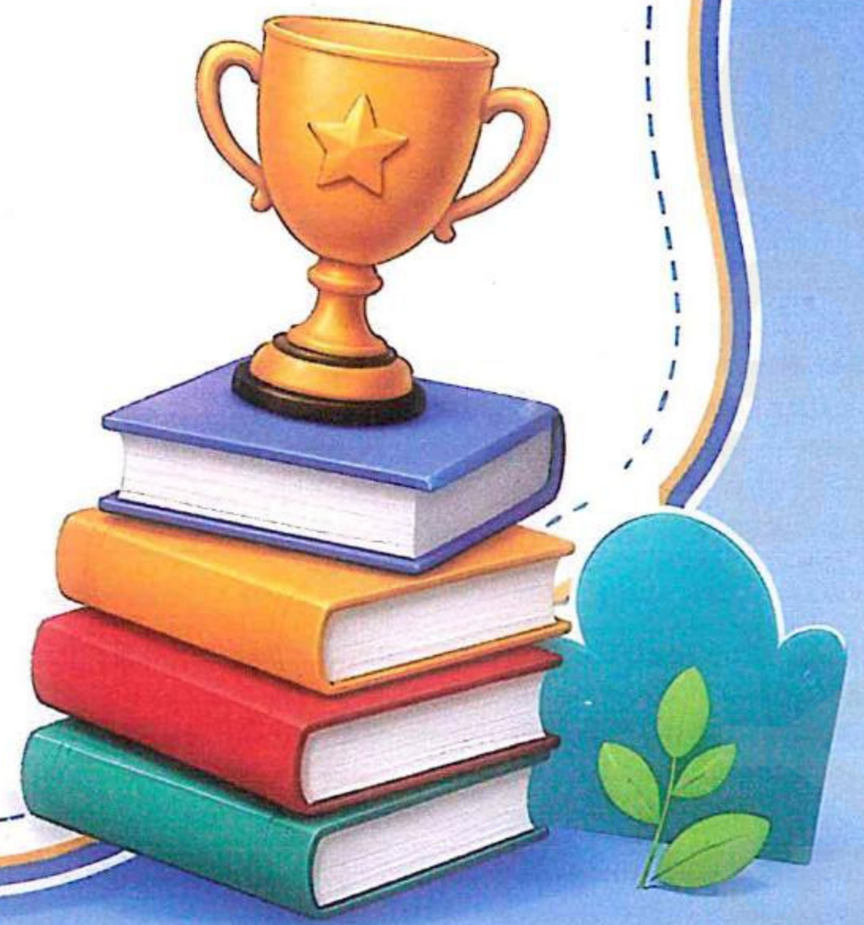
# Certificate of Achievement



*Name:* .....

*Date:* .....

*for successfully finishing this book*



https://t.me/G5_Y5

يُصرف مجانًا مع الكتاب
كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية
والمراجعة النهائية

أدخل كودك الشخصى
الموجود على ظهر الغلاف

بتصريح وتحت إشراف
وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفنى
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

الآن بالمكتبات...
المعاصر فى...
- اللغة الانجليزية
- الرياضيات
- Connect Plus
- Mathematics

بالداخل
كراسة المعاصر
للتقييمات والتسميع
والواجب المنزلى

Master
Your Skills

قاموس المعاصر الناطق
إمسح الـ QR CODE
داخل الكتاب

GPS
AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
www.gpseducation.com
15014

CONNECT Plus

3rd Primary
2027
FIRST TERM

6 223007 311090